

Original instructions

Electric truck

RX20 14-20 Cat. 2GD/3GD For use in potentially explosive areas



 ϵ

6219 6220 6221 6222 6223 6224 6225 6226 6227 6228 6229 6230 6231

56368011531 EN - 01/2021 - 05

first in intralogistics

Address of manufacturer and ⊳ contact details

STILL GmbH Berzeliusstraße 10 22113 Hamburg, Germany Tel. +49 (0) 40 7339-0 Fax: +49 (0) 40 7339-1622 Email: info@still.de

Email: info@still.de Website: http://www.still.de



Rules for the operating company of industrial trucks

In addition to these operating instructions, a code of practice containing additional information for the operating companies of industrial trucks is also available.

This guide provides information for handling industrial trucks:

- Information on how to select suitable industrial trucks for a particular area of application
- Prerequisites for the safe operation of industrial trucks
- · Information on the use of industrial trucks
- Information on transport, initial commissioning and storage of industrial trucks

Internet address and QR code

The information can be accessed at any time by pasting the address https://m.still.de/vdma in a web browser or by scanning the QR code.





1 Foreword

Your truck
Description of the truck
General
CE labelling
Explosion protection notice
EC declaration of conformity in accordance with Machinery Directive
Accessories
Labelling points
Nameplate
Production number
StVZO (Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) information
Nameplate of the pressure-tight housing
Nameplate of the battery
Diagnostic interface
Using the truck
Basic information on explosion protection.
Commissioning
Proper use
Proper use during towing. 2 ²
Improper use
Place of use
Parking in temperatures below -10°C
Using working platforms
Supplementary documentation
Issue date and topicality of the operating instructions. 32 Copyright and trademark rights. 32
Explanation of signal terms used. 32
List of abbreviations. 33 Definition of directions 35
Schematic views
Environmental considerations
Packaging
Disposal of components and batteries



2 Safety

Definition of responsible persons	40
Operating company	40
Competent person for explosion protection checks	41
Drivers	42
Basic principles for safe operation	44
Insurance cover on company premises.	44
Modifications and retrofitting	44
Changes to the overhead guard and roof loads	46
Warning regarding non-original parts	46
Damage, defects and misuse of safety systems	47
Tyres	48
Medical equipment	49
Exercise caution when handling gas springs and accumulators	50
Length of the fork arms	50
Residual risk	52
Residual dangers, residual risks	52
Special risks associated with using the truck and attachments	54
Overview of hazards and countermeasures	56
Danger to employees	58
Safety tests	60
Carrying out regular inspections on the truck	60
Explosion-protection checks	61
Testing the electrical system	62
Insulation testing	62
Safety regulations for handling consumables	64
Permissible consumables	64
Oils	64
Hydraulic fluid	65
Battery acid	66
Disposal of consumables	67
Emissions	68
Overviews	
	70
Overview	72
Driver's compartment	74



3

	Shelves	76
	Operating devices and display elements	78
	Display-operating unit "STILL Easy Control"	78
	Explosion-protection warning lights	80
	Battery isolating switch	80
	Emergency off switch	82
	Reset button	82
	Multi-lever operation	83
	Double mini-lever	84
	Triple mini-lever	84
	Quadruple mini-lever	88
	Fingertip	90
	Joystick 4Plus	91
	Travel direction selector and indicator module (variant)	92
4	Operation	
	Checks and tasks before daily use	94
	Visual inspections and function checking	94
	Climbing into and out of the truck	97
	Safety information regarding electrostatic charge	99
	Adjusting the driver's seat and armrest	99
	Adjusting the steering column	99
	Adjusting the swivelling display-operating unit	100
	Switching on the battery isolating switch	101
	Unlock the emergency off switch	102
	Checking the emergency off function	102
	Operating the signal horn	103
	Operating the pneumatic signal horn	103
	Using the driver's cab	104
	Checking the brake system for correct function	106
	Warming up the hydraulic oil at cold ambient temperatures	108
	Checking the steering system for correct function.	109
	Driver's seat	110
	Adjusting the driver's seat	110
	Seat belt	114
	Adjusting the armrest	118
	Switching on	119
	Switching on using the key switch	119
	Switching on via push button (variant)	120



Display-operating unit	122
Operating the display-operating unit	122
Access authorisation with PIN code (variant)	123
Access authorisation for the fleet manager (variant)	125
Pre-shift check	129
Description of the Pre-Shift Check (variant)	129
Process	130
All questions	131
Defining the question sequence	133
Displaying the history	134
Defining the shift start	136
Resetting the truck restrictions	140
Driver profiles	143
Driver profiles (variant)	143
Selecting driver profiles	143
Creating driver profiles	145
Renaming driver profiles	147
Deleting driver profiles	150
Lighting	152
Meaning of the symbols	152
Driving lights	153
Working spotlights	153
Working spotlight for reverse travel (variant)	155
Turn indicators	155
Hazard warning system	157
StVZO equipment	158
Rotating beacon	159
STILL SafetyLight (variant)	160
Warning zone light (variant)	161
Tilt-angle-dependent assistance systems	162
Mast tilt angle display	162
Tilt end stop damping	162
Automatic mast vertical positioning (variant)	162
Function checking of the automatic mast vertical positioning function (variant)	164
Calibrating the automatic mast vertical positioning	162
Load-dependant assistance systems	168
Overload detection (variant)	168
Dynamic Load Control 1	168
Dynamic Load Control 2	168
Load measurement (variant)	172



Calibrating the load measurement	173
Precision load measurement (variant)	175
Tare function	177
Total load (variant)	179
Efficiency and drive modes	182
Blue-Q (variant)	182
Switching Blue-Q on and off	184
Configuring Blue-Q	185
STILL Classic and sprint mode	185
Driving	187
Safety regulations when driving	187
Roadways	189
·	192
Selecting drive programmes 1 to 3	192
Selecting drive programme A or B.	193
Configuring drive programmes A and B	
Selecting the drive direction	195
Actuating the drive direction switch with the multiple-lever version.	196
Actuating the drive direction switch with the mini-lever version.	196
Actuating the drive direction switch with the Fingertip version	196
Actuating the vertical rocker button for the "drive direction" with the Joystick 4Plus version	197
Actuating the drive direction selection lever with the travel direction selector and	
indicator module version	198
Starting drive mode	198
Starting drive mode, dual pedal version (variant)	200
Operating the service brake	202
Parking brake	203
Applying the mechanical parking brake	204
Actuating the electric parking brake (variant)	206
Malfunctions in the electric parking brake	210
Steering	215
Reducing speed when turning (Curve Speed Control)	216
Speed reduction when the fork carriage is raised (variant)	217
Speed reduction when the cab door is open	217
Speed limitation (variant)	218
Cruise control (variant)	220
Parking	225
Parking the truck securely and switching it off.	225
Wheel chock (variant)	228



VII

Lifting	229
Lifting system variants	229
Lift mast versions	229
Operating devices for the lifting system	231
Controlling the lifting system using multi-lever operation	233
Controlling the lifting system using a double mini-lever	235
Controlling the lifting system using a triple mini-lever	237
Controlling the lifting system using a quadruple mini-lever	239
Controlling the lifting system using the Fingertip	239
Controlling the lifting system using the Joystick 4Plus	242
Dynamics of the hydraulic movements	244
Selecting load programs 1 to 3	245
Fork wear protection (variant)	246
Changing the fork arms	247
Fork extension (variant)	250
Operation with reversible fork arms (variant)	252
Malfunctions during lifting mode	254
Hydraulic blocking function	255
Handling loads	257
Safety regulations when handing loads	257
Before picking up a load	258
Picking up loads	259
Danger area	260
Transporting pallets	261
Transporting suspended loads	262
Transporting swinging loads	263
Calibrating the automatic mast vertical positioning	162
Automatic mast vertical positioning (variant)	162
Picking up a load	267
Transporting loads	271
Shake function (variant).	272
Setting down a load	276
Driving on ascending and descending gradients	277
Driving onto lifts	278
Driving on loading bridges	280
Depressurising the hydraulic system	281
Need to depressurise the hydraulic system.	281
Wizard for depressurising the hydraulic system	282
Depressurising the hydraulic system using multi-lever operation	284
Depressurising the hydraulic system using multi-lever operation and the 5th and	204
6th function	285
Depressurising the hydraulic system using a double mini-lever	286



Depressurising the hydraulic system using the double mini-lever and the 5th function .	287
Depressurising the hydraulic system using a triple mini-lever	288
Depressurising the hydraulic system using the triple mini-lever and the 5th function	289
Depressurising the hydraulic system using a quadruple mini-lever	290
Depressurising the hydraulic system using the quadruple mini-lever and the 5th function	291
Depressurising the hydraulic system using the Fingertip	292
Depressurising the hydraulic system using the Fingertip and the 5th function	293
Depressurising the hydraulic system using the Joystick 4Plus	294
Depressurising the hydraulic system using the Joystick 4Plus and the 5th function	295
Special feature for clamping attachments	296
Exiting the wizard	297
·	
Attachments.	298 298
Fitting attachments	302
Attachment example for the connection of the auxiliary hydraulics	303
Adjusting the hydraulic speed for attachments	303
Clamp locking mechanism (variant)	303
Controlling attachments using multi-lever operation	309
Controlling attachments using multi-lever operation and the 5th and 6th function	311
Controlling attachments using multi-level operation and the 5th and our function	313
Controlling attachments using a double mini-lever and the 5th function	315
Controlling attachments using the double himi-lever and the surfuticion	317
Controlling attachments using a triple mini-lever and the 5th function	319
Controlling attachments using the triple mini-lever and the stirridiction	321
Controlling attachments using a quadruple mini-lever and the 5th function	323
Controlling attachments using the quadruple mini-level and the stribunction	324
Controlling attachments using the Fingertip and the 5th function	326
Controlling attachments using the Fingerity and the Stirribinitian Controlling attachments using the Joystick 4Plus	328
Controlling attachments using the Joystick 4Plus and the 5th function	330
Picking up a load using attachments.	331
Auxiliary equipment	332
General note	332
FleetManager (variant)	332
Shock recognition (variant)	332
Driver restraint systems (variants)	332
Actuating the windscreen wipers and windscreen washers (variant)	332
Filling the washer system	335
Operating the rear window heating	335
Ceiling sensor (variant)	336



Cab	342
Opening and closing the cab door	342
Opening and closing the side window	343
Turning the interior lighting on or off (variant)	344
Radio (variant)	344
Heating system (variant)	345
Air conditioning (variant)	345
Clipboard (variant)	349
Push-up roof window (variant)	349
Sun visor and sun blind	351
Trailer operation	352
Safety information for trailer operation	352
Towed load	353
Coupling pin in the counterweight	354
Tow coupling RO*244	356
Towing trailers	360
Cold store application	361
Display messages	364
Behaviour when the explosion-protection warning lights are illuminated	364
Messages	366
Messages about operation	366
Messages about the truck	373
Procedure in emergencies	375
Emergency shutdown	375
Actuating the reset button after automatic emergency shutdown	376
Procedure if truck tips over	378
Emergency hammer	378
Emergency driving via the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever	379
Emergency lowering	380
Emergency actuation of the electric parking brake (variant)	382
Towing	384
Connecting and disconnecting the battery male connector	388
Connecting the battery male connector	388
Disconnect the battery male connector	390
Handling the lead-acid battery	393
Safety regulations for handling the battery	393
Maintaining the battery	398
Checking the battery condition, acid level and acid density	399
Checking the battery charge status	401



	Equalising charging to preserve the battery capacity	401
	Replacing and transporting the battery General information on replacing the battery Changing to a different battery type Opening/closing the battery door. Replacing the battery using a truck Replacing the battery using a lift truck and a battery change frame Transporting the lead-acid battery by crane	407 407 408 409 412 417 424
	Cleaning the truck Note on flame proof enclosures. Cleaning the truck Cleaning the electrical system. Cleaning load chains Cleaning the windows After cleaning.	425 425 425 428 428 429 430
	Transporting the truck Transport Crane loading	431 431 434
	Decommissioning Safety information for shutting down and restarting Decommissioning and storing the truck. Use after storage or decommissioning	435 435 435 437
5	Maintenance	
	Safety regulations for maintenance General information. Working on the hydraulic equipment. Working on the electrical equipment. Safety devices. Set values. Lifting and jacking up. Working at the front of the truck	440 440 441 441 441 442 442
	General maintenance information	444 444
	Maintenance of the explosion protection components Information for carrying out maintenance Maintenance by the operating company: Explosion-protection components - 150 hours/	445 446
	monthly	448



Maintenance by the authorised service centre: Explosion-protection components - 1000 hours/yearly	449
Maintenance - 1000 hours/annually	450
Maintenance - 3000 hours/every two years	453
Ordering spare parts and wearing parts	453
Quality and quantity of the required operating materials	454
Lubrication plan	455
Maintenance data table	457
Preserving operational readiness	460
Changing the light bulb	460
Lubricating the joints and controls	461
Checking the battery interlock and the battery door interlock	461
Maintaining the seat belt	462
Checking the driver's seat	464
Checking the antistatic paint layer	465
Servicing the heating system or air conditioning	466
Servicing wheels and tyres	469
Servicing the steering axle	470 471
Checking the battery	471
Adjusting the warning zone light	471
Checking the hydraulic system for leak tightness	472
Check the hydraulic oil level	474
Lubricating the lift mast and roller track	476
Preserving operational readiness for cold store application	476
1000-hour maintenance/annual maintenance	477
Other work that must be carried out	477
Checking the lift cylinders and connections for leaks	477
Checking the fork arms	477
Checking the reversible fork arms	479
Checking the double pedal	480
Checking the battery changeover frame	480
Technical data	
Ergonomic dimensions	482
Dimensions	483
VDI datasheet: RX20-14C with steering turntable	485
VDI datasheet: RX20-16 with steering turntable	489
VDI datasheet: RX20-18 and RX20-20 with steering turntable	493



6

VDI datasheet: RX20-16 with swing axle	497
VDI datasheet: RX20-18 with swing axle	501
RX20-20 swing axle VDI datasheet	505
Eco-design requirements for electric motors and variable speed drives	508
Battery specifications	509
Information on the auxiliary hydraulics	511



Your truck

Description of the truck

General

The STILL RX20 14-20 is an electrically driven counterbalanced truck with a steering turntable or a rear swing axle. It has a load capacity of up to 2 tonnes with a load centre of gravity of 500 mm. The truck can reach driving speeds of up to 20 km/h without a load.

The truck is suitable for indoor and outdoor use and for use in potentially explosive areas.

The driver's compartment has an ergonomic design with the steering column and driver's seat offset to one side.

The "STILL Easy Control" display-operating unit manages all functions that are not called up by the operating devices for drive functions and hydraulic functions. The driving condition information and all messages are issued via a large colour display. The display/operating unit uses the current battery charge state and the selected drive programme to calculate the remaining available time until the battery has to be recharged and displays this information. It also supports all FleetManager 4.x functions.

Assistance systems

The STILL RX20 14-20 can be equipped with assistance systems that make it easier to work with loads.

- · Mast tilt angle display
- · Automatic mast vertical positioning
- · Overload detection
- Dynamic Load Control 1 or Dynamic Load Control 2
- Lift mast tilt angle display
- · Automatic mast vertical positioning
- · Fork wear protection
- Load measurement, precise load measurement, total load and tare function



Brake system

The brake system of the truck is comprised of three different brakes:

- Service brake
- · Regenerative brake
- · Mechanically actuated parking brake
- Electrically actuated parking brake (variant)

The service brake is based on a wear-free, oil-immersed multi-disc brake. This multi-disc brake is used as the service brake for heavy braking or emergency braking with the brake pedal. In the normal working mode, the regenerative brake of the electric traction motors takes effect. The regenerative brake converts the acceleration energy of the truck into electrical energy. This causes the truck to decelerate as soon as the accelerator pedal is released. If the foot is completely removed from the accelerator pedal, the truck brakes until it comes to a standstill. A parking brake ensures that the truck remains securely in place when parked.

Hydraulic system

The steering system, the lift cylinders and the tilt cylinders in the lift mast are supplied with power via a hydraulic pump operated by an electric motor.

The proportional valve technology provides particularly sensitive movements and safe handling of the load. The hydraulic functions can be parameterised individually by the authorised service centre.

Up to three hydraulic circuits can be used to activate attachments (variant). Depending on the equipment, a hydraulic accumulator is also available in the lifting circuit for the purpose of damping pressure peaks in the hydraulic system

Drive

Both front wheels of the STILL RX20 14-20 are driven by a maintenance-free three-phase drive in the front axle with 48-volt technology.

Power is supplied by a lead-acid battery that can be replaced from the side.



Your truck

The driver can help to influence the energy consumption and performance of the truck using the "Blue-Q" efficiency mode. which allows the required setting for each current application to be called up via the display-operating unit.

Steering

The kickback-free, hydraulic rear-wheel steering with "Curve Speed Control" (CSC) ensures driving stability when cornering, allowing the truck to achieve a small turning circle and negotiate narrow aisle widths.

Operation

The multi-lever, the Fingertip mini-lever and the Joystick 4Plus are available as operating devices for the hydraulic functions. These operating devices enable precise operation and smooth control of the lifting speed thanks to directly controlled valves and proportional valve technology.

The acceleration behaviour and braking behaviour can be selected individually using different drive programmes.

For drive mode, the truck features either single-pedal or dual-pedal operation. Acceleration and braking (electric brake) via the accelerator pedal or dual-pedal operation. One pedal for the "forwards" drive direction and one pedal for the "reverse" drive direction. Acceleration and braking behaviour can be individually selected from three different drive programmes.

The "STILL Easy Control" display-operating unit simplifies daily use of the truck by providing personally configurable favourites. The display-operating unit also monitors the truck functions.

General

The truck described in these operating instructions corresponds to the applicable standards and safety regulations.



If the truck is to be operated on public roads, it must conform to the existing national regulations for the country in which it is being used. The driving permit must be obtained from the appropriate office.

The truck has been fitted with state-of-the-art technology. Following these operating instructions will allow the truck to be handled safely. By complying with the specifications in these operating instructions, the functionality and the approved features of the truck will be retained.

Get to know the technology, understand it and use it safely - these operating instructions provide the necessary information and help to avoid accidents and to keep the truck ready for operation beyond the warranty period.

Therefore:

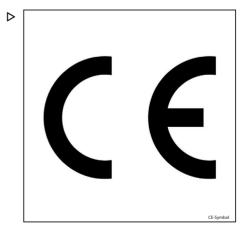
- Before commissioning the truck, read the operating instructions and follow the instructions.
- Always follow all of the safety information contained in the operating instructions and on the truck.

CE labelling

The manufacturer uses CE labelling to indicate that the truck complies with the standards and regulations valid at the time of marketing. This is confirmed by the issued EC declaration of conformity. The CE labelling is attached to the nameplate.

An independent structural change or addition to the truck can compromise safety, thus invalidating the EC declaration of conformity.

The EC declaration of conformity must be carefully stored and made available to the responsible authorities.





1

Your truck

Explosion protection notice

The explosion protection notice indicates that the manufacturer complies with the explosion protection licensing regulations.





EC declaration of conformity in accordance with Machinery Directive

Declaration

STILL GmbH Berzeliusstraße 10 D-22113 Hamburg Germany

We declare that the

Industrial truck according to these operating instructions

Model according to these operating instructions

conforms to the latest version of the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.

Personnel authorised to compile the technical documents:

See EC compliance declaration

STILL GmbH



•

Foreword

Your truck

Accessories

- Two keys for the key switch (not for trucks with the "Switch on via push button" variant)
- Two keys for the cab (variant)
- A hexagon socket wrench for emergency lowering (in the compartment)
- · A battery change frame



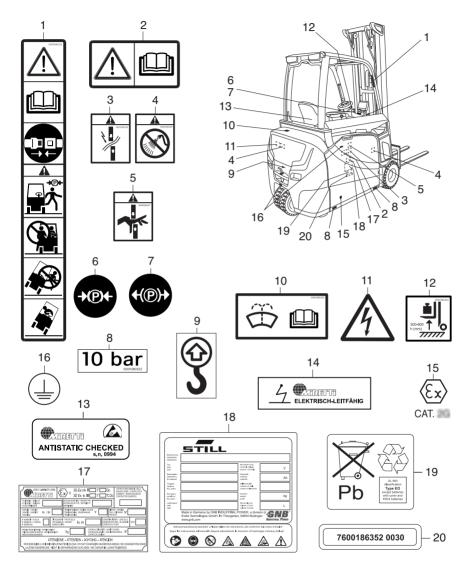
Your truck



1

Your truck

Labelling points





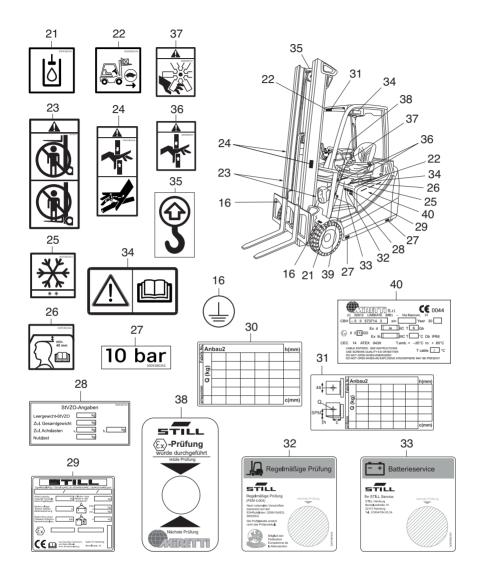
Your truck

- Decal information: Caution / Read the operating instructions / Fasten seat belt / Apply parking brake when leaving the truck / Passengers are not allowed / Do not jump off if the truck is tipping over / Lean in the opposite direction to which the truck is tipping Decal information: Caution / Read the operation.
- 2 Decal information: Caution / Read the operating instructions
- Warning sign: Risk of short circuit due to shearing
- 4 Warning sign: Cleaning electrical system parts with water is forbidden
- 5 Warning sign: Danger due to shearing
- 6 Decal information: Parking brake applied 7 Decal information: Parking brake released
- 8 Decal information: Tyre filling pressure
- 9 Decal information: Lifting gear fixing point
- 10 Decal information: Washer system filling

- 11 Warning sign: Dangerous electrical voltage
- 12 Decal information: Load measurement
- 13 Decal information: ANTISTATIC CHECKED (on the backrest of the driver's seat)
- 14 Decal information: ELECTRICALLY CON-DUCTIVE (antistatic paint)
- 15 Decal information: Explosion protection notice and equipment category
- Decal information: Potential equalisation point (on all discharge points such as tyres, antistatic belts and corona electrodes)
- 17 Decal information: Nameplate for conversion to explosion-protected battery
- 18 Decal information: Nameplate of the battery
- 19 Decal information: Disposal information for the battery
- 20 Decal information: Manufacturer code for the battery



Your truck





Your truck

21	Dec	al iı	nfori	mation:	Hy	draulic	oil	tank

22 Decal information: Speed reduction

- 23 Warning sign: Do not stand underneath the fork / Do not stand on the fork
- 24 Warning sign: Danger due to shearing / Danger due to high fluid pressure
- 25 Decal information: Cold store application (variant)
- 26 Decal information: Check head clearance
- 27 Decal information: Tyre filling pressure
- 28 Decal information: StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) information
- 29 Nameplate
- 30 Decal information: Load capacity: Attachment
- 31 Decal information: Load capacity: Basic table

- 32 Decal information: Regular testing
- 33 Decal information: Battery service
- 34 Decal information: Caution / Read the operating instructions
- 35 Decal information: Lifting point
- 36 Warning sign: Danger due to shearing (on rotary seat variant)
- 37 Warning sign: Ventilator
- 38 Decal information: Explosion-protection check
- 39 Decal information on non-conductive components:

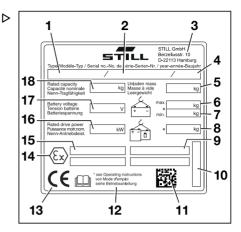
"Non-conductive parts - risk of electrostatic charge - only clean using a damp cloth"



Nameplate

The truck can be identified from the information on the nameplate.

- 1 Model
- 2 Production number
- 3 Address of manufacturer
- 4 Year of manufacture
- 5 Empty weight in kg
- 6 Maximum permissible battery weight [kg]
- 7 Minimum permissible battery weight [kg]
- 8 Ballast weight [kg]
- 9 (Ex) ATEX number
- 10 Miretti job number
- 11 Data matrix code
- 12 "See operating instructions"
- 13 CE labelling
- 14 (Ex) Explosion protection notice
- 15 (Ex) Permissible area of application
- 16 Rated drive power [kw]
- 17 Battery voltage [V]
- 18 Rated capacity [kg]



Production number

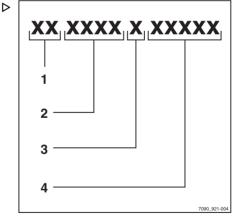


NOTE

The production number is used to identify the truck. It can be found on the nameplate and must be referred to in all technical questions.

The production number contains the following coded information:

- (1) Production location
- (2) Model
- (3) Year of manufacture
- (4) Sequential number

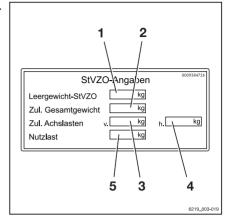




StVZO (Road Traffic Licensing Reg- ▷ ulations) information

This label includes information on the weight and load distribution of the truck in kg.

- 1 Tare weight
- 2 Total permissible weight
- 3 Permitted front axle load
- 4 Permitted rear axle load
- 5 Payload





Nameplate of the pressure-tight housing

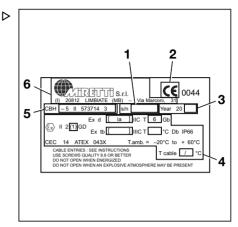
The flame proof enclosures are marked with a nameplate. The data on the plate corresponds to the approved area of application for the flame proof enclosure. The plate must be positioned so that it is always easy to read. Only the manufacturer is allowed to re-label the flame proof enclosures.

Various notes are printed on the plate:

- · "Cable entries: see instructions"
- "Use screws quality 8.8 or better"
- · "Do not open when energised"
- · "Do not open when an explosive atmosphere may be present"

A warning sign is located in the immediate vicinity of the nameplate:

· "Open only in a non-potentially explosive atmosphere"



- Serial number
 - CE labelling
- 2 3 4 5 Year of manufacture
 - Approved area of use
- Inspection number
- Manufacturer



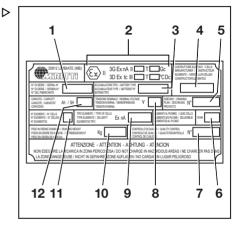
Nameplate of the battery

The nameplate of the battery is mounted on the battery tray. The information on this nameplate describes the permitted area of use of the battery.

 Only use explosion-protected batteries that are approved for the area in which the truck is to be used.

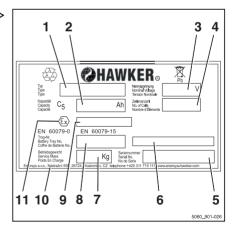
Battery conversion by Miretti

- 1 Serial number
- 2 Explosion-protection label and approved area of application
- 3 Model
- 4 Cell manufacturer
- 5 Drawing number
- 6 Manufacturing year
- 7 Quality assurance
- 8 Nominal voltage
- 9 Cell type
- 10 Service weight
- 11 Number of cells
- 12 Capacity



Explosion-protected battery from suppli- > er

- 1 Model
- 2 Capacity
- 3 Nominal voltage
- 4 Number of cells
- 5 Serial number
- 6 HAWKER® ATEX test number
- 7 Service weight
- 8 Tray number
- 9 Approved area of use
- 10 Address of manufacturer
- 11 Explosion protection notice







In this example, the company $HAWKER_{\circledR}$ is quoted as the battery supplier. If the truck is equipped with an explosion-protected battery from another manufacturer, the authorised service centre will provide assistance in decoding the nameplate of the battery.



Diagnostic interface

The truck is equipped with a diagnostic interface for monitoring and reading out the truck control unit. Only the authorised service centre may operate the diagnostic interface. The diagnostic interface is identified by the decal information (see illustration).





Using the truck

Using the truck

Basic information on explosion protection



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

The truck may only be operated in the potentially explosive areas for which it is approved!

- Check the area of application by comparing it with the nameplate information
- If the area of application is not clear, ask the safety officer.



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere. No work may be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas.

- Work on the truck must only be carried out outside potentially explosive
- Where necessary, inform the safety officer

Examples of this work are:

- Battery replacement and battery charging
- · Maintenance and repair
- Settings and safety checks
- · Conversion and retrofitting
- · Transportation and loading

Areas with explosive atmospheres are divided into zones. Equipment is divided into equipment groups and equipment categories. The equipment category determines the zones in which the explosion-protected truck may be used.

Potentially explosive areas are divided into six zones. The divisions are based on the probable frequency and duration with which a dangerous explosive atmosphere can occur. A distinction is also made between flammable gases, fumes, vapours and dusts.

Gases and vapours are assigned to temperature classes on the basis of their ignition



Using the truck

temperature. This enables ignition caused by overheated equipment surfaces to be prevented.

Potentially explosive areas for flammable gases, vapours and fumes are divided into zones 0. 1 and 2.

Division of potentially explosive areas for gases, vapours and fumes

Zone	Description	
0	Permanent, long-term or frequent dangerous explosive atmosphere	
1	Occasional dangerous explosive atmosphere	
2	Infrequent dangerous explosive atmosphere	

Potentially explosive areas for flammable dusts are divided into zones 20, 21 and 22.

Division of potentially explosive areas for dusts

Zone	Description
20	Permanent, long-term or frequent dangerous explosive atmosphere in the form of a flammable dust cloud
21	Occasional dangerous explosive atmosphere in the form of a flammable dust cloud
22	Infrequent dangerous explosive atmosphere in the form of a flammable dust cloud

Equipment is divided into groups I, II and III.

Division of equipment

Group	Description	
I Mining equipment (subterranean) endangered by exposure to pit gas/dus		
II	Equipment in all other areas with gas explosion protection and dust explosion protection outside of mining	
III	Equipment in all other areas with dust explosion protection outside of mining	

The following table refers only to equipment in group II, which includes the explosion-protected truck. Truck requirements depend on the zone in which it is intended to be operated.

Equipment in group II

Zone	Category	Description	
0	II 1G	Permanent, long-term or frequent dangerous explosive	
20	II 1D	atmosphere in the form of a flammable dust cloud	
1	II 2G	Occasional dangerous explosive atmosphere in the form	
21	II 2D	of a flammable dust cloud	
2	II 3G	Infrequent dangerous explosive atmosphere in the form	
22	II 3D	of a flammable dust cloud	



Using the truck

Equipment in group II (gas) is divided in accordance with the characteristics of the explosive atmosphere for which it is intended.

Equipment in group II (gas)

Group	Description
IIA	Propane
IIB	Ethylene
IIC	Hydrogen

Equipment in group III (dust) is divided in accordance with the characteristics of the explosive atmosphere for which it is intended.

Equipment in group II (dust)

Group	Description
IIIA	Combustible lint
IIIB	Non-conductive dust
IIIC	Conductive dust

Trucks for use in zone 1 are automatically approved for use in zone 2. Depending on the zone classification, the operating and display elements on the trucks may be enclosed in a special housing. Gases and vapours are divided into temperature classes T1 to T6 and permissible equipment surface temperatures are defined.

Temperature classes

Temperature class Ignition temperature range		Maximum surface temperature	
T1	> 450°C	450°C	
T2	> 300°C to 450°C	300°C	
T3	> 200°C to 300°C	200°C	
T4	> 135°C to 200°C	135°C	
T5	> 100°C to 135°C	100°C	
T6	> 85°C to 100°C	85°C	

Commissioning

Commissioning is the initial intended use of the truck.

The necessary steps for the commissioning vary depending on the model and equipment of the truck. These steps require preparatory



work and adjustment work that cannot be performed by the operating company. See also the chapter entitled "Definition of responsible persons".

- To commission the truck, contact the authorised service centre

Proper use

The truck described in these operating instructions is suitable for lifting, transporting and stacking loads.

The truck may only be used for its proper purpose as set out and described in these operating instructions.

The industrial truck may only be used in the areas at risk of explosion for which it is approved in accordance with the attached EC declaration of conformity and type approval.



For explanations of the various areas, see the chapter entitled "Basic information on explosion protection"

If the truck is to be used for purposes other than those specified in the operating instructions, the approval of the manufacturer and, if applicable, the relevant regulatory authorities must be obtained beforehand in order to prevent hazards.

The maximum load to be lifted is specified on the capacity rating plate (load diagram) and must not be exceeded; see also the chapter entitled "Before picking up a load"



1

Using the truck

Proper use during towing



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Trailers and tow couplings that do not fulfil explosion-protection regulations can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere within potentially explosive areas!

Do not use the truck for towing.

Improper use

The operating company or driver, and not the manufacturer, is liable for any hazards caused by improper use.

Use for purposes other than those described in these operating instructions is prohibited.



NOTE

Please note the definition of the following responsible persons: "operating company" and "driver".



A DANGER

There is a risk of fatal injury from falling off the truck while it is moving!

It is prohibited to carry passengers on the truck.

A DANGER

Risk of tipping over or tilting of the forklift truck!

 Do not perform stacking or unstacking operations when on inclined surfaces or HGV ramps.



Using the truck



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

The truck must not be operated in fire hazard areas or potentially explosive areas that do not conform to the truck's classification.

The truck must not be operated in areas where there is a risk of corrosion or in areas with high levels of dust that do not conform to the truck's classification.

The information on the nameplate is binding!

(a) In accordance with Directive 2014/34/EU it is forbidden to use the truck in:

- Areas of equipment group I, i.e. in mining (underground)
- Areas of the equipment group III, i.e. for use in potentially explosive dust atmospheres
- · Areas of zone 0 and 20
- Areas of zones for which the truck is not specifically approved for use as listed in the data on the nameplate
- Areas with temperature classes in which the truck is not specifically approved for use as listed in the data on the nameplate
- For towing trailers in potentially explosive areas unless explosion-protected towing devices and explosion-protected trailers are used



NOTE

For explanations of the various areas, see the section entitled "Basic information on explosion protection".



Using the truck

Place of use

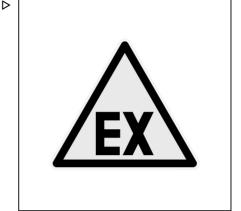


A DANGER

There is a risk of explosion during use in potentially explosive areas.

The truck may only be operated in the potentially explosive areas for which it is approved!

- Check the area of application by comparing it with the nameplate informa-
- If the area of application is not clear, ask the safety officer.



A DANGER

Risk of explosion when brushing against equip-

If conductive components of the truck come into contact with flexible doors or strip curtains, dangerous electrostatic charges can form.

Avoid electrostatic charges.

A DANGER

Risk of explosion when using without conductive flooring!

The truck must only be operated in potentially explosive areas that are fitted with conductive flooring.

Avoid electrostatic charges.



More information concerning the requirements for conductive or dissipative floorings can be found in the guidelines relating to electrostatic hazards "CLC/TR 60079-32-1".

The truck is approved in accordance with Directive 2014/34/EU for use in potentially explosive areas. These areas are specified on the nameplate. In such areas, the safety officer must approve access by the truck.

Relationship between zones and equipment categories for industrial trucks

 Zone 1 – category 2G Use is permitted in areas where hazardous. potentially explosive atmospheres may



arise during normal operation due to gases, vapours or mists.

- Zone 21 category 2D
 Use is permitted in areas where hazardous, potentially explosive atmospheres may arise during normal operation due to dusts.
- Zone 1 and zone 21 category 2GD
 Use is permitted in areas where hazardous, potentially explosive atmospheres may arise during normal operation due to gases, steam, mist or dust.
- Zone 2 category 3G
 Use is permitted in areas where hazardous, potentially explosive atmospheres seldom arise during normal operation due to gases, vapours or mists.
- Zone 22 category 3D
 Use is permitted in areas where hazardous, potentially explosive atmospheres seldom arise during normal operation due to dusts.
- Zone 2 and zone 22 category 3GD
 Use is permitted in areas where hazardous, potentially explosive atmospheres seldom arise during normal operation due to gases, steam, mist or dusts.

Trucks approved for zone 1 are automatically also approved for zone 2. Trucks approved for zone 21 are automatically also approved for zone 22.

- Compare the permissible temperature classes for the potentially explosive areas with the specification on the nameplate.
- See also the section entitled "Basic information on explosion protection".

Operation on public roads is only permitted if the "StVZO" (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) equipment variant is installed.

If the truck is to be operated on public roads, the truck must conform to the national regulations for the country in which it is being used.

The ground must have an adequate load capacity (concrete, asphalt) and a rough surface. In addition, in potentially explosive areas the ground must be conductive. Roadways, working areas and aisle widths must conform to the specifications in these operating instructions; see the section entitled "Roadways" in the "Driving" chapter.



Foreword

Using the truck

Driving on upward and downward gradients is permitted, provided the stipulated data and specifications are observed.

The truck is suitable for indoor and outdoor use in countries ranging from the Tropics to Nordic regions (temperature range: -10°C to +40°C).

This truck is not designed for continuous operation in cold stores. It may be driven in cold stores only for a short period.

The operating company must ensure that suitable fire protection is provided in the truck's surroundings for the relevant truck application. Depending on the application, additional fire protection must be provided on the truck. If in doubt, contact the relevant authorities.



Please observe the definition of the following responsible person: "operating company".

Parking in temperatures below -10°C

A CAUTION

Batteries can freeze!

If the truck is parked in an ambient temperature below -10°C for an extended period, the batteries will cool down. The electrolyte may freeze and damage the batteries. The truck is then not ready for operation.

 When the ambient temperature is below -10°C, only park the truck for short periods of time.

Using working platforms



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to the explosions in the surrounding atmosphere. No work may be carried out on trucks in potentially explosive areas!

Only assemble working platforms outside potentially explosive areas.



Using the truck



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working with working platforms that do not meet explosion-protection regulations can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere within potentially explosive areas!

- Only use working platforms that comply with the explosion-protection regulations
- Check the area of application by comparing with nameplate information on the working platform.
- If the area of application is not clear, ask a safety official.

M WARNING

The use of working platforms is regulated by national law. The use of working platforms is only permitted by virtue of the jurisdiction in the country of use.

- Observe national legislation.
- Before using working platforms, consult the national regulatory authorities.



Information about the documentation

Scope of the documentation

- · Original operating instructions of the truck
- Original operating instructions of the display-operating unit
- Operating instructions of the installed variants that are not mentioned in the aforementioned original operating instructions
- "UPA" Operating instructions or insert (depending on the truck equipment)
- DVD with the spare parts list of the truck

These operating instructions describe all measures necessary for the safe operation and proper maintenance of the truck in all possible variants available at the time of printing. Special versions to meet customer requirements (UPA) are documented in separate operating instructions. If you have any questions, contact your authorised service centre.

Below, enter the production number, year of manufacture and the Miretti job number from the nameplate:

Production number	
Year of manufacture	
Miretti-Job number	

Please quote the production number in all technical enquiries. Specify the Miretti job number for any spare parts orders.

Each truck comes with a set of operating instructions. These instructions must be stored carefully and must be available to the driver and operating company at all times.

If the operating instructions are lost, the operating company must obtain a replacement from the manufacturer immediately.

The operating instructions are included in the spare parts list. They can be reordered as a spare part.

The personnel responsible for operating and maintaining the equipment must be familiar with these operating instructions.

The operating company must ensure that all users have received, read and understood these operating instructions.



Store all documentation safely. Hand over the documentation to the next operating company if the truck is transferred or sold



Please note the definition of the following responsible persons: "operating company" and "driver".

Thank you for reading and complying with these operating instructions. If you have any questions or suggestions for improvements, or if you have found any errors, please contact the authorised service centre.

Supplementary documentation

This industrial truck can be fitted with unplanned equipment (UPA) that deviates from the standard equipment and/or the variants.

The UPA may be, for example:

- · Special sensors
- · Special attachments
- · Towing devices
- · Customised attachments

In this case, the industrial truck has additional documentation. This may be in the form of an insert or separate operating instructions.

The original operating instructions for this industrial truck are valid for the operation of standard equipment and variants without restriction. The operational and safety information in the original operating instructions continues to be valid in its entirety unless it is countermanded in this additional documentation

The requirements for the qualification of personnel as well as the time for maintenance may vary. This is defined in the additional documentation

 If you have any questions, please contact vour authorised service centre.



Issue date and topicality of the operating instructions

The issue date and the version of these operating instructions can be found on the title page.

STILL is constantly engaged in the further development of trucks. These operating instructions are subject to change, and any claims based on the information and/or illustrations contained in them cannot be asserted.

Please contact your authorised service centre for technical support relating to your truck.

Copyright and trademark rights

These instructions must not be reproduced, translated or made accessible to third parties —including as excerpts—except with the express written approval of the manufacturer.

Explanation of signal terms used

The signal terms **Danger**, **Warning**, **Caution**, **Note** and **Environmental note** and the 🔊 symbol are used in these instructions as hazard warnings or for unusual information that requires special identification.



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

There is a risk of explosion if instructions are not followed in potentially explosive areas

A DANGER

Indicates procedures that must be strictly adhered to in order to prevent the risk of fatalities.

WARNING

Indicates procedures that must be strictly adhered to in order to prevent the risk of injuries.



A CAUTION

Indicates procedures that must be strictly adhered to in order to prevent material damage and/or destruction.

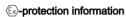


For technical requirements that require special attention.



ENVIRONMENT NOTE

To prevent environmental damage



For components, points and procedures relevant to explosion protection

List of abbreviations

This list of abbreviations applies to all types of operating instructions. Not all of the abbreviations that are listed here will necessarily appear in these operating instructions.

Abbrevi- ation	Meaning	Explanation	
ArbSchG	Arbeitsschutzgesetz	German implementation of EU occupational health and safety directives	
Betr- SichV	Betriebssicherheitsverordnung	German implementation of the EU working equipment directive	
BG	Berufsgenossenschaft	German insurance company for the company and employees	
BGG	Berufsgenossenschaftlicher Grundsatz	German principles and test specifications for occupational health and safety	
BGR	Berufsgenossenschaftliche Regel	German rules and recommendations for occupational health and safety	
DGUV	Berufsgenossenschaftliche Vorschrift	German accident prevention regulations	
CE	Communauté Européenne	Confirms conformity with product-specific European directives (CE labelling)	
CEE	Commission on the Rules for the Approval of the Electrical Equipment	International commission on the rules for the approval of electrical equipment	
DC	Direct Current	Direct current	
DFÜ	Datenfernübertragung	Remote data transfer	
DIN	Deutsches Institut für Normung	German standardisation organisation	
EG	European Community		



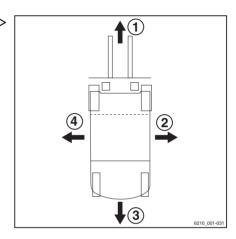
Abbrevi- ation	Meaning	Explanation	
EN	European standard		
FEM	Fédération Européene de la Manutention	European Federation of Materials Han- dling and Storage Equipment	
F _{max}	maximum Force	Maximum power	
GAA	Gewerbeaufsichtsamt	German authority for monitoring/issuing regulations for worker protection, environmental protection, and consumer protection	
GPRS	General Packet Radio Service	Transfer of data packets in wireless networks	
ID no.	Identification number		
ISO	International Organization for Standardization	International standardisation organisation	
K _{pA}	Uncertainty of measurement of sound pressure levels		
LAN	Local Area Network	Local area network	
LED	Light Emitting Diode	Light emitting diode	
L _p	Sound pressure level at the workplace		
L _{pAZ}	Average continuous sound pressure level in the driver's compartment		
LSP	Load centre of gravity	Distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the front face of the fork backs	
MAK	Maximum workplace concentration	Maximum permissible air concentrations of a substance at the workplace	
Max.	Maximum	Highest value of an amount	
Min.	Minimum	Lowest value of an amount	
PIN	Personal Identification Number	Personal identification number	
PPE	Personal protective equipment		
SE	Super-Elastic	Superelastic tyres (solid rubber tyres)	
SIT	Snap-In Tyre	Tyres for simplified assembly, without loose rim parts	
StVZO	Straßenverkehrs-Zulassungs-Ordnung	German regulations for approval of vehi- cles on public roads	
TRGS	Technische Regel für Gefahrstoffe	Ordinance on hazardous materials applicable in the Federal Republic of Germany	
VDE	Verband der Elektrotechnik Elektronik Informationstechnik e. V.	German technical/scientific association	
VDI	Verein Deutscher Ingenieure	German technical/scientific association	



Abbrevi- ation	Meaning	Explanation
VDMA	Verband Deutscher Maschinen- und Anlagenbau e. V.	German Mechanical Engineering Industry Association
WLAN	Wireless LAN	Wireless local area network

Definition of directions

The directions "forwards" (1), "backwards" (3), "right" (2) and "left" (4) refer to the installation position of the parts as seen from the driver's compartment; the load is to the front.



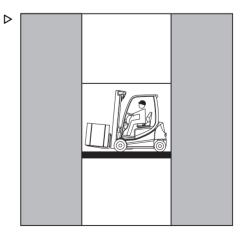
Schematic views

View of functions and operating procedures

At many points in this documentation, the (mostly sequential) operation of certain functions or operating procedures is explained. Schematic diagrams of a counterbalance truck are used to illustrate these procedures.



These schematic views are not representative of the structural state of the documented truck. The views are used solely for the purpose of clarifying procedures.

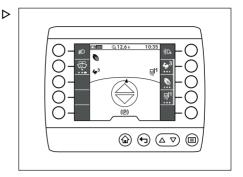




View of the display-operating unit



Views of operating statuses and values in the display of the display and operating unit are examples and partly dependent on the truck equipment. As a result, the displays shown of the actual operating statuses and values may





Environmental considerations

Packaging

During delivery of the truck, certain parts are packaged to provide protection during transport. This packaging must be removed completely prior to initial start-up.



ENVIRONMENT NOTE

The packaging material must be disposed of properly after delivery of the truck.

Disposal of components and batteries

The truck is composed of different materials. If components or batteries need to be replaced and disposed of, they must be:

- · disposed of,
- · treated or
- recycled in accordance with regional and national regulations.



NOTE

The documentation provided by the battery manufacturer must be observed when disposing of batteries.



ENVIRONMENT NOTE

We recommend working with a waste management company for disposal purposes.



1

Environmental considerations



Safety

Definition of responsible persons

Definition of responsible persons

Operating company

The operating company is the natural or legal person who operates the truck or on whose authority the truck is used.

The operating company must ensure that the truck is only used for its proper purpose and in compliance with the safety regulations set out in these operating instructions.

The operating company must inform all users of the operating instructions in the required language. The operating instructions must be accessible to the users at all times. See the section entitled "Scope of the documentation".

The operating company must ensure that all users read and understand the safety information.

The operating company must provide training to its personnel regarding the special features of potentially explosive areas.

The operating company must provide training to its personnel at regular intervals regarding working with forklift trucks in potentially explosive areas.

The operating company must have the expertise required by law to guarantee explosion protection for equipment and operating materials.

The operating company is responsible for the scheduling and correct performance of regular safety checks.

The operating company must instruct all users in the explosion-protection regulations and rules of behaviour in areas at risk of explosions.

The operating company must grant all users the necessary rights.

We recommend that the national specifications for the performance of safety checks are observed.



Competent person for explosion protection checks

Competent persons for explosion protection checks (hereinafter referred to as "competent person") are service technicians or persons who fulfil the following requirements:

- A completed vocational qualification that demonstrably proves their professional expertise
 - This proof must consist of a vocational qualification or a similar document.
- Professional experience indicating that the competent person has gained practical experience of industrial trucks over a proven period during their career.
 - During this time, this person has experienced a wide range of events that require tests to be carried out, e.g. following a hazard assessment or daily inspection.
- Recent professional involvement in the field of the industrial truck test in question and an appropriate further qualification are essential.
 - The competent person must have experience of carrying out the test in question or of carrying out similar tests. Moreover, this person must be aware of the latest technological developments regarding the industrial truck being tested and the risks being assessed
- Sufficient knowledge in the field of industrial trucks that have been converted for use in potentially explosive areas
- A qualification certificate in accordance with standard "DIN EN 60079-17:2014-10" and must attend training regarding new features no more than two years after first qualifying
- At least one year's experience in manufacturing, assembling or repairing the systems or system components set out in §1 para. 2 no. 3 of the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)
- At least one year's experience in manufacturing or repairing the devices, protection systems or safety, monitoring or control equipment set out in Article 1 of Directive 2014/34/EU
- The necessary knowledge of explosion protection and be familiar with the relevant technical regulations. They must also regularly refresh their knowledge



2

Definition of responsible persons

The competent person is permitted to work on industrial trucks manufactured by STILL that have been converted by Miretti.

Drivers

This truck must only be driven by persons who fulfil the following points:

The driver must:

- Be physically and mentally able to drive the truck safely
- · Be at least 18 years old
- · Be trained in driving industrial trucks
- Have proven their ability to drive and handle loads to the operating company or a representative of the operating company
- Have received instruction in explosion-protection regulations and rules of behaviour in areas at risk of explosions
- · Be assigned to drive this truck

If the driver has been trained in accordance with the BGG (General Employers' Liability Insurance Association Act) 925, their training meets the training requirements under §3 of the Health and Safety at Work Act and §9 of the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health.

 Observe the national regulations for the country in which the truck is being used.

Rights, obligations and codes of conduct

A DANGER

Risk of accident due to consuming intoxicants!

The use of drugs, alcohol or medication that affects reactions will impair the ability to drive the truck!

Individuals under the influence of the aforementioned substances are not permitted to perform work of any kind on or with the truck.

The driver must be trained in their rights and duties. This assumes that they have read and understood the operating instructions of the operating company.



Definition of responsible persons

The driver must:

- Have read and understood the operating instructions:
- Have familiarised themselves with safe operation of the truck
- Adhere to the rules of behaviour in areas at risk of explosions

Clothing

The driver must wear protective equipment (protection suit, safety shoes, safety helmet, protection goggles and gloves) that are appropriate to the conditions, the job and the load to be lifted. Sturdy footwear must be worn to ensure safe driving and braking.

The driver must wear antistatic clothing and footwear while working in potentially explosive areas.

The requirements for antistatic clothing are defined in the following standards:

- · Shoes
 - "EN ISO 20344 Personal protective equipment Test procedure for shoes" in the current version
- Protection suit including gloves
 "EN 1149-5 protection suit Electrostatic properties - Part 5: Material performance and design requirements"

Prohibition of use by unauthorised persons

The driver is responsible for the truck during working hours. He must not allow unauthorised persons to operate the truck.

When leaving the truck, the driver must secure it against unauthorised use, e.g. by removing the key.



Basic principles for safe operation

Basic principles for safe operation

Insurance cover on company premises

In many cases, company premises are restricted public traffic areas.



NOTE

The business liability insurance should be reviewed to ensure that, in the event of any damage caused in restricted public traffic areas, there is insurance cover for the truck in respect of third parties.

Modifications and retrofitting



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Decommissioning or modification of explosion-protection components is forbidden.

If the truck will be used for work that is not listed in the directives or in these instructions, the truck must be converted or retrofitted by the authorised service centre as required. Any structural modification can impair the handling and stability of the truck, and can result in accidents.

Any modifications that adversely affect the stability, the load capacity or the all-round visibility of the truck require written approval from the manufacturer. If necessary, obtain approval from the relevant authorities.

The following components may only be modified with prior written approval from the manufacturer:

- Brakes
- Steering
- · Operating devices
- · Safety systems
- Equipment variants
- Attachments



We warn against installing and using restraint systems that have not been approved by the manufacturer



A DANGER

Risk of explosion from additional bores in the battery hood!

Explosive gases can escape and can lead to potentially fatal injuries if they explode. Sealing bores with plugs is not sufficient to prevent gas from escaping.

- Do not drill any holes in the battery hood

A DANGER

Risk of accident from additional holes in the battery hood!

The rigidity of the battery hood is impaired and the battery hood can break. The driver's seat may collapse into the battery hood, which could cause the driver to perform uncontrolled steering and driving manoeuvres.

- Do not drill any holes in the battery hood.



Welding operations are forbidden.

The operating company is only permitted to make modifications to the truck independently if the manufacturer goes into liquidation and the company is not taken over by another legal person.

The operating company must also fulfil the following prerequisites:

- Design documents, test documents and assembly instructions associated with the modification must be permanently archived and remain accessible at all times.
- Check that the following points are adhered to with regard to modifications. Change if necessary.
 - Capacity rating plate
 - Decal information
 - Hazard warnings
 - Operating instructions
- Modifications must be designed, checked and implemented by a design office that specialises in industrial trucks. The design



2

Basic principles for safe operation

office must comply with the standards and directives valid at the time that modifications are made.

Decal information with the following data must be permanently affixed to the truck so that it is clearly visible:

- · Type of modification
- Date of modification
- Name and address of the company performing the modifications

Changes to the overhead guard and roof loads

A DANGER

In the event of the overhead guard failing due to a failing load or the truck tipping over, there are potentially fatal consequences for the driver. There is a risk to life!

Welding and drilling on the overhead guard changes the material characteristics and the structural design of the overhead guard. Excessive forces caused by falling loads or the truck tipping over may result in buckling of the modified overhead guard and no protection for the driver.

- Do not perform welding on the overhead guard.
- Do not perform drilling on the overhead guard.

A CAUTION

Heavy roof loads damage the overhead guard!

To ensure the stability of the overhead guard at all times, a roof load may only be mounted on the overhead guard if the structural design has been tested and the manufacturer has given approval.

 Seek advice from the authorised service centre for the mounting of roof loads.

Warning regarding non-original parts

Original parts, attachments and accessories are specially designed for this truck. We specifically draw your attention to the fact that parts, attachments and accessories supplied by other companies have not been tested and approved by STILL.



Basic principles for safe operation

A CAUTION

Installation and/or use of such products may therefore have a negative impact on the design features of the truck and thus impair active and/or passive driving safety.

We recommend that you obtain approval from the manufacturer and, if necessary, from the relevant regulatory authorities before installing such parts. The manufacturer accepts no liability for any damage caused by the use of non-original parts and accessories without approval.

Damage, defects and misuse of safety systems

Damage or other defects on the truck or attachment must be reported to the supervisor or responsible fleet manager immediately so that they can have the defect rectified.

Trucks and attachments that are not functional or safe to drive may not be used until they have been properly repaired.

Do not remove or deactivate safety systems and switches.

Fixed set values may only be changed with the approval of the manufacturer.

Work on the electrical system (e.g. connecting a radio, additional headlights etc.) is only permitted with the manufacturer's written approval. All electrical system interventions must be documented.

Even if they are removable, roof panels may not be removed, as they are designed to protect against small falling objects.



2

Basic principles for safe operation

Tyres



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

In potentially explosive areas, wheels and tyres that do not meet explosion-protection regulations may lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

- Only use approved, electrically conductive tyre types.
- Ensure that they are correctly labelled (1).

If "non-marking" tyres (non-marking, light-coloured) are used, antistatic belts must be attached beneath the truck. These antistatic belts have an electrically conductive connection to the chassis and the other end drags along the floor. In addition, a corona electrode with leak resistance must be fitted.

Non-marking tyres are identified by the safety information.

- Observe the explosion-protection regulations.
- Ensure that permissible tyres are used.
- Check the presence and condition of the antistatic belts/corona electrode.
- If in doubt, speak to the safety officer.



NOTE

Electrically conductive tyres are required on both axles!

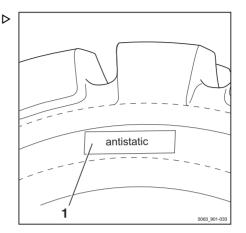
A DANGER

Risk to stability!

Failure to observe the following information and instructions can lead to a loss of stability. The truck may tip over. Risk of accident!

The following factors can lead to a loss of stability:

- Different tyres on the same axle, e.g. pneumatic tyres and superelastic tyres
- · Tyres not approved by the manufacturer
- · Excessive tyre wear
- · Tyres of inferior quality





Basic principles for safe operation

- · Changing rim wheel parts
- Combining rim wheel parts from different manufacturers

Therefore, the above-mentioned factors are **prohibited**.

The following rules must be observed to ensure stability:

- Only use tyres with equal and permitted levels of wear on the same axle.
- Only use wheels and tyres of the same type on the same axle, e.g. only superelastic tyres.
- Only use wheels and tyres approved by the manufacturer.
- Only use high-quality products.

Wheels and tyres approved by the manufacturer can be found on the spare parts list. If other wheels or tyres are to be used, authorisation from the manufacturer must be obtained beforehand



NOTE

Check with the authorised service centre before changing over to a different tyre size.

When changing wheels or tyres, ensure that the truck is not tilting. Always change wheels on the right and left (e.g.) at the same time. Changes must only be made following consultation with the manufacturer.

If the type of tyre used on an axle is changed, for example from superelastic tyres to pneumatic tyres, the load diagram must be changed accordingly.

Contact the authorised service centre regarding this matter.

Medical equipment

WARNING

Electromagnetic interference may occur on medical devices!

Only use equipment that is sufficiently protected against electromagnetic interference.



2

Basic principles for safe operation

Medical equipment, such as pacemakers or hearing aids, may not work properly when the truck is in operation.

 Ask your doctor or the manufacturer of the medical equipment to confirm that the medical equipment is sufficiently protected against electromagnetic interference.

Exercise caution when handling gas springs and accumulators

WARNING

Gas springs are under high pressure. Improper removal results in an elevated risk of injury.

For ease of operation, various functions on the truck can be supported by gas springs. Gas springs are complex components that are subject to high internal pressures (up to 300 bar). They may under no circumstances be opened unless instructed to do so, and may be installed only when not under pressure. If required, the authorised service centre will depressurise the gas spring in accordance with the regulations before removal. Gas springs must be depressurised before recycling.

- Avoid damage, lateral forces, buckling, temperatures over 80°C and heavy contamination.
- Damaged or defective gas springs must be changed immediately.
- Contact the authorised service centre.

WARNING

Accumulators are under high pressure. Improper installation of an accumulator results in an elevated risk of injury.

Before starting work on the accumulator it must be depressurised.

Contact the authorised service centre.

Length of the fork arms

A DANGER

Risk of accident due to the incorrect selection of fork arms!

- The fork arms must match the depth of the load.

If the fork arms are too short, the load may fall off the arms after it has been picked up. In



Basic principles for safe operation

addition, be aware that the load centre of gravity may shift as a result of dynamic forces, such as braking. A load that is otherwise resting safely on the fork arms may move forwards and fall.

If the fork arms are too long, they can catch on loading units behind the load that is to be picked up. These other loading units then fall over when the load is raised.

 For help with selecting the correct fork arms, contact the authorised service centre.



Residual risk

Residual risk

Residual dangers, residual risks



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion in the event of fire or smouldering!

In the worst case scenario, polluted, damaged or defective components can result in fire or smouldering.

If you smell fire:

- Immediately remove the truck from the potentially explosive area and park it safely.
- Initiate fire-fighting procedures.
- Inform the safety officer.

Despite careful working and compliance with standards and regulations, the possibility of other risks occurring when using the truck cannot be entirely excluded.

The truck and all other system components comply with current safety requirements. Nevertheless, some residual risk cannot be excluded, even when the truck is used for its intended purpose and all instructions are observed.

A residual risk cannot be excluded even beyond the narrow limits of the danger area that the truck itself represents. Persons in this area around the truck must exercise a heightened degree of awareness, so that they can react immediately in the event of any malfunction, incident or breakdown etc.

WARNING

Ignorance of the potential danger presented by a truck can lead to serious accidents!

All personnel working in the vicinity of the truck must be instructed regarding the hazards that arise through use of the truck.

In addition, your attention is drawn to the safety regulations given in these operating instructions.

 Inform personnel working in the area of the truck of possible hazards.



Risks can include:

- Escape of consumables due to leakages, rupture of lines and containers etc.
- Risk of accident when driving over difficult ground such as gradients, very smooth or uneven surfaces, or with poor visibility etc.
- Falling, tripping etc. when moving on the truck, especially in wet weather, with leaking consumables or on icy surfaces
- Fire and risk of explosion caused by batteries, electrical voltages and static discharges through clothing
- Spark formation caused by truck parts (lift mast, chassis, rear weight) striking against part of the building (gates, racking etc.)
- Human error resulting from failure to observe the safety regulations
- Unrepaired damage or defective and worn components
- · Insufficient maintenance and testing
- Use of incorrect consumables
- · Exceeding test intervals

The manufacturer shall not be liable for accidents involving the truck caused by the failure of the operating company to comply with these regulations either intentionally or due to negligence.

Stability

The stability of the truck has been tested to the latest technological standards and is guaranteed provided that the truck is used properly and according to its intended purpose. These standards only take into account the dynamic and static tipping forces that can arise during specified use in accordance with the operating rules and intended purpose. However, the danger of exceeding the moment of tilt due to improper use or incorrect operation and losing stability can never be excluded.

The loss of stability can be avoided or minimised by the following actions:

- Always secure the load against slipping, e.g. by lashing.
- Always transport unstable loads in suitable containers.
- Always drive slowly when cornering.



Residual risk

- Drive with the load lowered
- Even with sideshifts, align the load as centrally as possible with the truck and transport in this position.
- Avoid turning and driving diagonally across slopes or gradients.
- Never have the load facing downhill when travelling on slopes or gradients.
- Pick up only loads of the approved width.
- Do not transport swinging loads.
- Always take great care when transporting suspended loads.
- Do not drive over ramp edges or steps.

Special risks associated with using the truck and attachments



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working within potentially explosive areas with attachments that do not comply with explosion-protection regulations can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere!

- Only operate attachments that comply with the explosion-protection regulations
- Check the area of application by comparing with nameplate information on the attachments.
- If the area of application is not clear, ask a safety officer.

Approval from the manufacturer and attachment manufacturer must be obtained each time the truck is used in a manner that falls outside the scope of normal use, and in cases where the driver is not certain that he can use the truck correctly and without the risk of accidents

It is essential that the safety officer gives approval before each use.



Safety

Residual risk



Residual risk

Overview of hazards and countermeasures



This table is intended to help evaluate the hazards in your facility and applies to all drive types. It does not claim to be complete.

- Observe the national regulations for the country in which the truck is being used.

Hazard	Course of action	Check note √ done - Not applicable	Notes
Truck equipment does not comply with local regulations	Testing	0	If in doubt, consult the responsible factory in- spectorate or employ- ers' liability insurance association
Driver's lack of skills or qualifications	Driver training (sit-on and stand-on)	0	DGUV principle 308-001 VDI 3313 driver's li- cence
Usage by unauthorised persons	Access with key only for authorised persons	0	
Truck not safe for operation	Periodic inspection and rectification of defects	0	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)
Risk of falling when using working platforms	Compliance with national regulations (different national laws)	0	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV) and employer's liability in- surance associations
Impaired visibility due to load	Application planning	0	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)
Contamination of breathable air	Assessment of diesel exhaust gases	0	Technical Regulations for Hazardous Sub- stances (TRGS) 554 and the German Ordi- nance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)
	Assessment of LPG exhaust gases	0	German threshold limit values list (MAK-Liste) and the German Ordi- nance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)



Residual risk

Hazard	Course of action	Check note √ done - Not applicable	Notes
Impermissible usage (improper usage)	Provide operating instructions	0	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV) and German Health and la- bour protection law (ArbSchG)
	Written notice of in- struction to driver	0	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV) and German Health and la- bour protection law (ArbSchG)
	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV), ob- serve the operating in- structions	0	
When fuelling			
a) Diesel	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV), ob- serve the operating in- structions	0	
b) LPG	DGUV regulation 79, observe the operating instructions	0	
When charging the drive battery German Ordinance of Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV), of Serve the operating in structions		0	VDE 0510-47 (= DIN EN 62485-3): In particular - Ensure adequate ventilation - Insulation value within the permissible range
When using battery chargers	,		German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV) and DGUV rule 113-001
When parking LPG trucks	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV), DGUV rule 113-001 and observe the oper- ating instructions	0	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV) and DGUV rule 113-001



Residual risk

Hazard	Course of action	Check note √ done - Not applicable	Notes	
When operating driverle	When operating driverless transport systems			
Roadway quality inadequate	Clean/clear roadways	0	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)	
Loading equipment in- correct/slipped	Reposition load on pallet	0	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)	
Unpredictable driving behaviour	Employee training	0	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)	
Routes blocked	Mark routes Keep roadways clear	0	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)	
Routes intersect	Announce right-of-way rule	0	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)	
No person detection when placing goods in- to stock and removing goods from stock	Employee training	0	German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV)	

Danger to employees

According to the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV) and labour protection law (ArbSchG), the operating company must determine and assess hazards during operation, and establish the labour protection measures required for employees (Betr-SichVO). The operating company must therefore draw up appropriate operating instructions (§ 6 ArbSchG) and make them available to the driver. A responsible person must be appointed.



Please observe the definition of the following responsible persons: "operating company" and "driver"

The construction and equipment of the truck correspond to the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC and are therefore marked with CE labelling. These elements are therefore not



Residual risk

included in the hazard assessment. Attachments possess their own CE labelling and likewise are not included for that reason. The operating company must, however, select the type and equipment of the trucks so as to comply with the local provisions for deployment.

The result must be documented (§ 6 ArbSchG). In the case of truck applications involving similar hazard situations, the results may be summarised. This overview (see chapter "Overview of hazards and countermeasures") provides help on complying with this regulation. The overview specifies the main hazards that are the most frequent cause of accidents in the event of non-compliance. If other major operational hazards are involved, they must also be taken into consideration.

The conditions of use for trucks are broadly similar in many plants, so the hazards can be summarised in one overview. Observe the information provided by the relevant employers' liability insurance association on this subject.



Safety tests

Safety tests

Carrying out regular inspections on the truck

The operating company must ensure that the truck is checked by a specialist at least once a year or after particular incidents.

As part of this inspection, the technical condition of the truck must be completely tested with regard to accident safety. In addition, the truck must be thoroughly checked for damage that may have been caused by improper use. A test log must be created. The results of the inspection must be retained at least until a further two inspections have been carried out.

The inspection date is indicated by an adhesive label on the truck.

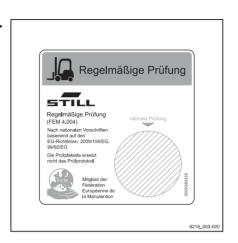
- Arrange for the authorised service centre to perform regular testing on the truck.
- Observe the guidelines for tests carried out on the truck in accordance with FEM 4.004.

The operating company is responsible for ensuring that any defects are remedied without delay.

- Notify your authorised service centre.



In addition, observe the national regulations for the country of use.



Explosion-protection checks



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

The operating company (refer to the "Definition of responsible persons - Operating company") is responsible for its working equipment in accordance with the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV). It is the operating company's responsibility to ensure that tests and repairs are carried out properly.

Each truck for use in potentially explosive areas must be checked regularly in accordance with FEM 4.004; see the chapter entitled "Regular safety inspection of the truck".

Regular testing for trucks used in potentially explosive areas must be carried out in accordance with the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health once every three years by a competent person; see also "Definition of responsible persons - Competent person". However, as a manufacturer, STILL recommends that this test is carried out annually. If the truck is subject to harsh application conditions, the interval between tests must be shortened.

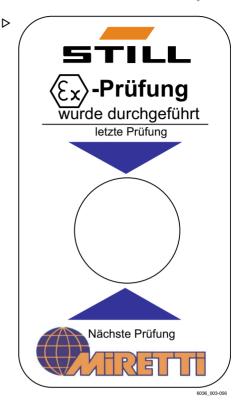
Create a test log. The results of the inspection must be retained at least until a further two inspections have been carried out.

The inspection date is indicated by an adhesive label on the truck.

- Have regular explosion-protection checks carried out on the truck.
- Observe the guidelines for carrying out checks on the truck in accordance with FEM 4.004.

The operating company is responsible for ensuring that any defects are remedied without delay.

- Notify the authorised service centre.
- Observe the national regulations for the country in which the truck is being used.





Safety tests

Testing the electrical system



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Trucks to be used in potentially explosive areas are designed for certain explosion groups, categories and temperature ranges. In potentially explosive areas, trucks that do not meet explosion-protection regulations may lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

- Only use trucks with an electrical system that complies with the valid explosion protection directives.
- The proper condition of the electrical system of trucks used in potentially explosive areas must be monitored continuously by a competent person.
- Observe the explosion-protection regulations.

The scope of the checks is described in the "workshop manual".

A test log book is to be kept if requested by the responsible authority.

- Only a competent person may perform system testing.
- Observe the national regulations for the country in which the truck is being used.

Insulation testing

The insulation of the truck must have sufficient insulation resistance. For this reason, insulation testing in accordance with DIN EN 1175 and DIN 43539, VDE 0117 and VDE 0510 must be conducted at least once yearly as part of the FEM testing.

The insulation testing results must be at least the test values given in the following two tables.

For insulation testing, contact the authorised service centre.

The exact procedure for this insulation testing is described in the workshop manual for this truck.



Safety tests



The truck's electrical system and drive batteries must be checked separately.

Test values for the drive battery

Component	Recommended test voltage	Measurements		Nominal volt- age U _{Batt}	Test values
Battery	50 VDC	Batt+ Batt-	Battery tray	24 volts	> 1200 Ω
	100 VDC			48 volts	> 2400 Ω
	100 VDC			80 volts	> 4000 Ω

Test values for the entire truck

Nominal volt- age	Test voltage	Last values for new frucks	Minimum values over the duration of the service life
24 volts	50 VDC	Min. 50 kΩ	> 24 kΩ
48 volts	100 VDC	Min. 100 kΩ	> 48 kΩ
80 volts	100 VDC	Min. 200 kΩ	> 80 kΩ



Safety regulations for handling consumables

Safety regulations for handling consumables

Permissible consumables

A WARNING

Consumables can be dangerous!

- Observe general information and safety information regarding the use of consumables.
- Refer to the chapter entitled "Safety regulations for handling consumables".
- Note the safety datasheets provided by the manufacturer of the consumables in question.
- Only use consumables that are approved for use with this truck. The permissible consumables can be found in the maintenance data table.

Oils



A DANGER

Oils are flammable!

- Follow the statutory regulations.
- Do not allow oils to come into contact with hot engine parts.
- No smoking, fires or naked flames!



A DANGER

Oils are toxic!

- Avoid contact and consumption.
- If vapour or fumes are inhaled, move to fresh air immediately.
- In the event of contact with the eyes, rinse thoroughly (for at least 10 minutes) with water and then consult an eye specialist.
- If swallowed, do not induce vomiting.
 Seek immediate medical attention.



Safety regulations for handling consumables



▲ WARNING

Prolonged intensive contact with the skin can result in dryness and irritate the skin!

- Avoid contact and consumption.
- Wear protective gloves.
- After any contact, wash the skin with soap and water, and then apply a skin care product.
- Immediately change soaked clothing and shoes.

A WARNING

There is a risk of slipping on spilled oil, particularly when combined with water!

 Spilt oil should be removed immediately with oilbinding agents and disposed of according to the regulations.



ENVIRONMENT NOTE

Oil is a water-polluting substance!

- Always store oil in containers that comply with the applicable regulations.
- Avoid spilling oils.
- Spilt oil should be removed immediately with oil-binding agents and disposed of according to the regulations.
- Dispose of old oils according to the regulations.

Hydraulic fluid



A WARNING

These fluids are pressurised during operation of the truck and are hazardous to your health.

- Do not spill the fluids.
- Follow the statutory regulations.
- Do not allow the fluids to come into contact with hot engine parts.



Safety regulations for handling consumables



WARNING

These fluids are pressurised during operation of the truck and are hazardous to your health.

- Do not allow the fluids to come into contact with the skin.
- Avoid inhaling spray.
- Penetration of pressurised fluids into the skin is particularly dangerous if these fluids escape at high pressure due to leaks in the hydraulic system. In case of such injury, immediate medical assistance is required.
- To avoid injury, use appropriate personal protective equipment (e.g. protective gloves, industrial goggles, skin protection and skin care products).



ENVIRONMENT NOTE

Hydraulic fluid is a water-polluting substance.

- Always store hydraulic fluid in containers that comply with regulations
- Avoid spills
- Spilt hydraulic fluid should be removed immediately with oil-binding agents and disposed of according to the regulations
- Dispose of old hydraulic fluid according to the regulations

Battery acid



WARNING

Battery acid contains dissolved sulphuric acid. This is toxic.

- Avoid touching or swallowing the battery acid at all costs.
- In case of injury, seek medical advice immediately.





▲ WARNING

Battery acid contains dissolved sulphuric acid. This is corrosive.

- When working with battery acid, use appropriate PSA (rubber gloves, apron, protection goggles).
- When working with battery acid, never wear a watch or jewellery.
- Do not allow any acid to get onto clothing or skin or into the eyes. If this does happen, rinse immediately with plenty of clean water.
- In case of injury, seek medical advice immediately.
- Immediately rinse away spilt battery acid with plenty of water.
- Follow the statutory regulations.



ENVIRONMENT NOTE

 Dispose of used battery acid in line with the applicable regulations.

Disposal of consumables



ENVIRONMENT NOTE

Materials that accumulate during repair, maintenance and cleaning must be collected properly and disposed of in accordance with the national regulations for the country in which the truck is being used. Work must only be carried out in areas designated for that purpose. Care must be taken to minimise any environmental pollution.

- Soak up any spilt fluids such as hydraulic oil or gearbox oil immediately using an oilbinding agent.
- Neutralise any spilt battery acid immediately.
- Always observe national regulations concerning the disposal of used oil.



Emissions

Emissions

The values specified apply to a standard truck (compare the specifications in the "Technical data" chapter). Different tyres, lift masts, additional units etc. may produce different values.

Noise emissions

The values were determined based on measuring procedures from the standard EN 12053 "Safety of industrial trucks - Test methods for measuring noise emissions", based on EN 12001, EN ISO 3744 and the requirements of EN ISO 4871.

This machine emits the following sound pressure level:

Continuous sound pressure level in the driver's compartment

L _{pAZ}	Measurement uncer- tainty K _{pA}	
< 66.3 dB(A)	4 dB(A)	

The values were determined in the test cycle on an identical machine from the weighted values for operating statuses and idling.

Time proportions:

- Lifting 18%
- Idling 58%
- · Driving 24%

However, the indicated noise levels at the truck cannot be used to determine the noise emissions at workplaces according to the most recent version of **Directive 2003/10/EC** (daily personal noise pollution). If necessary, these noise emissions must be determined by the operating company directly at the workplaces under the actual conditions there (additional noise sources, special application conditions, sound reflections).



NOTE

Please observe the definition of the following responsible person: "operating company".



Vibrations

The vibrations of the machine have been determined on an identical machine in accordance with the standards DIN EN 13059 "Safety of industrial trucks - Test methods for measuring vibration" and DIN EN 12096 "Mechanical vibration - Declaration and verification of vibration emission values"

Frequency-weighted effective value of acceleration on the seat

MSG 65 driver's seat	Uncertainty of meas- urement	
< 0.6 m/s ²	K = 0.18	

Tests have indicated that the amplitude of the hand and arm vibrations on the steering wheel or on the operating devices in the truck is less than 2.5 m/s². There are therefore no measurement guidelines for these measurements.

The individual vibration load on the driver over the course of a working day must be determined by the operating company in accordance with **Directive 2002/44/EC** at the actual place of use in order to consider all additional influences, such as driving route, intensity of use etc.



NOTE

Please observe the definition of the following responsible person: "operating company".



Emissions

Battery



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion due to flammable gases!

During charging, lead-acid batteries release a mixture of oxygen and hydrogen (oxyhydrogen gas). This gas mixture is explosive and must not be ignited.

- Make sure that there is always sufficient ventilation in working areas that are entirely or partially enclosed.
- Keep away from open flames and flying sparks.
- Do not smoke.
- Observe the safety regulations for handling the battery.



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

When handling or charging batteries in potentially explosive areas, spark formation or overheating can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

No work may be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas.

Charge batteries only outside of potentially explosive areas.

Radiation

In accordance with the guidelines DIN EN 62471:2009-03 (VDE 0837-471:2009-03), the STILL Safety-Light and the warning zone light (variants) are assigned to risk group 2 (medium risk) due to their photobiological hazard potential.

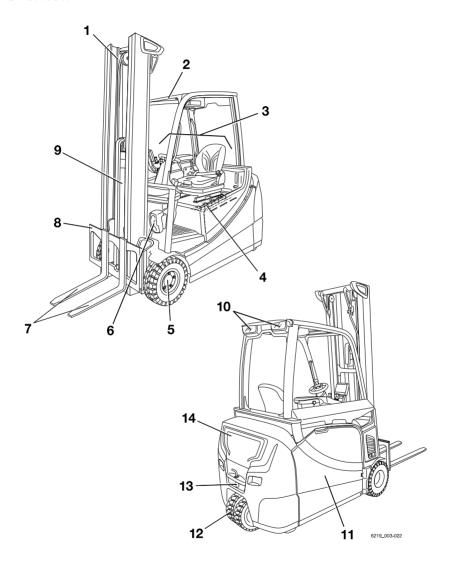


Overviews

3

Overview

Overview





Overview

1	Lift mast	8	Fork carriage
2	Overhead guard	9	Lift cylinder
3	Ex Driver's compartment	10	Rear lighting
4	Ex Battery (in the battery compartment)	11	Battery door
5	Ex Drive axle with traction motors	12	Ex Steering axle
6	⟨£x⟩ Front lighting	13	Towing device
7	⟨Ex⟩ Fork arms	14	Counterweight

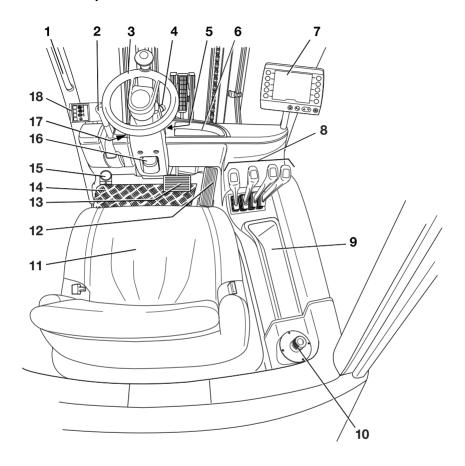


The truck equipment may differ from the equipment shown.



Driver's compartment

Driver's compartment





Driver's compartment

- Handle
- 2 Parking brake lever
- 3 Steering wheel
- 4 Emergency off switch
- 5 Key switch or pushbutton
- 6 Compartment
- 7 Display/control unit "STILL Easy Control"
- 8 Operating devices for hydraulic and driving functions
- 9 Compartment for storing the operating instructions and the hexagon socket wrench for emergency lowering

On category 2 explosion-protected trucks, the plastic parts are coated with a special antistatic paint that prevents the build-up of an electrostatic charge. The coated areas are identified with the decal information "ELECTRICAL-LY CONDUCTIVE".



The truck equipment may differ from the equipment shown.

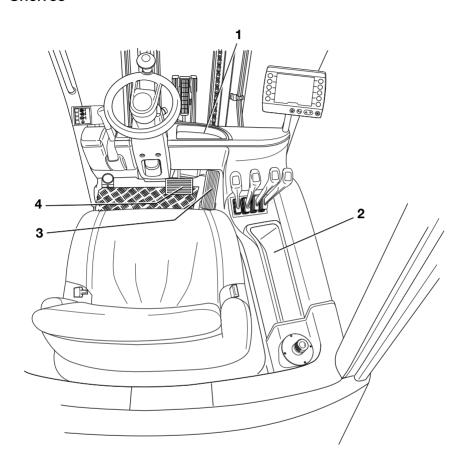
- Battery isolating switch Driver's seat 10
- 11
- 12 Accelerator pedal
- 13 Brake pedal
- 14 Bottom plate
- 15 Ex Pneumatic signal horn 16 Steering column adjustment lever
- 17 ⟨Ex⟩ Reset button
- Explosion-protection warning lights 18



3

Shelves

Shelves





Shelves

WARNING

Risk of accident caused by blocked pedals!

Objects may fall into the footwell during travel as a result of steering or braking. They can slip between and under the pedals (3, 4). They then block the pedals. It may then not be possible to brake the truck when necessary.

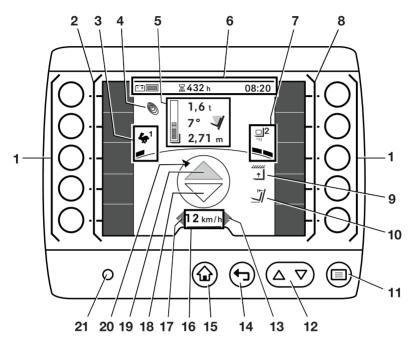
- Only store objects that fit on the shelves(1, 2).
- Make sure that objects cannot fall from the shelves (1, 2) when the truck sets off, is steered or braked.

The truck is equipped with a compartment (2) for the operating instructions and the hexagon socket wrench for emergency lowering. The safety officer must decide whether the operating instructions and the hexagon socket wrench may be carried in potentially explosive areas.



Operating devices and display elements

Display-operating unit "STILL Easy Control"



- 1 Softkeys
- 2 Left-hand favourites bar
- 3 Selected drive programme with driving dynamics display
- 4 Blue-Q symbol
- 5 Load information (variants):
 - Load measurement Lift-mast tilt angle
 - Lift height Bar display
- 6 Status bar: battery charge, operating hours, time
- 7 Selected load programme with load dynamics display
- 8 Right-hand favourites bar

- 2 Lift height restriction
- 10 Automatic mast vertical positioning
- 11 Menu button
- 12 Scrolling buttons
- 13 "Right" turn indicator display
- 14 Back button
- 15 Main display button
- 16 Driving speed or parking brake (P)
- 17 "Left" turn indicator display
- 18 "Reverse" drive direction indicator
- 19 "Forward" drive direction indicator
- 20 Display for direction of movement of the truck
- 21 Brightness sensor



[&]quot;STILL Easy Control" is a third-generation display-operating unit for industrial trucks.

It is used as an operating device for the usual functions of the truck, such as controlling lighting and windscreen wiper functions and adjusting the driving dynamics.

It also shows information about the status of the truck, such as the battery charge level, display messages and operating hours.

The displays shown in this figure are examples. The display-operating unit provides further display options that can be configured by the driver or fleet manager.

For information about the other display options, see the original operating instructions entitled "STILL Easy Control display-operating unit".

The display-operating unit is attached to the armrest, except in trucks equipped with multi-lever operation. If the truck is equipped with multi-lever operation, the display-operating unit is swivel-mounted on the right A-pillar.

 For information on swivelling the display-operating unit, see the section entitled "Adjusting the swivelling display-operating unit" in the chapter entitled "Checks and tasks before daily use".



NOTE

Do not put a label over the brightness sensor (21) or cover it with anything. This sensor allows the display to adapt to the current light conditions.



Explosion-protection warning lights >



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

During operation, the surface temperatures and insulation values of various components are monitored by sensors.

Do not operate the truck when a warning light is illuminated.

The explosion-protection warning lights are located on the left-hand post, in the driver's field of view. The warning lights indicate when limit values are reached.

- 1 Temperature of the right-hand traction motor
- 2 Temperature of the left-hand traction motor
- 3 Pump motor temperature
- Insulation warning light



The explosion-protection light (a) insulation warning is not present in category 3 trucks.

- See the section on "Behaviour when the explosion-protection warning lights are illuminated" in the "Display messages" chapter.

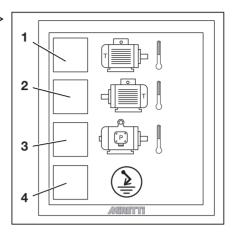
Battery isolating switch

The battery isolating switch (1) is located on the right next to the storage compartment. It switches the electrical system into a de-energised state.

Use this switch to shut down the truck safely.

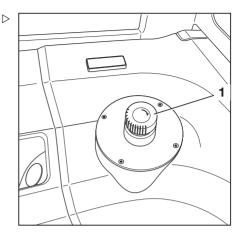
The battery isolating switch must be labelled in the language of the country in which it is being used. Only the authorised service centre may change the labelling.

There are two versions of the battery isolating switch:





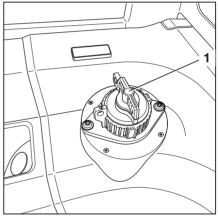
Push-and-turn version



Turn version



This battery isolating switch can be secured in the "OFF" position by using a lead seal or a padlock to prevent the switch from being actuated without authorisation.



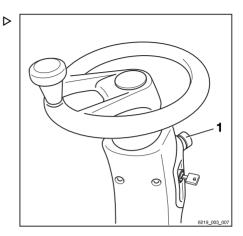


 \triangleright

Emergency off switch

The emergency off switch (1) is situated on the right-hand side of the steering column. It disconnects the drives from the power supply.

Do not use this switch to park the truck safely.



Reset button



A DANGER

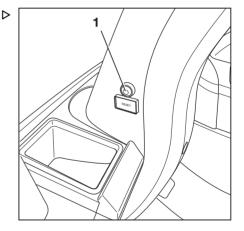
Risk of explosion!

Only the safety officer is authorised to order the reset button to be pressed.

They must use a suitable measuring device to determine that there is not a potentially explosive mixture of air in the area around the truck. Only then may the truck be driven out of the potentially explosive area.

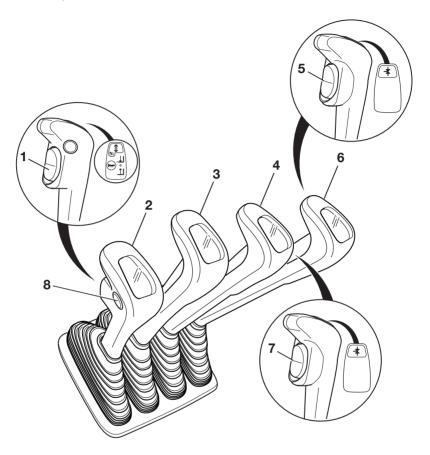
The Reset button (1) is located to the left of the steering column. If the truck has switched off automatically, this key allows the truck to be manoeuvred out of the danger zone. Only the safety officer may decide whether the truck can be removed from the potentially explosive area. See also the "Automatic emergency shutdown" section in the chapter entitled "Procedure in emergencies".

The Reset button must be labelled in the language of the country in which it is being used. Only the authorised service centre may change the labelling.





Multi-lever operation



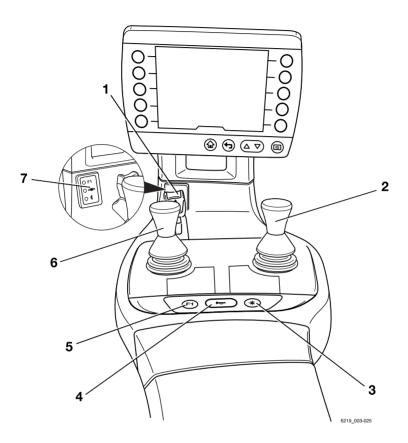
- Drive direction switch
- 2 "Lift/lower" operating lever
- 3 "Tilt" operating lever
- 4 Operating lever for attachments (variant)
- 5 Function key for the "5th function" (variant)
- Operating lever for attachments (variant)
- 7 Function key for the "5th or 6th function" (variants)
- 8 Signal hórn button



In the dual-pedal version (variant), the drive direction switch (1) is used exclusively to activate the cruise control function (variant). The drive direction is selected exclusively via the pedals in the dual-pedal version.



Double mini-lever



- Drive direction switch
- Cross lever "Attachments"
 Function key for the "5th function"
- 2 3 4 Signal horn button

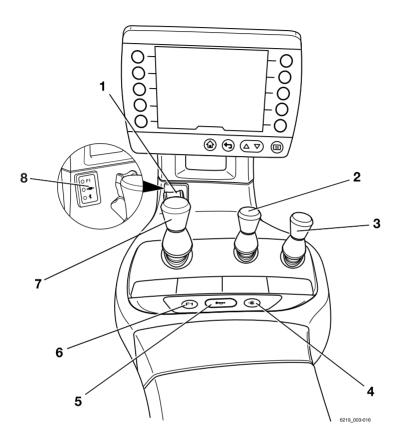
- "F1" function key
 "Lift mast" 360° lever
 Display field for the hydraulic functions



- In the dual-pedal version (variant), the drive direction switch (1) is used exclusively to activate the cruise control function (variant). The drive direction is selected exclusively via the pedals in the dual-pedal version.
- The authorised service centre can assign different functions to the "F1" function key (5).



Triple mini-lever



- Drive direction switch
 "Auxiliary hydraulics 1" operating lever
 "Auxiliary hydraulics 2" operating lever
 Function key for the "5th function" 2

- 5 6 7
- Signal horn button
 "F1" function key
 "Lift mast" 360° lever
 Display field for the hydraulic functions

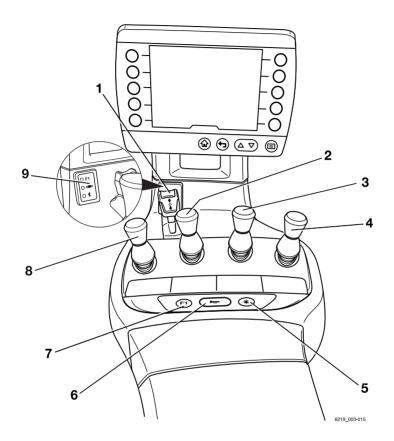




- In the dual-pedal version (variant), the drive direction switch (1) is used exclusively to activate the cruise control function (variant). The drive direction is selected exclusively via the pedals in the dual-pedal version.
- The authorised service centre can assign different functions to the "F1" function key (6).



Quadruple mini-lever



- 2 3 4 5
- Drive direction switch
 "Tilt" operating lever
 "Auxiliary hydraulics 1" operating lever
 "Auxiliary hydraulics 2" operating lever
 Function key for the "5th function"

- 6 7
- 8
- Signal horn button
 "F1" function key
 "Lift/lower" operating lever
 Display field for the hydraulic functions

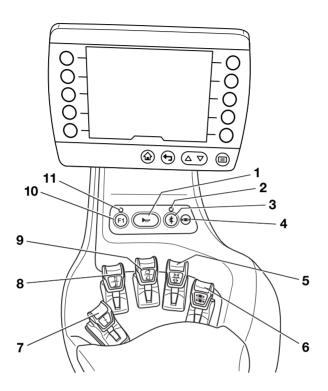




- In the dual-pedal version (variant), the drive direction switch (1) is used exclusively to activate the cruise control function (variant). The drive direction is selected exclusively via the pedals in the dual-pedal version.
- The authorised service centre can assign different functions to the "F1" function key (7).



Fingertip



- Signal horn button
- LED for the "5th function"
- Function key for the "5th function"
- 2 3 4 5 6 LED for the "Clamp release"
- Operating lever for "Auxiliary hydraulics 1"
- Operating lever for "Auxiliary hydraulics 2"
- Drive direction switch
 - "Lift/lower" operating lever
- "Tilt" operating lever 9
- 10 "F1" function key
- LED for "F1"

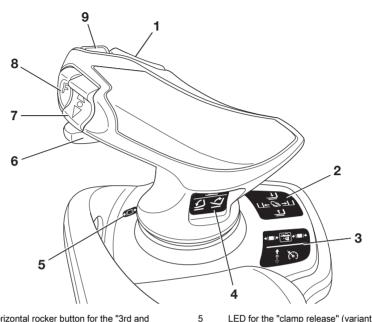
8



- In the dual-pedal version (variant), the drive direction switch (7) is used exclusively to activate the cruise control function (variant). The drive direction is selected exclusively via the pedals in the dual-pedal version.
- The authorised service centre can assign different functions to the "F1" function key (10).



Joystick 4Plus



- 1 Horizontal rocker button for the "3rd and 4th hydraulic function": tilting the lift mast
- 2 Pictograms for the hydraulic functions: lifting, lowering and sideshift
- 3 Pictograms for the 5th hydraulic function and for the clamp locking mechanism (variant)
- Pictograms for the 3rd and 4th hydraulic function
- LED for the "clamp release" (variant)
- Slider for the "4th hydraulic function"
 - Vertical rocker button for the "drive direction"
- 8 Shift key "F"

7

9 Signal horn button



- · In the dual-pedal version (variant), the vertical "drive direction" rocker button (7) is used exclusively to activate the cruise control function (variant). The drive direction is selected exclusively via the pedals in the dual-pedal version.
- The authorised service centre can assign different functions to the shift key "F" (8), e.g. switchover of the control axles for actuation of the 5th hydraulic function.

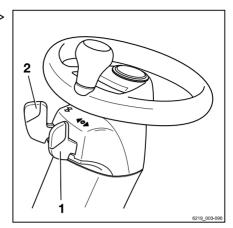


Travel direction selector and indica- ▷ tor module (variant)

The travel direction selector and indicator module is located on the steering column below the steering wheel.



If the drive direction switch on the operating device is defective and the truck stops in a danger area, the drive direction selection lever on the travel direction selector and indicator module can be used for emergency driving. Refer to the section entitled "Emergency driving via the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever" in the chapter entitled "Procedure in emergencies".



- Drive direction selection lever
- Turn indicator switch



Operation

Checks and tasks before daily use

Visual inspections and function checking



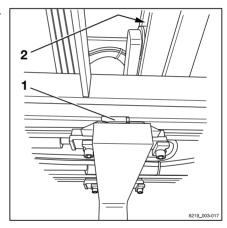
WARNING

Risk of injury from falling off the truck!

When climbing onto the truck, there is a risk of getting stuck or slipping and falling. Use suitable equipment to reach higher points on the truck.

- Use only the steps provided for this purpose to climb onto the truck.
- Use equipment such as stepladders or platforms to reach inaccessible areas.

Damage to the truck or the attachment (variant), non-functional switches or safety systems and modification of predefined set values can lead to unpredictable and dangerous situations. To ensure that the truck is operated safely, the visual inspections and function checking must be carried out before daily use. The components that must be checked and their check points are listed in the following table. If damage or other defects are identified on the truck or the attachment (variant) during the following inspections, the truck must not be used until it has been properly repaired. Damage or other defects must be reported to the supervisor or the responsible fleet manager immediately so that repairs by the authorised service centre can be arranged.



Fork arms and roller tracks

Ensure that the truck is safe for operation each day before it is used:

Component	Course of action
Fork arms, general lifting accessories	Perform a visual inspection to check for deformation and wear (e.g. to check if they are bent, broken or feature significant wear). Check the condition and function of the safety devices (1) to prevent lifting and shifting. Check that fork arms and, where applicable, fork extensions with a special cladding specifically for explosion protection are fitted. The minimum thickness of the cladding must be at least 1 mm at every point. See the section entitled "Checking the fork arms".
Roller tracks (2)	Make sure that there is a film of grease.



Component	Course of action
Load chains	Perform a visual inspection to ensure that the chains are intact and have adequate and even tension.
Attachments (variant)	Ensure that the attachments are mounted correctly in accordance with the operating instructions from the manufacturer. Perform a visual inspection to ensure that the attachments are intact and are leak-tight. Perform checks to ensure the attachments are working correctly.
Lift cylinders, tilt cylinders, tank, valve block, hoses, pipes, connections	Perform a visual inspection for damage and leakages. Have damaged components replaced by the authorised service centre.
Underside	Check the area under the truck for leaking consumables.
Wheels, tyres	Perform a visual inspection for wear and damage. Make sure that only rims of the same type from the same manufacturer are fitted. In the event of uneven tyre wear, replace both tyres. Observe the safety regulations in the section entitled "Tyres".
Axle	Make sure that no consumables are escaping from the axle. Check that the temperature sensors and wiring on the traction motor/pump motor are in good condition and are securely attached. The electric cables and line inlets must be free from damage. The total damage to the antistatic paintwork and seat covering must amount to no more than 100 cm ² .
Overhead guard, guard grille (variant)	Perform a visual inspection for integrity. Check for secure mounting.
Steps	Make sure they are clean (free of ice, not slippery).
Panes of glass (variant)	Perform a visual inspection for integrity. Make sure they are clean (also free of ice).
Handholds	Check for secure mounting.
Maintenance lids	Check the close function and close.
Battery hood	Make sure that there are no unused bores in the battery hood.
Battery door	Perform a visual inspection for integrity and deformation. Check that the interlock is in good condition and is working correctly. Check the close function. Close.



Component	Course of action
Battery	Check that the interlock is in good condition and is working correctly. Lock the battery. Ensure that the battery is approved for use in potentially explosive areas.
Battery male connector and plug connection	Inspect the battery male connector and the plug connection for moisture or any foreign objects that may have become lodged and remove as necessary, e.g. using compressed air. Perform a visual inspection for integrity and deformation. Check the contacts. Have damaged battery male connectors replaced by the authorised service centre.
Coupling pin, tow coupling (variant)	Make sure that only a coupling pin that is approved for use in potentially explosive areas is used. Perform a visual inspection for deformation and wear (for example: bent, torn, broken). Check the securing bush in the counterweight for integrity and to ensure that it is working correctly. Check that the linchpin is present and working correctly (chain, rope, split pin).
Labelling, adhesive label	Check that labels are present and intact/legible. Replace damaged or missing adhesive labels in accordance with the section entitled "Labelling points".
Driver's seat, seat belt	Check the integrity and function.
Display-operating unit: assistance systems	Check the function of the "assistance systems" listed in the menu. Refer to the section entitled "Function checking of assistance systems".
Lighting, warning units	Check the integrity and function. Check the setting of the warning zone light.
Antistatic belt (3), corona electrode (4) (See the following illustration.)	Perform a visual inspection for integrity. Ensure cleanliness. Make sure that the antistatic belt(3) is still long enough to touch the ground in all situations. The discharge wires of the corona electrode (4) must not touch the ground. The wires discharge the energy to the air.



(a) Depending on the tyres used, the truck is fitted with one or more antistatic belts (3) and/or with a corona electrode (4). These components ensure that the truck cannot charge statically.

- Do not use the truck if there is any damage or defects.
- In this case, contact your authorised service centre

Any other necessary tasks are summarised under their own headings, e.g. adjusting the driver's seat.

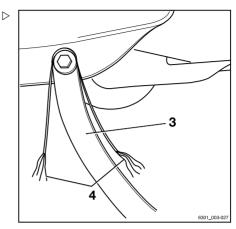


A DANGER

Insufficient explosion protection carries a risk of explosion!

If the explosion-protection components are defective or no longer present, do not operate the truck in potentially explosive areas.

- Notify the authorised service centre.



Antistatic belt and corona electrode

Climbing into and out of the truck

A WARNING

Risk of injury when climbing into and out of the truck due to slipping, striking parts of the truck or becoming stuck!

If the footwell cover is very dirty or smeared with oil, there is a risk of slipping. There is a risk of hitting your head on the overhead guard post or of your clothes becoming stuck when climbing out of the truck.

- Ensure that the footwell cover is not slippery.
- Do not jump into or out of the truck.
- Ensure that you have a secure grip on the truck.



WARNING

Risk of injury when jumping out of the truck!

If your clothing or jewellery (e.g. watch, ring etc.) becomes stuck on a component while you are jumping onto or out of the truck, this can lead to serious injuries (from falling, loss of fingers etc.). It is forbidden to jump out of the truck.

- Do not jump out of the truck.
- Do not wear jewellery at work.
- Do not wear loose-fitting workwear.

A CAUTION

Components may become damaged through incorrect use!

Truck components, such as the driver's seat, steering wheel, parking brake lever etc., are not designed to be used for climbing in and out of the truck and may be damaged due to misuse.

 Only use the fittings specifically designed for the purpose of climbing into and out of the truck.

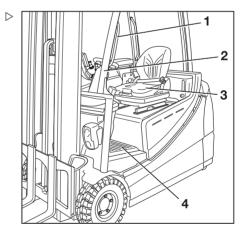
To assist with climbing into and out of the truck, the footwell (4) must be used as a step and the handle (1) must be used for support. The post of the overhead guard (2) can also be used for support.

Always climb into the truck facing forwards:

- Grip the handle (1) with your left hand and do not let go.
- Place your left foot into the footwell (4).
- Climb into the truck with your right foot and sit down on the driver's seat (3).

Always climb out of the truck backwards:

- Grip the handle (1) with your left hand and do not let go.
- Stand up from the driver's seat and place your left foot in the footwell (4).
- Climb out of the truck right foot first.





Safety information regarding electrostatic charge



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion due to static charge!

 Always wear an antistatic protection suit when working in a potentially explosive area.

This seat is covered in electrically conductive material. This material is electrically bonded to the truck earth.

 Do not put any additional covers, e.g. blankets or furs, on the seat.

Adjusting the driver's seat and armrest

Adjusting the driver's seat and armrest is one of the checks and tasks that must be performed before daily use. The truck can only be operated safely when the seat position is correct.

Refer to the following chapter entitled "Driver's seat".

Adjusting the steering column

- Pull up and hold the lever (2) for steering column adjustment.
- Position the steering column (1), then push the lever down again and allow the steering column to engage.

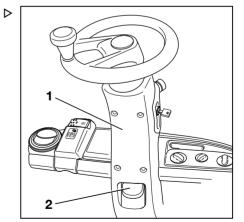
A DANGER

Risk of accident!

Ensure that the steering column is positioned securely.

The steering column must click into place.

Never adjust the steering column while driving.





Adjusting the swivelling display-operating unit

If the truck is equipped with multi-lever operation, the display-operating unit is swivel-mounted on the right A-pillar.

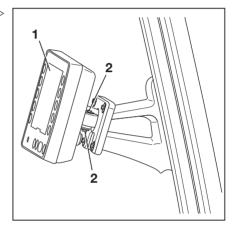
The display-operating unit can be swivelled from the neutral position to 15° to the left, right, up and down. The unit cannot rotate around its own axis.

To change the resistance for adjusting the display-operating unit, there are two socket head screws (2) on the support for the display-operating unit. The hexagon socket wrench for emergency lowering can be used to loosen or tighten the socket head screws (2).

- Loosen the socket head screws (2) as required.
- Hold the display-operating unit (1) in place.
- Adjust the display-operating unit (1) so that it can be read without glare.
- Tighten the socket head screws (2) as required.



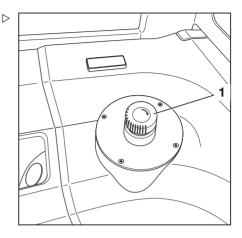
If the angle of the display-operating unit changes during driving, tighten the socket head screws. This makes the display-operating unit more secure in the support mounting.



Switching on the battery isolating switch

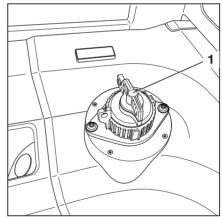
Push-and-turn version

Turn the battery isolating switch (1) clockwise until it unlocks.



Turn version

 Turn the battery isolating switch (1) in a clockwise direction to the "ON" position.

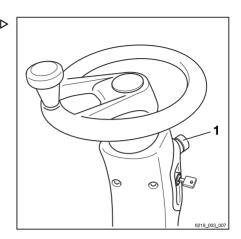




 \triangleright

Unlock the emergency off switch

 Turn the emergency off switch (1) clockwise until it pops out.



Checking the emergency off function

A WARNING

No electric braking assistance is available when the emergency off switch is actuated!

Actuating the emergency off switch disconnects the drives from the power supply.

- To brake, actuate the service brake.
- Drive the truck forwards slowly.
- Push the emergency off switch (1).

The truck will coast to a stop.

The message Emergency off active

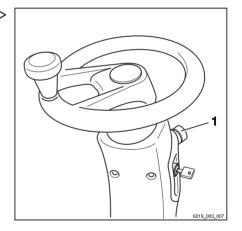
- appears on the display/operating unit.
- Stop the truck by actuating the brake pedal.



In trucks with an electric parking brake, the electric parking brake will be applied as soon as the truck comes to a stop.

 Turn the emergency off switch (1) clockwise until it pops out.

The truck performs internal self testing. It is then ready for operation again.



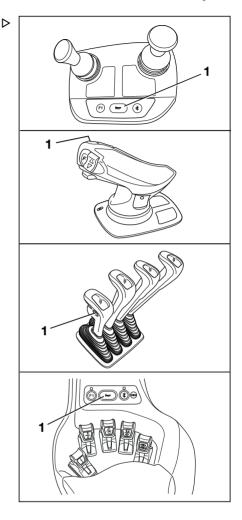


Operating the signal horn

The signal horn is used to warn people against imminent danger or to announce your intention to overtake.

- Press the signal horn button (1).

The signal horn sounds.





Operating the pneumatic signal horn

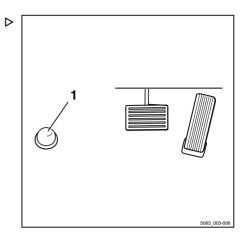
The signal horn is used to warn people against imminent danger or to announce your intention to overtake.

Depending on the application and configuration, the truck is equipped with a pneumatic signal horn.

To ensure that the signal horn sounds, the air must be pressed out of a bellows on the bottom plate and into the signal horn.

- Press the bellows (1) using your left foot.

The signal horn sounds.



Using the driver's cab



A DANGER

Risk of explosion due to static charge!

Depending on the version, non-conductive parts (plastic parts) on the truck must be painted using a special antistatic paint. This paint prevents the parts from building up an electrostatic charge. Otherwise, static discharge may occur, resulting in explosions in the surrounding atmosphere in potentially explosive areas.

The non-conductive parts of the cab (variant) must also be covered with antistatic materials or coated with antistatic paint.

 Only drive into potentially explosive areas if the cab or fabric-covered cab complies with explosion protection directives.



If the plastic parts on the truck are not equipped with special antistatic paint, decal information is attached to the non-conductive parts: "Non-conductive parts - risk of electrostatic charge - only clean using a damp cloth"



A DANGER

Risk of fatal injury in the event of falling from the truck if it tips over!

In order to prevent the driver from sliding underneath the truck and being crushed if the truck tips over, a restraint system must be in place and must be used. The restraint system prevents the driver from being thrown from the truck if it tips over. The cab door must be sturdy and be closed in order for the driver's cab to function as a driver restraint system. Fabric-covered cabs (variant) with doors made of plastic or canvas do not constitute a driver restraint system and offer no protection from the consequences of the truck tipping over!

- Close the cab door before use.
- If the door is open or has been removed, use a comparably secure restraint system.
- We recommend that you always use the seat belt.



Checking the brake system for correct function

A DANGER

Risk of accident in the event of failure of the brake system!

If the brake system fails, the truck will be insufficiently braked.

 Do **not** operate the truck if the brake system is faulty.

Checking the electric brake

A DANGER

Risk of accident if the braking effect of the electric brake is inadequate!

The braking effect of the electric brake may be insufficient for emergency braking.

 Always actuate the brake pedal (1) for emergency braking.

A DANGER

Risk of accident due to excessive speed!

Depending on the charge state of the battery, regenerative braking may be insufficient when driving downhill, meaning that the maximum permissible speed of the truck is exceeded.

- Press the brake pedal (1).

If the driving speed is restricted or if the opposite drive direction is selected, the truck is braked using the electric brake.

 To actuate this, release the accelerator pedal (2).

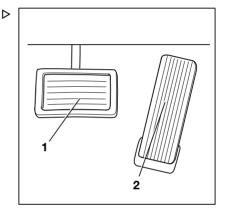
The truck must decelerate and remain stationary.

 If the truck does not slow down, press the brake pedal (1).

Checking the service brake

- Release the parking brake.
- Press the brake pedal (1).

There must be a slight pedal clearance and then a noticeable brake pressure point.





- Accelerate the unladen truck in a clear area
- Press the brake pedal (1) firmly.

The truck must decelerate noticeably.

Checking the parking brake on a gradient or a HGV ramp



▲ DANGER

Risk to life if the truck rolls away!

If the parking brake is not applied, the truck could run people over.

- Do not leave the truck until the parking brake has been applied.
- Stop the truck on a steep gradient (e.g. a HGV ramp) and actuate the parking brake.

The parking brake must hold the truck on the incline

- If the truck rolls away despite the parking brake being applied, stop the truck using the service brake.
- In an emergency, secure the truck with wedges on the downhill-facing side to prevent it from rolling away.
- Have the parking brake checked and repaired by the authorised service centre.

Checking the parking brake on a level surface

A WARNING

Risk of accident from abrupt deceleration!

The truck will decelerate abruptly if the parking brake is applied.

- Fasten the seat belt.
- Use the available restraint systems.
- Find a sufficiently large and open area in which nobody will be endangered or obstructed.
- Accelerate the truck to walking speed.
- Press the emergency off switch.





When the emergency off switch is actuated, note the following:

- The electric brake is disabled. The truck no longer responds to the command issued by the accelerator pedal.
- The power steering is no longer available. Steering forces are increased due to the remaining emergency steering function.
- Release the accelerator pedal.
- Apply the parking brake.

The truck must decelerate and remain stationarv.

- If the truck only coasts and does not decelerate or decelerates only slightly, stop the truck using the service brake.
- Secure the truck with chocks so that the truck does not roll away.
- Have the parking brake checked and repaired by the authorised service centre.



NOTE

Special features of the electric parking brake:

- The deceleration cannot be influenced
- The electric parking brake is applied moderately until the truck comes to a stop.
- The emergency off switch must be unlocked to release the electrical parking brake.

Warming up the hydraulic oil at cold ambient temperatures

If the truck has been exposed to low ambient temperatures for an extended period, because it has been parked outside during winter, for example, the hydraulic oil has a low temperature. In order to ensure smooth and safe operation of the hydraulic functions, the hydraulic oil must be at operating temperature.

 Drive the truck for approximately 5 minutes and actuate the brake several times.



- Actuate all hydraulic lifting functions several times.



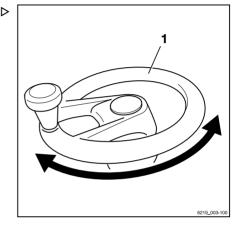
During the warm-up phase, the load dynamics are limited to \$\mu^1\$ load program 1.

Checking the steering system for correct function

A DANGER

If the hydraulics fail, there is a risk of accident as the steering characteristics have changed.

- Do not operate the truck if it has a defective steering system.
- Operate the steering wheel (1). The steering play while stationary must not be more than two finger widths.





Driver's seat

Adjusting the driver's seat

A WARNING

Risk of accident from sudden adjustment of the seat or of the seat backrest!

The inadvertent adjustment of the seat or of the seat backrest can lead to uncontrolled movements by the driver. The steering or the operating devices can then be actuated unintentionally. This may cause uncontrolled movements of the truck or of the load.

- Do not move the seat or the seat backrest while the truck is in motion.
- Adjust the seat and the seat backrest so that all operating devices can be actuated safely.
- Ensure that the seat and the seat backrest are securely engaged.



WARNING

On some equipment variants, the amount of head clearance on the truck may be restricted.

On these specific equipment variants, the distance between the driver's head and the lower edge of the roofing sheet must be at least 40 mm.



NOTE

Observe any separate operating instructions for the seat.

WARNING

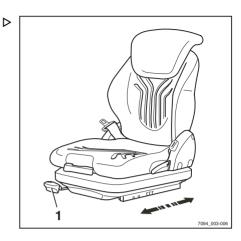
To obtain optimum seat cushioning, you must adjust the seat suspension to your own body weight. This course of action is better for your back and protects your health.

 To avoid injuries, keep the swivel area of the seat clear of objects.



Moving the driver's seat

- Raise the lever (1) and hold it in position.
- Push the driver's seat into the required position.
- Release the lever.
- Ensure that the driver's seat is securely engaged.



Adjusting the seat backrest

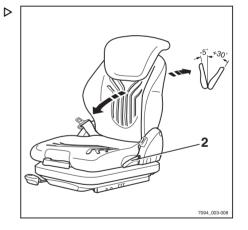
Do not apply pressure to the seat backrest when adjusting the seat backrest.

- Raise the lever (2) and hold it in position.
- Push the seat backrest into the required position.
- Release the lever.
- Ensure that the seat backrest is securely engaged.



NOTE

The backwards tilt angle of the seat backrest can be restricted by the structure of the truck.





Adjusting the MSG 65/MSG 75 seat suspension



NOTE

The MSG 65/MSG 75 driver's seat is designed for people weighing between 45 kg and 170 kg. The driver's seat can be adjusted to suit the weight of the individual driver. To obtain optimal settings for the seat suspension, the driver must perform the adjustment whilst sitting on the seat.



NOTE

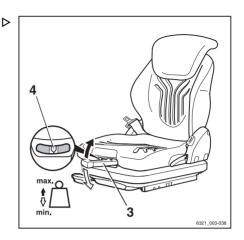
The MSG 75 seat is equipped with electric air suspension that is activated using an electric switch instead of the lever (3).

- Fold out the weight adjusting lever (3).
- Pump the lever up or down to set the driver's weight.
- Return the weight-adjusting lever to the initial central position each time before raising it again (a click can be heard when this position is reached).
- Retract the weight adjusting lever once the adjustment is complete.



NOTE

The correct driver's weight has been selected when the arrow (4) is in the centre position in the inspection window. Once the minimum or maximum weight setting is reached, the seat will not move any further even when you pump the weight adjusting lever.



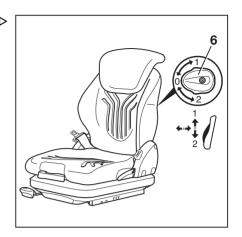


Adjusting the lumbar support (variant)



The lumbar support can be adjusted to suit the contours of the individual driver's spine. Adjusting the lumbar support moves a convex support cushion into the upper or lower part of the backrest.

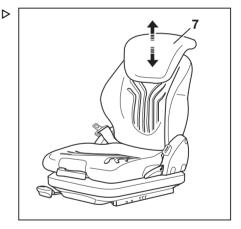
- Turn the turning knob (6) up or down until the lumbar support is in the required position.



Adjusting the backrest extension (variant)

- Adjust the backrest extension (7) by pulling it out or pushing it into the desired position.

To remove the backrest extension, move it past the end stop by firmly pushing it upwards.





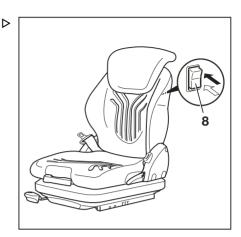
Switching the seat heater (variant) on and off



NOTE

The seat heater only works when the driver is sitting on the driver's seat.

 Switch the seat heater (8) on or off using the switch.



Seat belt



A DANGER

Risk of injury if the truck tips over!

Even if an approved restraint system is in use, there is still a residual risk that the driver could be injured if the truck tips over.

This risk of injury can be reduced through the combined use of the restraint system and the seat belt.

In addition, the seat belt protects against the consequences of rear-end collisions and falling off a lorry ramp.

 Recommendation: When operating the truck on a lorry ramp, fasten the seat belt in addition to using the driver's cab, the bracket door or the restraining bracket.

A DANGER

Only bracket doors, restraining brackets and the driver's cab (variants) with closed, fixed doors constitute driver restraint systems. Plastic doors (weather protection) do not constitute a restraint system!

If the doors are open or have been removed, you must use an alternative suitable restraint system (e.g. a seat belt)!



Fastening the seat belt

A DANGER

Mortal danger when driving without wearing a seat belt!

If the seat belt is not fastened and the truck tips over or crashes into an obstacle, the driver can be thrown out of the truck. The driver could slide under the truck or collide with an obstacle.

- Fasten the seat belt before every trip.
- Do not twist the seat belt when fastening it.
- Only use the seat belt to secure one person!
- Have any malfunctions repaired by the authorised service centre.



NOTE

The buckle has a buckle switch. When the belt was not fastened, the following occurred:

- The message Close seat belt & appears on the display-operating unit.
- The truck will not drive at speeds faster than 4 km/h.
- · The hydraulic functions are blocked.



NOTE

One variant prevents the truck from being driven at all if the seatbelt is not fastened. The message Close seat belt & appears on the display.

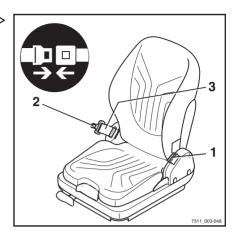
 Pull the seat belt (3) smoothly out of the belt retractor and place over the thighs close to the body.



NOTE

Sit back as far as possible so that your back is resting on the seat backrest. The automatic blocking mechanism permits sufficient freedom of movement on the seat.

- Click the belt tongue (2) into the buckle (1).
- Check the tension of the seat belt. The belt must fit closely around your body.





Special feature for trucks with a cab (variant)

If the truck is equipped with a cab (variant), it will have a cab door sensor. If the seat belt is not fastened and the cab door is not closed, the driving speed is limited to 4 km/h. The message Close cab door or seat belt! appears on the display.



NOTE

One variant that prevents the truck from being driven at all if the cab door is open. The message Close cab door! appears in the display.

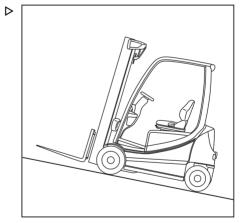
Special feature for trucks with HSR restraint systems (variant)

If the bracket is not closed, the message Close restraint system appears in the display.

Fastening on a steep slope

The automatic blocking mechanism prevents the belt from being extended whenever the truck is on a steep gradient. It is no longer possible to pull the seat belt out of the belt retractor.

- Move away carefully from the slope.
- Fasten the seat belt.





Releasing the seat belt

- Push the red button (4) on the buckle (1).
- Slowly guide the belt tongue back to the retractor by hand.



Slowly allow the seat belt to retract. The automatic blocking mechanism may be triggered if the belt tongue strikes the housing. It will then no longer be possible to pull the seat belt out with the usual force.

- Using increased force, pull the seat belt around 10 to 15 mm out of the retractor to disengage the blocking mechanism.
- Slowly allow the seat belt to retract again.
- Protect the seat belt from dirt, for example, by covering it.

Malfunction due to cold

 If the buckle or belt retractor are frozen, thaw the buckle or the belt retractor and dry the parts.

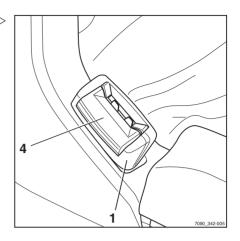
This prevents the parts from refreezing.

A CAUTION

The seat belt may be damaged by heat!

Do not subject the buckle or belt retractor to excessive heat when thawing.

Do not use air warmer than 60°C when thawing.





Adjusting the armrest

A DANGER

There is a risk of accident if the armrest lowers suddenly, causing the driver to move in an uncontrolled manner.

This may result in unintentional actuation of the steering or operating devices and thus cause the truck or load to move in an uncontrolled fashion.

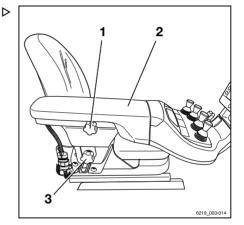
- Do not adjust the armrest while driving.
- Adjust the armrest so that all operating devices can be actuated safely.
- Ensure that the armrest is securely tightened.

Adjusting the length of the armrest

- Release the star-grip handle (1) by turning to the left.
- Shift the armrest (2) into the desired position.
- Tighten the star-grip handle by turning to the right.
- Check that the armrest is firmly attached.

Adjusting the height of the armrest

- Release the hand wheel (3) by turning to the left.
- Shift the armrest (2) into the desired position
- Tighten the hand wheel by turning to the right.
- Check that the armrest is firmly attached.





Switching on

Switching on using the key switch

A WARNING

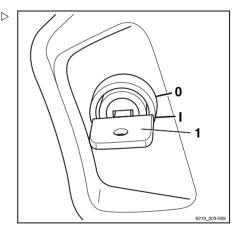
All checks and tasks required before daily use must have been performed without any defects being identified before switching on the truck.

- Perform the "visual inspections and functional checks".
- Do not operate the truck if defects have been detected: contact the authorised service centre.
- Insert the switch key (1) into the key switch and turn it to the "I" position.



If the truck is equipped with the "Access authorisation with PIN code" variant, the display initially changes to the input menu for access authorisation.

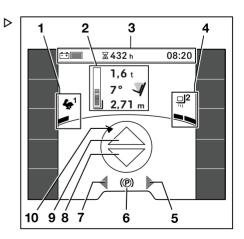
Once the truck is ready for operation, the main screen is shown on the display.



Main screen

- Selected drive programme with driving dynamics display
- 2 Load information (variants)
- 3 Status bar: battery charge, operating hours, time
- 4 Selected load dynamics programme with dynamics bar
- 5 "Right" turn indicator display
- 6 Driving speed or parking brake (®)
- 7 "Left" turn indicator display
- 8 "Reverse" drive direction indicator
- 9 "Forward" drive direction indicator
- 10 Steering angle display

Additional information may appear on the display.





Switching on

 Refer to the chapter entitled "Display messages".



NOTE

After connecting the battery, the correct charge state may not be displayed until the battery is placed under load by driving or lifting operations.

Switching on via push button (variant)

WARNING

All checks and tasks required before daily use must have been performed without any defects being identified before switching on the truck.

- Perform the "visual inspections and functional checks".
- Do not operate the truck if defects have been detected; contact the authorised service centre.

The "Switch on via push button" variant is available only in conjunction with the "Fleet-Manager" or "Access authorisation with PIN code" variants. In place of the key switch, the truck has a push button (1) that is used to switch the truck on and off

To switch on the truck, press the push button (1) or sit on the driver's seat. A message on the display/operating unit asks the operator to place the FleetManager card in position or to enter the PIN code.

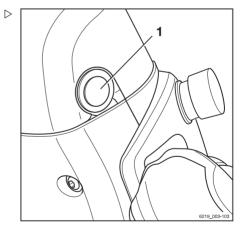
Authorisation via the "FleetManager" card or the PIN code must take place within a specified period of time:

- Within 30 seconds if the driver's seat is not occupied
- Within 60 seconds if the driver's seat is occupied

If this does not happen, the truck switches off again.

 To switch on the truck, press the push button (1) or sit in the driver's seat.

If authorisation was successful, the truck is ready for operation. The main view is shown on the display.





Operation 4

Switching on

To switch off the truck, press the push button (1) and hold for 1 second.



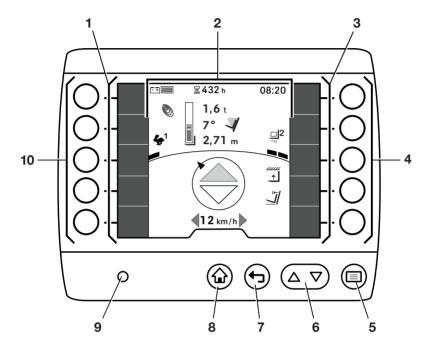
For the variant with

- "Access authorisation with PIN code", see the relevant section.
- "FleetManager", see the "original operating instructions for FleetManager".



Display-operating unit

Operating the display-operating unit



The display-operating unit is operated using the control and enter keys (5...8) and the soft-keys (4, 10). The display (2) shows information about the current driving programme, load programme and the configuration of the favourites bars (1, 3). The brightness sensor (9) automatically adjusts the brightness of the display based on the truck's surroundings.



Functions of the control and enter keys

Designation	Position	Functions
Softkeys	4, 10	The softkeys correspond to the adjacent functions or input options. If functions have been stored in the favourites bars (1, 3), these functions can be switched on and off by pressing the adjacent softkey. In addition to switching functions on and off, the soft keys on the right (3) navigate through the menu structure. These softkeys are also used to select actions.
Menu button 国	5	The menu button opens the first level of the menu. If a deeper navigation level is currently selected, this button takes you back to the first menu level. When using the settings menus, the menu button saves input.
Scrolling buttons △ ▽	6	The scrolling buttons $\triangle \nabla$ allow you to scroll up and down menu items within a menu level. This button \triangle clears input entered in the settings menus. This button ∇ switches between upper case and lower case for alphanumeric entries.
Back button ←	7	When the back button is pressed, the display switches to the next menu level up. This button cancels input entered in the settings menus.
Main display button ♠	9	Pressing the main display button 🏠 at any menu level takes you directly back to the main display.

Access authorisation with PIN code (variant)

Trucks equipped with the "Access authorisation with PIN code" variant are protected against unauthorised use by a PIN code. So that the same truck can be used by different drivers, individual PIN codes can be specified.

An initial PIN code of "11111" is preset at the factory for the first use.



NOTE

We recommend that the fleet manager changes this PIN code using their access authorisation. See also the section entitled "Access authorisation for the fleet manager (variant)".



When the key switch is switched on, the Access authorisation input menu appears.

All hydraulic functions and drive functions of the truck are blocked. In the StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) variant, the function of the hazard warning system (variant) is quaranteed.

- To activate the blocked functions, use the softkeys to enter the PIN code.
- To confirm, push the 🗏 button.

If the input was correct, the display changes to the main display. The truck is ready for use.

- If the input was incorrect, enter the PIN code again.



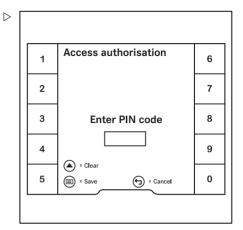
The authorised service centre can configure access authorisation so that the PIN code has to be re-entered each time after someone. leaves the truck.

When the driver's seat is occupied again, the message Log in appears. The display then changes to the "Access authorisation" input menu.

Changing the PIN codes

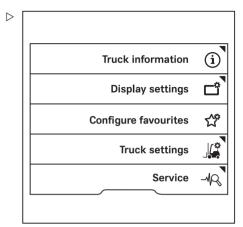
The fleet manager can change the PIN codes. See also the following section entitled "Access authorisation for the fleet manager (variant)".

- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".

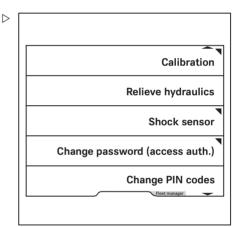




- Press the Service → softkey.



- Press the scroll keys △ ♥ until the
 Change PIN codes menu appears.
- Press the Change PIN codes softkey.
- Follow the instructions on the display.



Access authorisation for the fleet manager (variant)

Trucks equipped with the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager" variant can be configured by the users themselves. Access to these settings is protected by a fleet manager password.

The initial fleet manager password was sent with the invoicing documents. For safety reasons, change this password after the first use. See also the section entitled "Changing the fleet manager password".



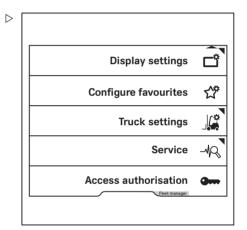


Access to the settings menu is only available if the truck is at a standstill and the parking brake is applied. If the parking brake is released prematurely, the settings menu will close.

- Stop the truck.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Press the 🔳 button.
- Press the "Settings" softkey &.

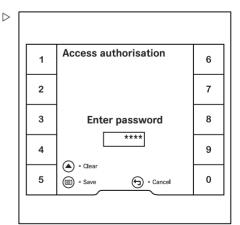
The first menu level appears.

- Press the Access authorisation softkey -.



The display changes to the Access authorisation menu.

- Enter the fleet manager password using the softkeys.
- To confirm, press the button.





The message Fleet manager access authorisation granted / appears.

To confirm, press the ✓ softkey.

"Access authorisation for the fleet manager" is activated. The display returns to the settings menu.

If the password entered was incorrect, the message Password incorrect is displayed.

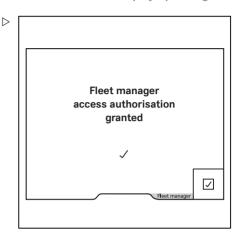
- If this happens, enter the password again.

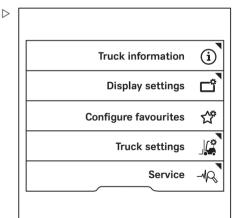


While the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager" is activated. Fleet manager is displayed in an orange bar at the bottom of the screen. When the users switches to the main display, the access authorisation expires again.

Changing the fleet manager password

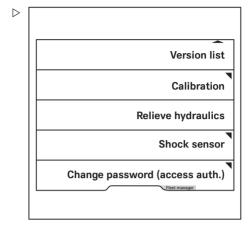
- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".
- Press the Service softkey.







- Press the scroll buttons △ ♥ until the Change password (access auth.) menu appears.
- Press the Change password (access auth.) softkey.
- Follow the instructions on the display.





Pre-shift check

Description of the Pre-Shift Check (variant)

The Pre-Shift Check is a guided dialogue in the display-operating unit. It also helps the driver conduct the necessary "visual inspections and function checking" before everyday use. After the truck has been switched on, the driver must answer questions about the condition of the forklift truck with "Yes" or "No".

While the driver is doing this, the truck functions are available with restrictions. The driving speed and hydraulic functions are restricted.

To commission the truck, the authorised service centre can compile the Pre-Shift Check from a question catalogue in consultation with the fleet manager. If a question catalogue has not been compiled, the only question stored by default is "Truck ready for operation?"

The authorised service centre can then restrict the truck functions in the event of a negative test result.

There are fixed responses:

- · No response
- · Speed limitation
- Restriction of hydraulics to 33%

In addition, the fleet manager has the following options:

- The fleet manager can view the results of all checks via the "History".
- The fleet manager can define the shift start for three different shifts. The Pre-Shift Check must be performed when these shifts start.

If the truck is equipped with "FleetManager", the shifts are defined on the FleetManager interface. See the relevant operating instructions.

- If, due to a negative test result, truck functions are restricted, the fleet manager can reset these restrictions.
- The fleet manager can specify the question sequence.





During commissioning, the first question can also be answered with "No". Truck functions are not restricted until the question catalogue has been compiled by the authorised service centre and the restrictions have been set by the fleet manager.

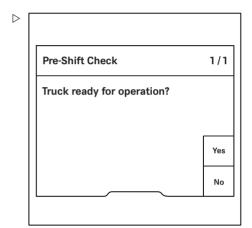
Process

Switch the truck on

The first question appears.

- Press the "Yes" or "No" softkey.

The next question appears.



Some of the questions require a functional test, such as the functional test of the lighting.



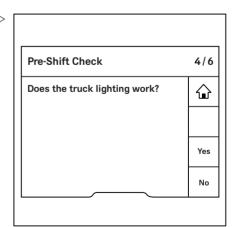
The main display symbol appears only when it is required for the test.

- To access the main display, press the main display button \bigcirc or the softkey \bigcirc .

The main display contains the message To complete Pre-Shift Check, press (9.

This means that the Pre-Shift Check is still active and the truck functions are restricted.

- To acknowledge the message, press the ✓ softkey.





- Switch on and check the function to be tested, e.g. lighting.
- Pre-Shift Check
- Answer the guestion based on the result of the function check.

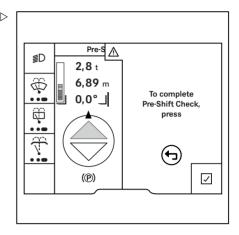
The next question appears.



If no questions regarding the Pre-Shift Check have been compiled, the question Truck ready for operation? is displayed.

If the truck has to be moved for a test, e.g. for a brake test, you can simply release the parking brake. The message To complete Pre-Shift Check, press (is displayed. The truck can be moved at reduced speed. If you apply the parking brake again. the view goes back to the Pre-Shift Check.

At the end of the check, truck functions are restricted if they have been adjusted as a reaction to a negative test result. The message Pre-Shift Check truck restrictions active shows that truck functions are restricted. As long as the truck functions are restricted, no further Pre-Shift Check is reguested at the start of a new shift. The check is only requested again after the fleet manager has reset the restrictions.



All questions

The authorised service centre can use this question catalogue to put together the Pre-Shift Check during commissioning:

Are the fork arms damaged (e.g. bent or cracked)?

Are the fork arms securely mounted and the locking devices undamaged?

Are the roller tracks on the lift mast sufficiently greased?

Are the load chains damaged?

Are the load chains sufficiently tensioned and loaded equally.?

Are all attachments securely mounted and undamaged? Are they in working order?

Are operating fluids (e.g. oil, water, fuel) visibly leaking?

Are the wheels damaged? Are they worn beyond permissible limits?



Is the tyre pressure correct? Is the overhead quard visibly damaged? Is the entry area or footwell dirty or slippery? Are the windows clean and undamaged? Are the maintenance lids securely closed? Is the battery door/hood undamaged and securely closed? Is the battery lock present, undamaged and closed? Is the battery connection assembly dirty or damaged (e.g. housing deformed, contacts corroded)? Is the towing device damaged? Is the capacity rating plate present, undamaged, and legible? Is the driver restraint system damaged? Does the horn work? Does the truck lighting work? Do the warning lights work? Is the antistatic belt present and does it have sufficient contact with the floor? Is the corona electrode present and clean? Does the parking brake work properly? Does the service brake work properly? Does the steering work properly? Does the emergency off work? Is the condition of the battery obviously not OK? Are all decal information and adhesive labels present and legible? Is the load backrest undamaged? Does the accelerator pedal work properly? Is the engine compartment dirty or does it contain foreign obiects? Are the lift mast or the fork carriage obviously damaged? Do the working hydraulics work properly according to the label-Are the mirrors dirty or damaged? Is the gas tank or its mounting obviously damaged? Can unusual noises be heard when the industrial truck is used?

Is there any other obvious damage to the truck?

Does the washer system work?

Is the bonnet undamaged and securely closed?

If no Pre-Shift Check questions have been compiled, the initial configuration as at the time of delivery appears.

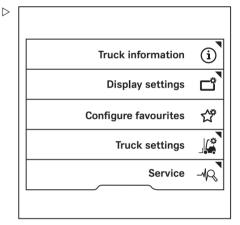


Defining the question sequence

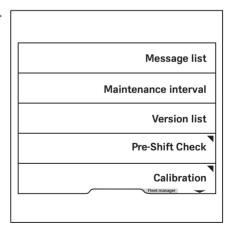
The questions for the Pre-Shift Check can be defined in a random sequence or in a fixed sequence.

The random sequence is advisable, because the questions are then read more consciously by the driver. This means that there is no routine aspect.

- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".
- Press the Service → softkey.



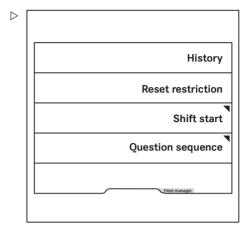
- Press the scroll keys △ ♥ until the Pre-Shift Check menu appears.
- Press the Pre-Shift Check softkey.





The Pre-Shift Check menu appears.

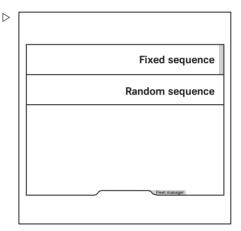
- Press the "Question sequence" softkey.



Pressing the softkey allows fixed or random question sequences to be selected.

The orange activation bar displays the current selection.

 To access the main display, press the main display button ♠.



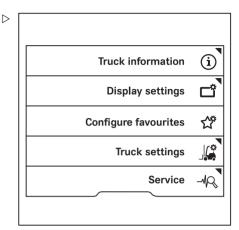
Displaying the history

The fleet manager can display a Pre-Shift Check history.

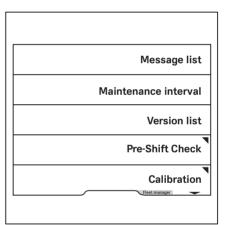
 Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".



- Press the Service ⊀ softkey.



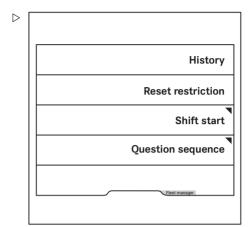
- Press the scroll keys △ ♥ until the Pre- ▷
 Shift Check menu appears.
- Press the Pre-Shift Check softkey.





The Pre-Shift Check menu appears.

- Press the "History" softkey.

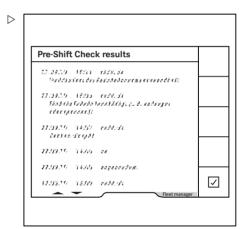


The Pre-Shift Check results display opens.

This display shows all checks and questions that have been answered with the date and time

To see more results, press the scroll buttons $\triangle \nabla$.

- To go back to the previous menu, press the softkey.
- To access the main display, press the main display button 🏠.



Defining the shift start

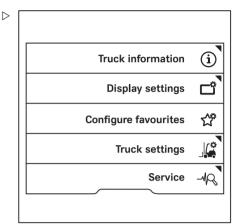
As a standard setting after commissioning, the Pre-Shift Check is always requested 24 hours after the last check was performed. The fleet manager can define up to three shifts and their start times. The Pre-Shift Check is then always requested at this time.



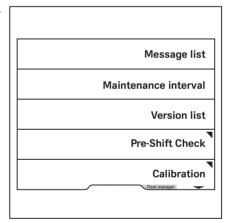
If the truck is equipped with FleetManager, the shifts are defined on the FleetManager interface. See the relevant operating instructions.



- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".
- Press the Service → softkey.



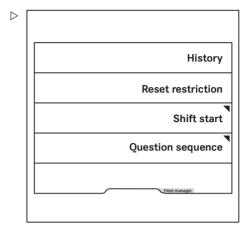
- Press the scroll keys △ ♥ until the Pre- ▷
 Shift Check menu appears.
- Press the Pre-Shift Check softkey.





The Pre-Shift Check menu appears.

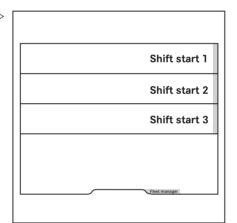
- Press the "Shift start" softkey.



In this menu, you can call up the shift to be defined and its start time.

The orange activation bar indicates which shifts are activated.

 To edit a shift, press the corresponding softkey.



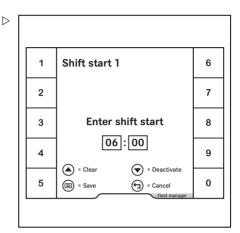


In this menu you can define the shift start.

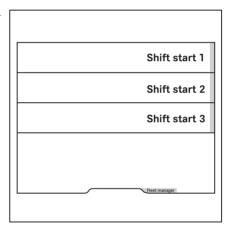
- Enter the time using softkeys "0 to 9".
- To save, press the \equiv button.

The shift start is now defined. The Pre-Shift Check is always requested from this shift start time.

The display returns to the previous menu.



To deactivate a certain shift start, select the prelevant shift.



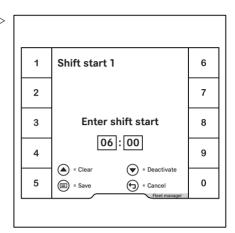


- To confirm, press the \bullet button.

The time is shown in grey.

The shift is deactivated. The display returns to the previous menu. There is no activation bar next to this shift.

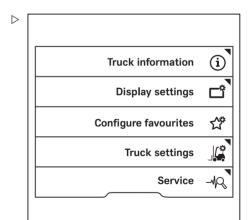
- To cancel, press the back button ←.
- To access the main display, press the main display button .



Resetting the truck restrictions

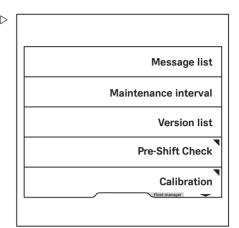
If truck functions are restricted due to checks with a bad result, the fleet manager can reset these restrictions. The fleet manager can also do this if a problem on the truck has been rectified

- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".
- Press the Service → softkey.



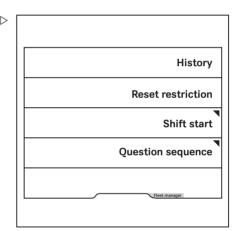


- Press the scroll keys △ ▽ until the Pre- ▷ Shift Check menu appears.
- Press the Pre-Shift Check softkey.



The Pre-Shift Check menu appears.

- Press the "Reset restriction" softkey.





A question pops up asking if you want to reset \triangleright the truck restrictions.

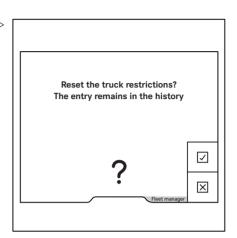
To confirm, press the ✓ softkey.

The full scope of the truck functions is now available. The display returns to the previous menu.

To cancel, press the ⋈ softkey.

The truck functions remain restricted. The display returns to the previous menu.

 To access the main display, press the main display button .





Driver profiles (variant)

This variant allows up to ten individual driver profiles to be created. The driver is greeted with the selected name after logging in. Once the softkey ✓ is pressed, the main display is shown.

If the truck is equipped with the "Access authorisation with PIN code" or "FleetManager" variants, these driver profiles can be linked to the relevant variant.

The driver profile allows the following settings to be saved:

- Language
- Favourites
- · Configuration of the status line
- · Configuration of drive programmes A and B

In addition, the operating statuses saved for the last selected driver profile are called up again the next time a user logs in with this driver profile:

- Selected drive programme 1 to 3
- · Load dynamics
- Efficiency and drive modes (Blue-Q/sprint mode)

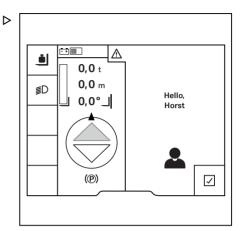
If a driver without an existing driver profile logs in using the "Access authorisation with PIN code" or "FleetManager" variants, a driver profile is generated. This driver profile corresponds to the settings when the truck was delivered.

If the truck is not equipped with these variants, drivers must select their profiles manually.

Any changes that drivers make to the settings while they are logged in are saved. These will then be available the next time that the driver logs in.

Selecting driver profiles

If the truck is equipped with the "Access authorisation with PIN code" or "FleetManager" variants, the corresponding driver profile is active after logging in. If the truck is not



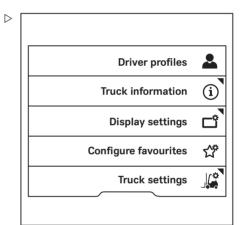


equipped with these variants, drivers must select their profiles manually.



Access to the settings menu is only available if the truck is at a standstill and the parking brake is applied. If the parking brake is released prematurely, the settings menu will close.

- Stop the truck.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Press the 🔳 button.
- Press the "Settings" softkey &.
- Press the Driver profiles softkey 🏖.

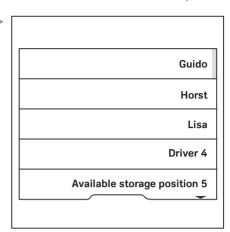




The orange activation bar displays the current \triangleright selection.

Press the softkey for the required driver profile.

The driver profile is active. The driver is greeted with the selected name the next time that the truck is switched on



Creating driver profiles

Both the fleet manager and the driver can create up to ten driver profiles.

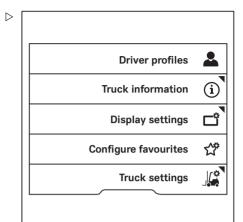


NOTE

If the truck is equipped with the "Access authorisation with PIN code" or "FleetManager" variants, the driver profile is generated automatically when logging in for the first time.

- Apply the parking brake.
- Press the 🔳 button.
- Press the "Settings" softkey &.

- Press the Driver profiles softkey 🏝.

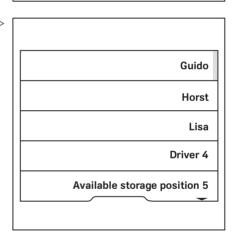


This menu provides storage space for saving ten driver profiles.

- Press the softkey for the required storage location.



Unoccupied storage locations that do not contain a driver profile are indicated by Available storage position.



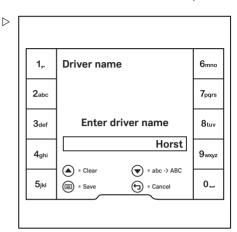


The Driver name menu is displayed.

- Use the softkeys to enter the desired name.
- To confirm, press the button.

The driver profile is active. The driver is greeted with the selected name after the next login

Any changes that drivers make to the settings while they are logged in are saved. These will then be available the next time that the driver logs in.



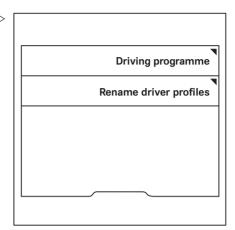
Renaming driver profiles

Driver profiles can be renamed. Drivers can only rename their own driver profile. The fleet manager has access authorisation to rename all driver profiles.

Renaming by the driver

- Apply the parking brake.
- Press the ■ button.
- Press the "Settings" softkey #.
- Press the Truck settings softkey 🞉.

Press the Rename driver profiles ▷ softkey.

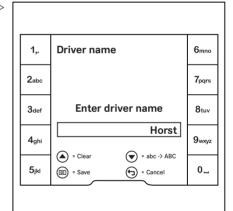


The Driver name menu is displayed.

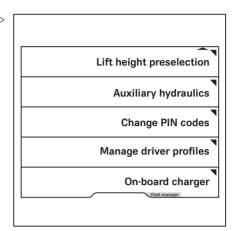
- Use the softkeys to enter the desired name.
- To confirm, press the button.

Renaming by the fleet manager

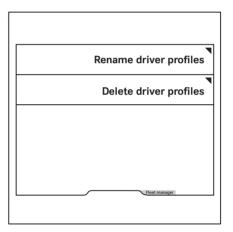
- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".
- Press the Truck settings softkey 🞉.



Press the Manage driver profiles ▷ softkey.

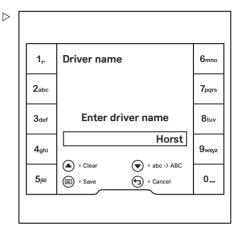


Press the Rename driver profiles ▷ softkey.



The Driver name menu is displayed.

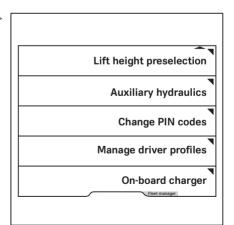
- Use the softkeys to enter the desired name.
- To confirm, press the button.



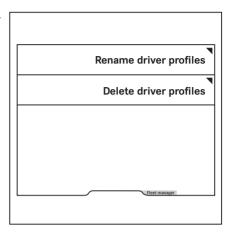
Deleting driver profiles

The fleet manager has access authorisation to delete driver profiles.

- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".
- Press the Truck settings softkey 🞉.
- Press the Manage driver profiles ▷ softkey.

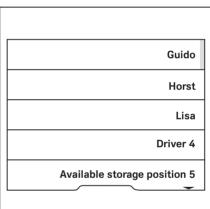


Press the Delete driver profiles ▷ softkey.



Press the softkey for the driver profile to be be deleted.

The driver profile is deleted.



Operation

Lighting

Lighting

Meaning of the symbols

Individual lighting devices are switched on and off using the "Lighting" sub-menu.

- To access this sub-menu, push the button 🗐.

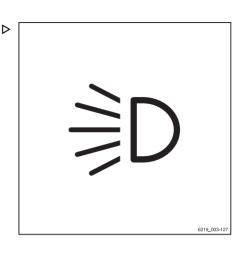
Symbols for the lighting and their meanings

∋Dd€	Parking light
 ■D	Headlights
	Hazard warning system ¹
· ·	Rotating beacon
9	STILL SafetyLight
<u>@</u>	Warning zone light
∌D₀	Front working spotlights
å(≑	Rear working spotlights
*	Roof working spotlights

Only the symbols of the lighting devices that are installed in the truck can be selected. When one of the lighting devices is switched on, the activation bar next to the relevant symbol lights up orange.



If the truck is equipped with the "StVZO" (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) variant, the hazard warning system works even when the truck is switched off.



This function is not available if the truck is equipped with the "StVZO" (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) variant. In this case, the hazard warning system is switched on and off via the hazard warning button on the steering column. For more information, refer to the section entitled "Hazard warning system".



Driving lights

 To switch on the parking light (1), push the associated Softkey on the display-operating unit.

The front side lights and the tail lights light up.

 To switch on the driving light (2), press the associated Softkey on the display-operating unit.

The headlights and tail lights light up. If the truck has StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) equipment (variant) and a licence plate lamp, then this also lights up.

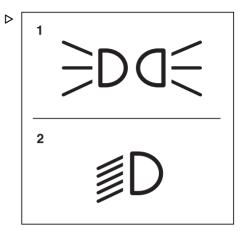
 To switch off the driving light (2), press the Softkey again.

The driving light and licence plate lamp go out.

 To switch off the parking light (1), push the Softkey again.

The front side lights and the tail lights go out.

If the truck does not have StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) equipment (variant), then the parking light and driving light can be switched on and off independently of each other.



Parking light
Driving light



Liahtina

Working spotlights

Front and rear working spotlights

- To switch on the front working spotlights (3), push the associated Softkey on the display-operating unit.

The front working spotlights light up.

- To switch off the front working spotlights (3), push the Softkey again.

The front working spotlights go out.

- To switch on the rear working spotlights (4), push the associated Softkey on the displayoperating unit.

The rear working spotlights light up.

- To switch off the rear working spotlights (4). push the Softkey again.

The rear working spotlights go out.



For the StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) variant, the parking light is also switched on when the working spotlights are switched on. The licence plate lamp (if present) is also switched on when the forwardfacing working spotlights are switched on.

Working spotlights on the roof and the side of the lift mast

The roof spotlights light up the working area when the fork carriage is raised.

- To switch on the roof spotlights (5), push the associated Softkey on the display-operating unit.

The roof spotlights (5) light up.

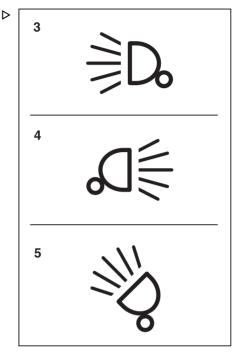
- To switch off the roof spotlights (5), push the Softkey again.

The roof spotlights (5) go out.



NOTE

Depending on the configuration, the roof spotlights automatically switch on when the fork carriage is raised.



- Front working spotlights
- Rear working spotlights
- 5 Roof spotlights



Working spotlight for reverse travel (variant)

In this equipment variant, a working spotlight for reverse travel is fitted on the rear of the overhead guard and provides optimum illumination of the roadway during reverse travel.

- Press the এ€ softkey.

The activation bar next to the symbol lights up. The working spotlight does not yet light up.

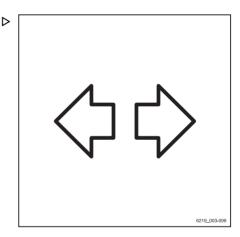
- Set the drive direction to "Reverse".

The working spotlight for reverse travel lights up.

If the drive direction is set to "Forward", the working spotlight goes out.

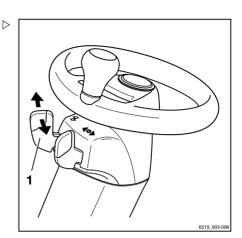
Turn indicators

The turn indicators are switched on and off via the travel direction selector and indicator module.





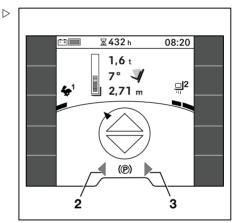
 To switch on the left or right turn indicator, move the lever (1) to the desired direction.



The turn indicators and the turn indicator display (2) or (3) on the display-operating unit flash.

 To switch off the turn indicators, push the lever (1) back to the centre position.

All turn indicators and the turn indicator displays on the display/operating unit stop flashing.



Hazard warning system

Switching the hazard warning system on and off is different for trucks with and without the StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) variant.

 To switch on the hazard warning system, push the associated Softkey on the displayoperating unit.

All direction indicators and the turn indicator displays on the display-operating unit flash.

 To switch off the hazard warning system, push the Softkey again.

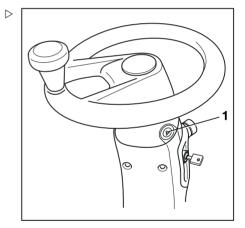
All direction indicators and the turn indicator displays on the display-operating unit stop flashing.

Specific features of the StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) variant

For the StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) variant, the hazard warning system cannot be switched on and off via the display/operating unit. It is switched on and off using the hazard warning button on the steering column. The hazard warning system in this variant works even when the truck is switched off.

 To switch on the hazard warning system, push the hazard warning button (1).



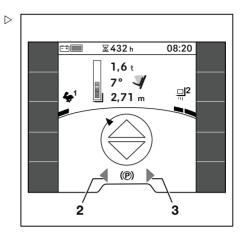




The turn indicators and the turn indicator displays (2, 3) on the display-operating unit flash.

 To switch off the hazard warning system, push the hazard warning button (1) again.

All direction indicators and the turn indicator displays on the display-operating unit stop flashing.



StVZO equipment

If the truck is fitted with StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) equipment, the "StVZO" softkey 'in' is stored in the favourites bar. This softkey is used to switch off all lighting devices that are not permitted on roads subject to the StVZO.

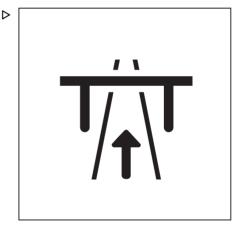
This relates to the following variants of lighting equipment:

- · STILL SafetyLight
- · Warning zone light
- · Working spotlight
- · Rotating beacon
- To switch off this lighting equipment, push the "StVZO" softkey ¼. .

The orange activation bar lights up next to the softkey.

 To switch on this lighting equipment, push the "StVZO" softkey ™ again.

The orange activation bar goes out.







This function is configured for the German StVZO ex works.

- Outside of Germany, observe the national regulations for the country of use.
- The authorised service centre can amend the function so that fewer lighting devices or more lighting devices are switched off.

The softkey is also located in the "Driving" menu.

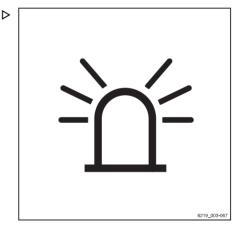
Rotating beacon

 To switch on the rotating beacon, push the associated Softkey on the display-operating unit.

The rotating beacon is switched on.

 To switch off the rotating beacon, push the Softkey again.

The rotating beacon goes out.





STILL SafetyLight (variant)



WARNING

Danger of damage to eyes from looking into the STILL SafetyLight.

Do not look into the STILL SafetyLight.

The STILL SafetyLight is a visual warning unit designed to enable early detection of trucks in driving areas with low visibility (such as drive lanes, high racks), as well as at blind junctions. The STILL SafetyLight is mounted on a support on the overhead guard such that it is not affected by jolts and vibrations.

Depending on the version, the STILL Safety-Light projects one or more light-blue light spots in front of or behind the truck and thus warns others about the approaching truck. Several light spots are projected as a chase light. The chase light indicates the location of the truck with its direction of travel.

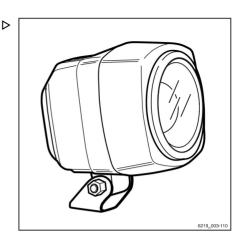
Depending on the configuration of the truck, the STILL SafetyLight automatically switches itself on when the truck is moving. This means that, during reverse travel (variant), for example, it can be used as an additional light for the working spotlight for reverse travel. The STILL SafetyLight can also be switched on and off on the display-operating unit.

- To do so, push the Softkey 🐔.



NOTE

If the truck is to be operated on public roads, the STILL SafetyLight must be switched off.



Warning zone light (variant)



WARNING

Danger of damage to eyes from looking into the warning zone light.

Do not look into the warning zone light.

Adjust the warning zone light so as not to dazzle bystanders or the driver when climbing in and out of the truck.

The warning zone light is mounted on supports on the overhead guard such that it is not affected by jolts and vibrations. The warning zone light projects a light bar next to the truck on both the left-hand side and right-hand side of the truck. These light bars indicate the danger areas to the sides of the truck while in operation. See the section entitled "Danger area" in the chapter entitled "Handling loads".

The warning zone light switches on and off again together with the truck.

If the truck has StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) equipment, the warning zone light can be switched on and off via the display-operating unit.

- To do so, push the softkey \&.



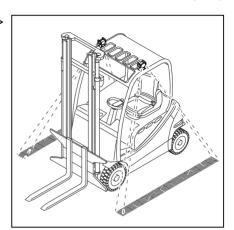
If the truck is to be operated on public roads. the warning zone light must be switched off.

- Before using the truck, make sure that the warning zone light is working and has been adjusted correctly.

The distance from the light bar to the truck must be between 70...75 cm.

- To adjust the warning zone light, see the section entitled "Adjusting the warning zone light" in the chapter entitled "Preserving operational readiness".

When ordering the truck, you can choose between a blue or red warning zone light.



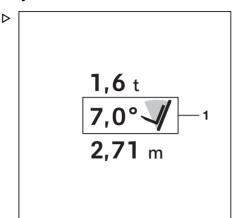


Tilt-angle-dependent assistance systems

Tilt-angle-dependent assistance systems

Mast tilt angle display

Knowing the actual tilt angle of the lift mast makes it easier to place loads into stock and remove loads from stock. If the truck is equipped with the "mast tilt angle display" assistance system, the lift mast tilt angle (1) is shown on the display.



Tilt end stop damping

This assistance system ensures that the movement to the end positions is smooth. This protects the load against jerking movements.

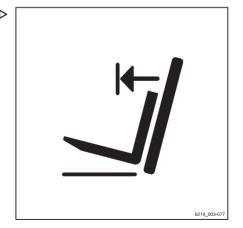
Automatic mast vertical positioning (variant)

A CAUTION

Risk of damage to property due to the lift mast colliding with racks or other objects!

 Before using the "automatic mast vertical positioning" assistance system, position the truck at a sufficient distance from racks and other objects.

The "automatic mast vertical positioning" assistance system can be used to set down the goods so that the goods are exactly vertical, e.g. paper rolls. This prevents damage when setting down the load. "Automatic mast vertical positioning" functions when tilting forwards. A further variant is available which also functions when tilting backwards. The tilt cylinders run into the end stops gently to prevent hard vibrations and impacts. Oscillating motions of the truck are minimised, thus





Tilt-angle-dependent assistance systems

increasing work safety. Automatic mast vertical positioning reduces wear on various components, thereby reducing repair costs.

The "automatic mast vertical positioning" assistance system consists of the following individual functions:

- Display of the "Automatic mast vertical positioning" feature
- Automatic startup of the "Automatic mast vertical position" feature

The truck can also be equipped with only the "mast tilt angle display" feature.



Check the function of automatic mast vertical positioning whenever the truck is used.

- See the section entitled "Function checking" of the automatic mast vertical positioning function".
- Push the "automatic mast vertical positioning" softkey 🗐.

The J symbol appears in the display.

- Tilt back the lift mast until it reaches the end stop.
- Tilt the lift mast forwards.

The lift mast stops in the vertical position.



NOTE

The lift mast also stops in the vertical position if it is tilted forwards by ≥ 3° from a backward tilt.



NOTE

The automatic mast vertical positioning must be calibrated in order to ensure accuracy at all times. The "access authorisation for the fleet manager" is required for the calibration. This access is required:

- When placing loads into stock and removing loads from stock on HGV ramps
- In the event of tyre wear
- · If the lift mast is obviously not in the vertical position



Tilt-angle-dependent assistance systems

See the section entitled "Calibrating the automatic mast vertical positioning".

Function checking of the automatic mast vertical positioning function (variant)

A CAUTION

Risk of damage to property due to the lift mast colliding with racks or other objects!

- Before using the "automatic mast vertical positioning" assistance system, position the truck at a sufficient distance from racks and other objects.
- To check the function of the automatic mast vertical positioning function, proceed as follows:
- Push the "automatic mast vertical positioning" softkey

The J symbol appears in the display.

- Tilt back the lift mast until it reaches the end stop.
- Tilt the lift mast forwards.

The lift mast must stop in the vertical position.

The automatic mast vertical positioning can be used.

- If the lift mast does not stop in the vertical position, do not use the assistance system.
- In this case, contact your authorised service centre.

Calibrating the automatic mast vertical positioning

The automatic mast vertical positioning is calibrated using a wizard on the display-operating unit.



Tilt-angle-dependent assistance systems

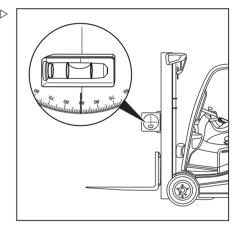


The wizard requires access authorisation for the fleet manager. Access to the settings menu is only available if the truck is at a standstill and the parking brake is applied. If the parking brake is released prematurely, the settings menu will close.

- Set the load down, if necessary.
- Drive the truck into an area that is to be used for placing loads into stock and removing loads from stock.

Once the "automatic mast vertical positioning" assistance system has been calibrated, a pallet can be stored horizontally in a rack when the truck is standing on a HGV ramp, for example.

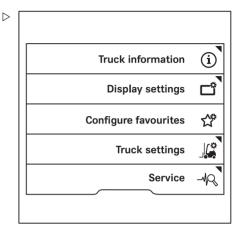
- Lift the fork carriage slightly.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Attach a tilt angle template with a spirit level ▷ to the outer lift mast.
- Bring the lift mast to the vertical position according to the spirit level.
- Press the 🔳 button.
- Press the "Settings" Softkey &.
- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".



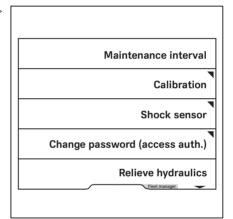


Tilt-angle-dependent assistance systems

- Press the Service → softkey.



Press the scroll keys △ ♥ until the Cal- ▷ ibration menu appears.



Tilt-angle-dependent assistance systems

- Press the Lift mast tilting softkey. ▷

The wizard for calibrating the load measurement is started.

- Follow the instructions on the display.
- If the message Calibration failed ! appears, press the ✓ softkey.
- Repeat the process.

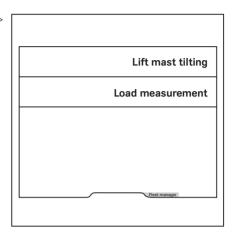
After the calibration has been completed successfully, the message Successful calibration \checkmark appears.

- Switch the truck off and on again.

The calibration is now complete.



If the message A6701 Fault: Monitoring of assistance system A appears during the calibration, perform the calibration again.



Load-dependant assistance systems

Overload detection (variant)

WARNING

Risk of accident as a result of exceeding the permissible load capacity!

This assistance system does not replace the driver's duty to observe the load capacity specified on the nameplate.

 Observe the load capacity specified on the nameplate.

This assistance system alerts the driver as soon as an excessive load is picked up. The message Overload <u>Al</u> is shown on the display-operating unit.

The maximum load always refers to the sum of the load picked up plus any attachments present. The authorised service centre can configure the setting for the maximum load. However, the maximum load must not be higher than the nominal load.

The overload detection restricts the hydraulic functions as follows:

- If the rated capacity or the maximum load set by the authorised service centre is exceeded, the lifting speed is reduced.
- If the rated capacity or the set maximum load are exceeded by more than 10%, the "Lifting" function is disabled.



Please note the following special considerations:

- If the load pressure sensor fails, the maximum load (nominal load) is assumed. The function engages to the maximum extent.
- If the lifting stage switch fails, the truck control unit assumes the fork carriage is at the maximum lift height.
- In the case of overload, the "lifting" function is blocked from the factory. The authorised service centre can remove the "lifting" function block and restrict the function instead.



Dynamic Load Control 1

A WARNING

Risk of accident as a result of overloading!

Dynamic Load Control 1 is not a safety function and does not release the driver from the duty to observe the information specified in the load capacity diagram!

WARNING

Risk of accident due to the slow response of the lifting system!

If the lifting movements are configured to use low dynamics, the lifting system responds after a delay when the operating device is released, even in an emergency. The fork carriage does not stop immediately; instead, it takes approx. one second.

This behaviour may also occur when specific settings are configured for the Dynamic Load Control 1.

- Work with particular attention and care.
- Observe the "Dynamics of the hydraulic movements" section in the chapter entitled "Lifting".

Dynamic Load Control 1 improves the handling of the load. This function protects the truck and the load from abrupt movements.

Dynamic Load Control 1 regulates the lifting and tilting dynamics and the driving dynamics according to the following criteria:

- · Lift height
- Load weight

Load movements which could lead to critical conditions are slowed down if necessary.

Dynamic Load Control 1 intervenes in the following operating situations:

- With a telescopic lift mast:
 The fork carriage is at least 2.1 m off the ground.
- With a triple lift mast or NiHo lift mast:
 The fork carriage is in the second lifting stage
- The load picked up exceeds 50% of the nominal load

The driving speed is reduced to 5 km/h at a lift height of 2.1 m and higher or in the second lifting stage.





NOTE

When the fork carriage has been lowered below the lift heights mentioned above, the driver can deactivate the speed limitation again. Release the accelerator pedal for a short period to do this.

If a sensor belonging to Dynamic Load Control 1 fails, the level of intervention from the function is increased to a maximum.

Dynamic Load Control 2

A WARNING

Risk of accident as a result of overloading!

"Dynamic Load Control 2" is not a safety function and does not release the driver from the duty to observe the information specified in the load capacity diagram!

WARNING

Risk of accident due to the slow response of the lifting system!

If the lifting movements are configured to use low dynamics, the lifting system responds after a delay when the operating device is released, even in an emergency. The fork carriage does not stop immediately; instead, it takes approx. one second.

This behaviour may also occur when specific settings are configured for the Dynamic Load Control 2.

- Work with particular attention and care.
- Observe the "Dynamics of the hydraulic movements" section in the chapter entitled "Lifting".

"Dynamic Load Control 2" improves the handling of the load. This function protects the truck and the load from abrupt movements.

Dynamic Load Control 2 regulates the lifting and tilting dynamics and the driving dynamics according to the following criteria:

- · Lift height
- Load weight
- Load centre of gravity

Dynamic Load Control 2 intervenes in the following operating situations:

· With a telescopic lift mast:



The fork carriage is at least 2.1 m off the around.

- · With a triple lift mast or NiHo lift mast: The fork carriage is in the second lifting
- · The truck centre of gravity has shifted to an unfavourable position due to the position of the load

Dynamic Load Control 2 calculates the interaction between these three criteria and intervenes in the calculated result.

Load movements which could lead to critical conditions are slowed down if necessary.

The driving speed is reduced to 5 km/h at a lift height of 2.1 m and higher or in the second lifting stage.



When the fork carriage has been lowered below the lift heights mentioned above, the driver can deactivate the speed limitation again. Release the accelerator pedal for a short period to do this

The bar display on the display of the displayoperating unit is part of the load information. It is part of the Dynamic Load Control 2.

The number and colour of the bars indicates to what extent the determined load weight and load centre of gravity affect the stability of the truck

The bar display is divided into three sections and ten segments.

Grey area

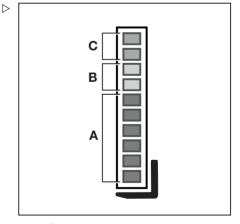
The dynamics of the lifting movements and tilting movements are not noticeably reduced.

Yellow area

If a load that is close to the nominal load is picked up, the display moves into the vellow area.

The dynamics of the lifting movements and tilting movements are noticeably reduced

- Handle the load with the appropriate level of care
- Red area





Red



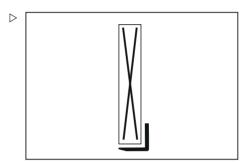
When the combination of load weight and load centre of gravity exceeds the specified value, the display moves into the red area

The dynamics of the lifting movements and tilting movements are significantly reduced

 In this case, set down the load or tilt backwards.

If a sensor belonging to Dynamic Load Control 2 fails, the level of intervention from the function is increased to a maximum. A cross appears instead of the bar.

 If this display appears permanently, contact the authorised service centre.



Load measurement (variant)

Knowing the weight of the load to be transported gives the driver greater security. If the truck is equipped with the "load measurement" assistance system, the weight of the lifted load is measured and displayed in the display-operating unit (1). The measuring accuracy is 5% of the rated capacity.

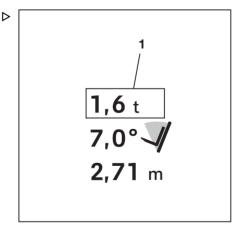
- Observe the following safety information.

A DANGER

Risk of accident from a falling load!

The load may fall if the load centre of gravity has not been taken into account or the load has not been picked up securely.

 Pick up the load securely; see the chapter entitled "Picking up loads".



WARNING

Risk of accident as a result of exceeding the residual load capacity.

If the weight determined by a load measurement exceeds the permissible residual load capacity of the truck, the truck cannot be operated safely.

- Set down and reduce the load immediately.
- If necessary, use another truck with sufficient load-bearing capacity.



NOTE

The load measurement must be calibrated in order to ensure accuracy at all times. The "access authorisation for the fleet manager" is required for the calibration. This access is required:

- · After changing the fork arms,
- · After fitting or changing attachments
- If the displayed values are obviously incorrect

If - . - - t is displayed permanently, this means that the function is calibrated incorrectly (load < 0 kg).

See the section entitled "Calibrating the load measurement"

Calibrating the load measurement

If the truck is equipped with the "load measurement" assistance system, then this assistance system must be calibrated.

The load measurement is calibrated using a wizard on the display-operating unit.



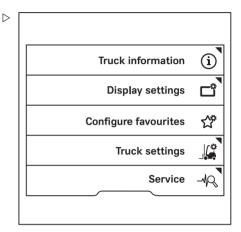
NOTE

The calibration procedure requires access authorisation for the fleet manager. Access to the settings menu is only available if the truck is at a standstill and the parking brake is applied. If the parking brake is released prematurely, the settings menu will close.

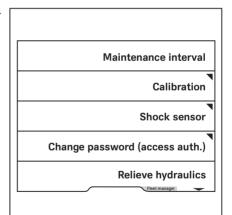
- Set the load down, if necessary.
- Drive the truck onto an even surface.



- Apply the parking brake.
- Press the ■ button.
- Press the "Settings" Softkey &.
- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".
- Press the Service → softkey.



Press the scroll keys △ ♥ until the Cal- ▷ ibration menu appears.



- Press the Load measurement softkey.

The wizard for calibrating the load measurement is started.

- Follow the instructions on the display.
- If the message Calibration failed ! appears, press the ✓ softkey.
- Repeat the process.

After the calibration has been completed successfully, the message Successful calibration \checkmark appears.

- Switch the truck off and on again.

The calibration is now complete.



If the message A6701 Fault: Monitoring of assistance system A appears during the calibration, perform the calibration again.

Precision load measurement (variant)

This assistance system is available only if the truck is equipped with the "load measurement" variant.

The "Precision load measurement" variant allows the weight of the load being picked up to be measured and displayed on the display-operating unit accurate to within 1% of the rated capacity of the truck.

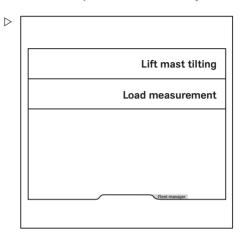


If the load is to be measured exclusive of the load pick-up device, run the tare function. See the next section.

- Pick up the load safely.
- Press the button.

The first menu level appears.

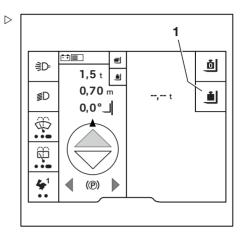
Press the "Load" softkey ■.







- Press the "Precision load measurement" **1** (1) softkey.



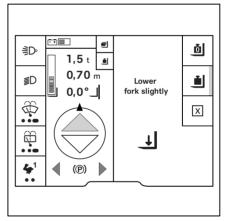
The Lower fork slightly → prompt is ▷ displayed.

- Lower the fork carriage.



Slowly lowering the fork carriage increases the measurement accuracy in trucks with multilever operation.

The value is calculated. The Calc. ongoing (message appears.



If the calculation was successful, the measured weight of the load (1) is displayed.



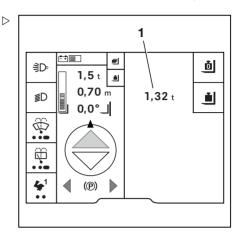
NOTE

If the tare function was not active, the full weight of the load being picked up is displayed.

The measured weight remains displayed until:

- · The load has been measured again
- · The sensor system detects a change in the weiaht

In this case, -.-- t is displayed as the weiaht.



Tare function

The tare function is a sub-function of the precision load measurement function. If the precision load measurement function should not factor in the weight of a load container, the tare function must be run. It is then possible to determine the net weight of the raised load.



During the following process, the fork carriage must be lowered slightly. When doing so, the fork must not touch the ground, as otherwise the result will be inaccurate.

- Set the lift mast to vertical.
- Pick up the empty load container, such as a crate.
- Raise the fork to a height of between 300 mm and 800 mm.
- Press the button.

The first menu level appears.

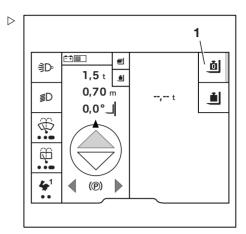
- Press the "Load" softkey ■.
- Press the "Precision load measurement" is softkey.





- Press the "Tare" softkey (1).

The activation bar next to the "Tare" symbol <u>a</u> lights up.



- Lower the fork carriage.

The value is calculated. The message Zeroing ongoing \bigcirc is displayed.

If the tare function was run successfully, a weight of 0.00 t is displayed. The activation bar next to the "tare"

symbol remains lit.

 If the tare function was not run successfully, follow the prompts on the display and repeat the process.

When a load is picked up, -.-- t is displayed.

The "Precision load measurement" can be performed.

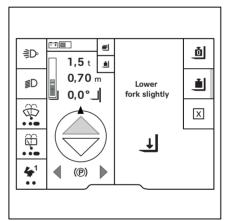
To clear the tare weight, press the "tare"
 softkey again.

WARNING

Risk of accident due to incorrect load specification.

If the requirements for the precision load measurement function change, the tare function must be run again, for example if a precision load measurement needs to be performed without a crate. Otherwise, the new precision load measurement will continue to deduct the weight of the crate.

Run the tare function again without a load or a crate.



Total load (variant)

Use the "total load" variant to calculate the total weight of multiple loads. The "total load" is an additional function of the "load measurement". It records the individual loads and stores up to three total loads.

This allows, for example, three different containers to be laden and their loading weight to be determined. This function is helpful if, for instance, a container has a limited payload and you want to know when the permissible load weight has been reached.

This function is useful for comparing the loads indicated on delivery documents to the actual loads, for example.

The procedure for adding up the total load is as follows:

- Pick up the load and call up the load menu,
- 2 Measure the load,
- 3 Add/subtract the load.

WARNING

Risk to stability.

If the weight determined by a load measurement exceeds the permissible residual load capacity of the truck, the truck cannot be operated safely.

- Do not lift the load higher than 800 mm.
- Set down and reduce the load immediately.
- If necessary, use another truck with sufficient load-bearing capacity.

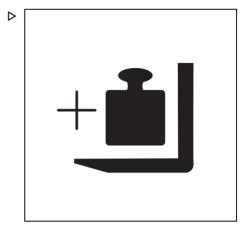


NOTE

Lift the load to a height of between 300 mm and 800 mm, since the load must subsequently be lowered slightly for the weighing process. If the weighing process establishes that the load is too heavy, the load must not be lifted higher than 800 mm. The fork arms must not touch the ground.

Picking up the load and calling up the load menu

- Pick up the load safely.
- Press the button.





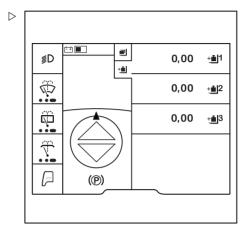
The first menu level appears.

- Press the "Load" softkey ■.
- Press the "Total load" softkey 1.

The "Total load" menu appears. A total of three load totals can be saved.

The total load is explained here using 11.

Press the [±] softkey.

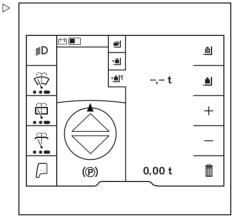


The "Total load" menu storage space ± in appears.

This menu provides the following functions:

- 👜 Tare
- + Add a load
- · Subtract a load
- 🛍 Delete load summation

Measuring the load



displayed.

Lower the fork carriage.

The value is calculated. The Calc. ongoing (message appears.

If the calculation was successful, the load is displayed.

Adding a load

- Pick up the load to be added.
- Measure the load as described previously.
- Press the + Softkey.

The load is saved automatically.

Subtracting a load

- Pick up the load to be subtracted.
- Measure the load as described previously.
- To subtract the current load, press the
 - Softkev.

The current load is subtracted from the sum.

The load is saved automatically.



If, for instance, this load was added to the wrong total load, it is also possible to perform a subtraction with the previously measured and added load.

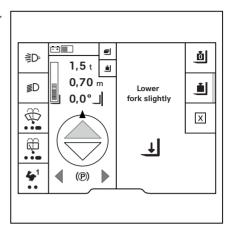
Delete total load

- To delete the total load, press the in softkey.

The Clear total load? message is displayed.

- To delete, press the ✓ Softkey.
- To cancel, press the Softkey.

The display changes to the "Total load" menu.





Efficiency and drive modes

Blue-Q (variant)

Functional description

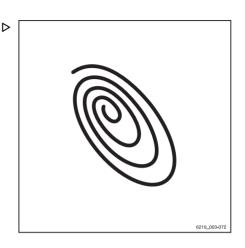
The Blue-Q efficiency mode affects both the drive unit and the activation of the additional consumers, and reduces the truck's energy consumption. Blue-Q can be switched on and off via a softkey.

If efficiency mode is switched on, the acceleration behaviour of the truck changes to make acceleration more moderate.

When travelling at low speeds, normally when manoeuvring, no reduction is noticeable even if efficiency mode is switched on. For moderate speeds from approx. 7 km/h, acceleration is gentler. Therefore, on distances of up to approx. 40 m, lower speeds are reached than would be the case if the efficiency mode was not activated. As in "STILL Classic" mode, the maximum speed is 20 km/h.



- · Maximum speed
- · Climbing capability
- · Pulling force
- · Braking characteristics



Effects on additional consumers

The following table shows the specific conditions that cause certain auxiliary devices to shutdown when Blue Q is activated. The additional consumers available depend on the truck equipment.

Shut-off	Seat switch	Truck is stationary	Drive direction
Front working spot- light*	Х	х	Reverse > 3 km/h
Rear working spotlight*	X	X	Forwards
Roof spotlight*	X	X	> 3 km/h
Headlight*	X	X	-
Front wiper	X	X	Reverse > 3 km/h
Rear wiper	X	X	Forwards
Roof wiper	X	X	-
Seat heater	Х	-	-
Cab heating	Х	-	-



Shut-off	Seat switch	Truck is stationary	Drive direction
Screen heating	X	-	-
*No shut-off for St\/70	(Corman Poad Traffic I	icensing Regulations) equ	inment (variant)



Switching Blue-Q on and off

 To switch on Blue-Q efficiency mode, push the softkey .

The Blue-Q symbol appears on the display/operating unit and Blue-Q efficiency mode is switched on.

 To switch off Blue-Q efficiency mode, push the associated softkey again.

The Blue-Q symbol disappears and Blue-Q efficiency mode is switched off.



The fleet manager can also use his access authorisation to activate Blue-Q efficiency mode permanently. See the next section.



Configuring Blue-Q

Fleet manager access authorisation allows the fleet manager to activate Blue-Q efficiency mode permanently or to enable it to be switched on and off via softkey.

- Enable Access authorisation -.
- Press the Truck settings softkey 🞉.

The menu that opens provides the following selection:

Permanent

The driver cannot switch Blue-Q on and off. Blue-Q is permanently active. The Blue-Q symbol appears permanently on the display-operating unit.

- By pressing a button
 The driver can switch Blue-Q on and off via the softkey.
- Push the required softkey.

The orange activation bar appears next to the pushed softkey.

STILL Classic and sprint mode

The drive modes affect the handling of the truck

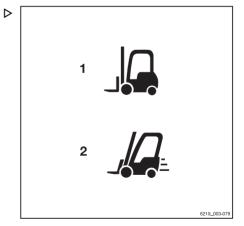
Two different drive modes are available:

1 STILL Classic

This mode is active after the truck has been switched on. This mode is the default setting and provides a balance between hydraulic functions and driving functions. The maximum speed is 18 km/h. No symbol is shown on the display.

2 Sprint mode

In sprint mode, the truck accelerates more quickly to a maximum speed of 20 km/h. This mode also increases the lifting speed. Sprint mode is for driving on clear and spacious terrain.







If sprint mode is used, the truck's energy consumption is higher. The battery is therefore discharged more quickly. The drive units heat up more quickly.

Switching sprint mode on and off

- To switch on sprint mode, push the associated softkey.

The "sprint mode" symbol (2) appears on the display of the display-operating unit. Sprint mode is switched on.

- To switch off the mode, push the softkey again.

The symbol disappears and the mode is switched off. The truck is then back in STILL Classic mode.

Automatic switch off for sprint mode

If the truck is operated in sprint mode at the maximum performance level, the truck will consume more energy. As a result, the battery is discharged faster and the traction drives and energy supply may become too hot.

The battery voltage and the temperature of the traction drives and energy supply are monitored continuously. If under voltage (does not apply to lithium-ion batteries) or overheating occurs, sprint mode is automatically deactiva-

If the truck is automatically switched off due to under voltage, sprint mode can then only be switched on again if the following conditions are met:

- The battery is fully recharged.
- · The truck has been restarted.

If the truck is automatically switched off due to overtemperature, sprint mode can then only be switched on again when the drive units have cooled down



Driving

Safety regulations when driving Driving conduct

The driver must follow the public rules of the road when driving in company traffic.

The speed must be appropriate to the local conditions.

For example, the driver must drive slowly around corners, in tight passageways, when driving through swing-doors, at blind spots, or on uneven surfaces.

The driver must always maintain a safe braking distance from vehicles and persons in front, and must always have the truck under control. Stopping suddenly, turning quickly and overtaking at dangerous or blind spots must be avoided.

 Initial driving practice must be carried out in an empty space or on a clear roadway.

The following are forbidden during driving:

- Allowing arms and legs to hang outside the truck
- Leaning the body over the outer contour of the truck
- · Climbing out of the truck
- · Moving the driver's seat
- · Adjusting the steering column
- · Releasing the seat belt
- · Disabling the restraint system
- Raising the load higher than 300 mm above the ground (with the exception of manoeuvring processes during the placement into stock/removal from stock of loads)
- Using electronic devices, for example radios, mobile phones etc.



▲ WARNING

The use of multimedia and communication equipment as well as playing these devices at an excessive volume during travel or when handling loads can affect the operator's attention. There is a risk of accident!

- Do not use devices during travel or when handling loads.
- Set the volume so that warning signals can still be heard

WARNING

In areas where use of mobile phones is prohibited, use of a mobile phone or radio telephone is not permitted.

- Switch off the devices.

Visibility when driving

The driver must look in the drive direction and have a sufficient view of the driving lane.

Particularly for reverse travel, the driver must be sure that the driving lane is clear.

When transporting goods that impair visibility, the driver must drive the truck in reverse.

If this is not possible, a second person acting as a guide must walk in front of the truck.

In this case the driver must only move at walking pace and with extra care. The truck must be stopped immediately if eye contact with the guide is lost.

Rear-view mirrors are only to be used for observing the road area behind the truck and not for reverse travel. If visual aids (mirror, monitor) are necessary to achieve sufficient visibility, it is necessary to practise using them. For reverse travel using visual aids, extra care should be taken.

When using attachments, special conditions apply; see the chapter entitled "Fitting attachments".

Any glass (variant, e.g. windscreen) and mirrors must always be clean and free of ice.



Roadways

Dimensions of roadways and aisle widths

The following dimensions and aisle width requirements apply under the specified conditions to ensure safe manoeuvring. In each case, a check must be performed to determine whether a larger aisle width is necessary, e.g. in the case of deviating load dimensions, attachments, lift masts and tow couplings.

Within the EU, "Council Directive 89/654/EEC concerning the minimum safety and health requirements for the workplace" must be observed. The respective national guidelines apply for areas outside the EU.

The required aisle widths depend on the dimensions of the load.

Required aisle widths with pallet

Model		Aisle width [mm]	
	Туре	With pallet 1000x1200 crosswise	With pallet 800x1200 lengthwise
RX20-14C	6219	3186	3311
RX20-16C	6220	3186	3311
RX20-16	6221	3269	3394
RX20-16L	6222	3377	3502
RX20-18	6223	3269	3394
RX20-18L	6224	3377	3502
RX20-20L	6225	3390	3516
RX20-16P	6226	3362	3487
RX20-16PL	6227	3470	3595
RX20-18P	6228	3362	3487
RX20-18PL	6229	3470	3595
RX20-20P	6230	3375	3501
RX20-20PL	6231	3483	3609

The truck must be used only on roadways that do not have excessively sharp curves, excessively steep gradients or excessively narrow or low entrances.



Driving on ascending and descending gradients

WARNING

Risk of accident due to the drive unit switching off!

Driving up and down longer gradients can cause the drive unit to overheat and switch off. The truck will then no longer decelerate when the accelerator pedal is released and will coast.

Driving up and down longer gradients greater than 15% is not permitted due to the minimum specified braking values. The climbing capability values given below apply only to negotiating obstacles on the roadway and to temporary differences in level, e.g. HGV ramps.

- Consult the authorised service centre before driving on long ascending and descending gradients greater than 15%.



The values specified in the "Maximum climbing capability" table can be used only to compare the performance of forklift trucks in the same category. The specified values in no way represent the normal daily operating conditions.

Trucks can theoretically be driven on the ascending and descending gradients specified in the following table.

Maximum climbing capability

Model	Time	Maximum climbing capability [%]	
	Туре	With a load	Without a load
RX20-14C	6219	30.3	27.9
RX20-16C	6220	27.6	26.0
RX20-16	6221	28.0	27.4
RX20-16L	6222	27.4	28.7
RX20-18	6223	25.1	26.0
RX20-18L	6224	25.3	28.3
RX20-20L	6225	23.0	26.9
RX20-16P	6226	27.8	27.8
RX20-16PL	6227	27.6	28.9
RX20-18P	6228	24.8	26.0
RX20-18PL	6229	25.4	28.6
RX20-20P	6230	22.9	25.1
RX20-20PL	6231	23.1	27.2



Legend for model

С	Compact	
L	Long	
Р	Swing axle version	

The ascending and descending gradients must not exceed the gradients listed above and must have a rough surface.

The top and bottom of the gradient must feature smooth and gradual transitions to prevent the load from falling to the ground or the truck being damaged.

Warning in the event that components protrude beyond the truck contour

Trucks are often required to drive through very narrow or very low spaces such as aisles or containers. The dimensions of the trucks are designed for this purpose. However, movable components may protrude beyond the truck contour and be damaged or torn off. Examples of these components are:

- · An unfolded roof panel in the driver's cab
- · Open cab doors

Condition of the roadways

Roadways must be sufficiently firm and even. The surface must be free from contamination and fallen objects.

Drainage channels, level crossings and similar obstacles must be evened out and, if necessary, ramps must be provided so that trucks can drive over these obstacles with as few bumps as possible.

Take note of the load capacity of manhole covers, drain covers etc.

There must be sufficient distance between the highest points of the truck or the load and the fixed elements of the surrounding area. The height is based on the overall height of the lift mast and the dimensions of the load; see the chapter entitled "Technical data".



Rules for roadways and the working area

It is only permitted to drive on routes authorised for traffic by the operating company or its representatives. Traffic routes must be free from obstacles. The load must only be set down and stored in the designated locations. The operating company and its representatives must ensure that unauthorised third parties do not enter the working area.



NOTE

Please observe the definition of the following responsible person: "operating company".

Hazardous areas

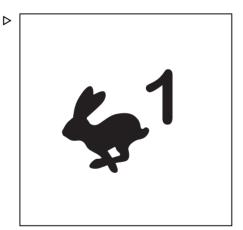
Hazardous areas on roadways must be indicated by standard traffic signs or, if necessary, by additional warning signs.

Selecting drive programmes 1 to 3

The truck has three drive programmes with different preset driving and braking characteristics. The basic principle is that the higher the number of the drive programme selected, the greater the driving dynamics.

The drive programme is selected using the display-operating unit under the "Drive" @= menu item.

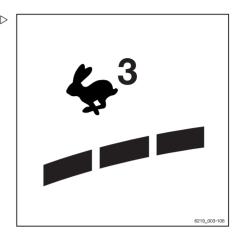
 Press the ♣¹...♣³ softkey to select the desired drive programme.





If the drive programmes are saved as a favourite on a softkey, press the "Drive programme" softkey until the number of the desired drive programme is shown on the display.

The number of dynamic bar segments indicates the driving dynamics of the selected drive programme.



Selecting drive programme A or B

The truck has two driving programmes for personalised handling and braking characteristics.

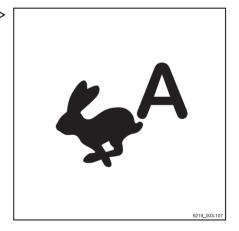
Unlike the fixed drive programmes "1 to 3", the programs "A" and "B" can be configured. The procedure for this is described in the following section.

The drive programme is selected using the display-operating unit under the "Drive" Demonstrate.

- Press the A or B softkey to select the desired drive programme.
- If the drive programmes are saved as a favourite on a softkey, press the "Drive programme" Softkey until the letter of the desired drive programme is shown on the display.

Configuring drive programmes A and B

The drive programmes can be configured by the driver.







NOTE

Access to the settings menu is only available if the truck is at a standstill and the parking brake is applied. If the parking brake is released prematurely, the settings menu will close.

- Stop the truck.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Press the 🗏 button.

The first menu level appears.

- Press the "Settings" softkey ...
- Press the Drive programmes softkey.

The "drive programme" menu appears.

 Press the associated softkey for drive programme A or drive programme B.

Configuring the drive programs using the "drive programme A" is explained here.

The menu **Set drive programme A** appears.

The following parameters can be set:

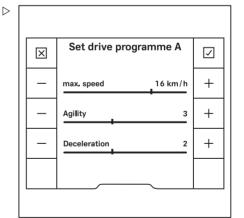
- max. speed
 Determines the maximum speed (max. 20 km/h).
- · Agility

Determines the acceleration behaviour and the reversing behaviour using five levels.
"1" indicates the lowest agility and "5" indicates the greatest agility.

Deceleration

Determines the electrical brake retardation when the accelerator pedal is released in five stages.

- "1" indicates the lowest deceleration and "5" indicates the greatest deceleration.
- To select a higher level, press the appropriate "plus" + softkey.
- To select a lower level, press the appropriate "minus" softkey.
- To save the setting, press the "Confirm"
 softkey.





The settings are saved.

The settings return to the most recently saved value

Press the button once to return to the previous menu level without saving the changes.

Selecting the drive direction

The drive direction of the truck must be selected using the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever before attempting to drive. The method of actuating the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever depends on the operating devices that are fitted in the truck.

The drive direction switch is located on the operating devices for the hydraulic functions. The drive direction selection lever is located on the travel direction selector and indicator module (variant).



NOTE

The drive direction can also be changed during travel. Your foot can remain on the accelerator pedal while you do so. The truck is then decelerated and accelerated again in the opposite direction (reversing).

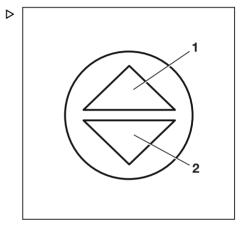
The indicator for the selected drive direction ("forwards" (1) or "backwards" (2)) lights up on the display-operating unit.

Neutral position

If leaving the truck for a prolonged period, the neutral position must be selected in order to avoid the truck suddenly moving off due to an inadvertent actuation of the accelerator pedal.

 Briefly select the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever for the direction opposite to the current drive direction.

The drive direction indicator on the display-operating unit goes out.







When the seat is vacated, the selected drive direction is set to the "neutral position". To drive, the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever must be actuated again.

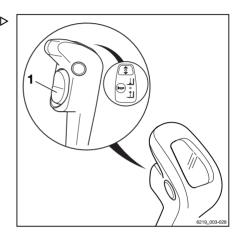
Actuating the drive direction switch with the multiple-lever version

- For the "forwards" drive direction, push the drive direction switch (1) downwards.
- For the "backwards" drive direction, push the drive direction switch (1) upwards.



NOTE

If the drive direction switch (1) is defective and the truck stops in a danger area, the drive direction selection lever on the travel direction selector and indicator module (variant) can be used for emergency driving. Refer to the section entitled "Emergency driving via the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever" in the chapter entitled "Procedure in emergencies"

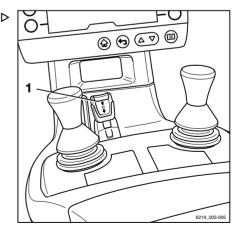


Actuating the drive direction switch with the mini-lever version

- For the "forwards" drive direction, push the drive direction switch (1) forwards.
- For the "backwards" drive direction, pull the drive direction switch (1) backwards.



If the drive direction switch (1) is defective and the truck stops in a danger area, the drive direction selection lever on the travel direction selector and indicator module (variant) can be used for emergency driving. Refer to the section entitled "Emergency driving via the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever" in the chapter entitled "Procedure in emergencies".



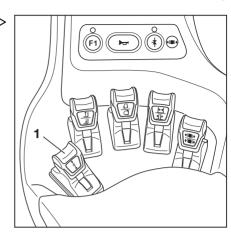


Actuating the drive direction switch with the Fingertip version

- For the "forwards" drive direction, push the drive direction switch (1) forwards.
- For the "backwards" drive direction, pull the drive direction switch (1) backwards.



If the drive direction switch (1) is defective and the truck stops in a danger area, the drive direction selection lever on the travel direction selector and indicator module (variant) can be used for emergency driving. Refer to the section entitled "Emergency driving via the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever" in the chapter entitled "Procedure in emergencies".



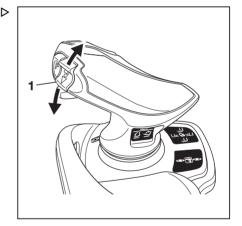
Actuating the vertical rocker button ▷ for the "drive direction" with the Jovstick 4Plus version

- For the "forwards" drive direction, push the vertical rocker button for the "drive direction" (1) upwards.
- For the "backwards" drive direction, push the vertical rocker button for the "drive direction" (1) downwards.



NOTE

If the drive direction switch (1) is defective and the truck stops in a danger area, the drive direction selection lever on the travel direction selector and indicator module (variant) can be used for emergency driving. Refer to the section entitled "Emergency driving via the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever" in the chapter entitled "Procedure in emergencies".





Actuating the drive direction selection lever with the travel direction selector and indicator module version

- For the "forwards" drive direction, push the drive direction selection lever (1) forwards.
- For the "backwards" drive direction, push the drive direction selection lever (1) backwards

Alternatively, the drive direction can also be selected using the drive direction switches on the operating devices for the hydraulic functions.



If the drive direction selection lever (1) is defective and the truck stops in a danger area. the drive direction switch on the operating device for the hydraulic functions can be used for emergency driving. Refer to the section entitled "Emergency driving via the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever" in the chapter entitled "Procedure in emergencies".

Starting drive mode

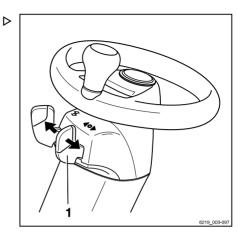
A DANGER

Being trapped under a rolling or tipping truck could cause fatal injuries!

- Sit on the driver's seat.
- Fasten the seat belt.
- Activate the available restraint systems.
- Observe the information in the chapter entitled "Safety regulations when driving".

The driver's seat is equipped with a seat switch. This seat switch checks whether the driver's seat is occupied. If the driver's seat is not occupied or if the seat switch is malfunctioning, the truck cannot be moved. All lifting functions are disabled. In these situations, the message Sit on driver's seat 🛂 is shown on the display of the display-operating

- Sit on the driver's seat. Fasten the seat belt.



- Lift the fork carriage until the necessary ground clearance is achieved.
- Tilt the lift mast backwards.
- Release the parking brake.
- Select the desired drive direction.

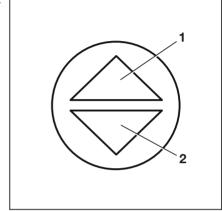
The indicator for the selected drive direction ("forwards" (1) or "reverse" (2)) lights up on the display-operating unit.



NOTE

Depending on the equipment, the following variants of warning units for reverse travel may be present:

- · An acoustic signal will be heard.
- · The STILL SafetyLight lights up.
- · The hazard warning system flashes.



- Press the accelerator pedal (3).

The truck travels in the selected drive direction. The speed is controlled by the accelerator pedal position. The truck brakes when the accelerator pedal is released.



l i NOTE

The truck is also held in place on ascending or descending gradients even if the electric parking brake is not engaged.



Risk of accident due to brake failure!

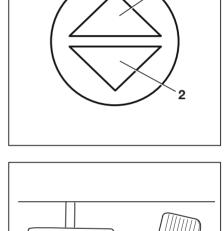
The regenerative brake only functions if the truck is switched on, the emergency off switch has not been actuated and the parking brake is released.

- Use the brake pedal if the regenerative brake malfunctions.
- Engage the parking brake before leaving the truck.



- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.





 \triangleright

- Select the desired drive direction.
- Press the accelerator pedal.

The truck will travel in the selected drive direc-



NOTE

The drive direction can also be changed during travel. Your foot can remain on the accelerator pedal while you do so. The truck is then decelerated and accelerated again in the opposite direction (reversing).



NOTE

If an electrical fault occurs in the accelerator, the drive unit is switched off. In this situation, the truck is not electrically braked. Once the electrical fault has been corrected, it will be possible to drive the truck again by releasing the accelerator pedal and then actuating the accelerator pedal again. If the truck still cannot be operated, park the truck securely and contact the authorised service centre.

Starting drive mode, dual pedal version (variant)

A DANGER

Being trapped under a rolling or tipping truck could cause fatal injuries!

- Sit on the driver's seat.
- Fasten the seat belt.
- Activate the available restraint systems.
- Observe the information in the chapter entitled "Safety regulations when driving".

The driver's seat is equipped with a seat switch. This seat switch checks whether the driver's seat is occupied. If the driver's seat is not occupied or if the seat switch is malfunctioning, the truck cannot be moved. All lifting functions are disabled. In these situations, the message Sit on driver's seat is shown on the display of the display-operating unit.

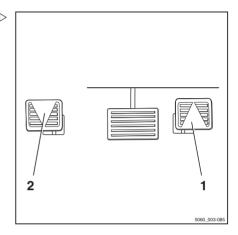
- Sit on the driver's seat. Fasten the seat belt.



- Lift the fork carriage until the necessary ground clearance is achieved.
- Tilt the lift mast backwards.
- Release the parking brake.
- Press the right accelerator pedal (1) for the "forwards" drive direction and press the left accelerator pedal (2) for the "backwards" drive direction.



In the dual pedal version, the drive direction switches on the operating devices do not function.



The indicator for the selected drive direction ("forwards" (1) or "reverse" (2)) lights up on the display-operating unit.



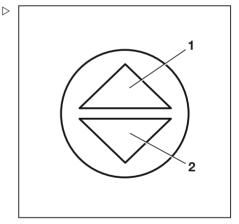
Depending on the equipment, the following variants of warning units for reverse travel may be present:

- · An acoustic signal will be heard.
- · The STILL SafetyLight lights up.
- · The hazard warning system flashes.

The truck travels in the selected drive direction. The speed is controlled by the accelerator pedal position. The truck brakes when the accelerator pedal is released.



The truck is also held in place on ascending or descending gradients even if the electric parking brake is not engaged.





A DANGER

Risk of accident due to brake failure!

The regenerative brake only functions if the truck is switched on, the emergency off switch has not been actuated and the parking brake is released.

- Use the brake pedal if the regenerative brake malfunctions.
- Engage the parking brake before leaving the truck.

Changing the drive direction

- Remove your foot from the actuated accelerator pedal.
- Press down the accelerator pedal for the opposite direction.

The truck travels in the selected drive direction.



NOTE

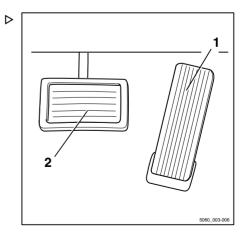
If an electrical fault occurs in the accelerator, the drive unit is switched off. In this situation, the truck is not electrically braked. Once the electrical fault has been corrected, it will be possible to drive the truck again by releasing the accelerator pedal and then actuating the accelerator pedal again. If the truck still cannot be operated, park the truck securely and contact the authorised service centre.

Operating the service brake

The electric brake converts the acceleration energy of the truck into electrical energy. This causes the truck to decelerate.

Electrical braking recovers energy for the battery. This results in a longer operating time between charging operations and less wear to the brakes.

The truck can also be braked with the mechanical brake by actuating the brake pedal (2). In the first section of the brake pedal's travel, only the electric brake takes effect. As the pedal is depressed further, the mechanical brake is also activated and acts on the drive wheels





A DANGER

If the service brake fails, the truck cannot brake sufficiently. There is a risk of accident!

If the driver notices that the electrical braking effect has reduced by 50% and that the drive torque has decreased to 50% of the normal level, a component failure may have occurred.

- Bring the truck to a standstill using the brakes.
 Use the parking brake if necessary to assist in this process.
- Notify the authorised service centre.
- Do not operate the truck again until the service brake has been repaired.

A DANGER

At speeds that are too high, there is a danger that the truck could slip or overturn!

The braking distance of the truck depends on the weather conditions and the level of contamination on the roadway. Note that the basic braking distance increases with the square of the speed.

- Adapt your driving and braking style to suit the weather conditions and the level of contamination on the roadway.
- Always choose a driving speed that will provide a sufficient stopping distance.
- Brake the truck by releasing the accelerator pedal (1).
- If the braking effect is inadequate, use the brake pedal (2) as well to apply the mechanical brake.

Parking brake

Operation of the parking brake depends on which parking brake the truck is fitted with.

Possible equipment variants are as follows:

- Mechanical parking brake; see ⇒ Chapter "Applying the mechanical parking brake", Page 204
- Electric parking brake; see

 Chapter "Actuating the electric parking brake (variant)",
 Page 206



Applying the mechanical parking brake



▲ DANGER

There is a risk of fatal injury from being run over if the truck rolls away.

- The truck must not be parked on a slope.
- In emergencies, secure the truck using wedges on the side facing downhill
- Only leave the truck when the parking brake has been applied.

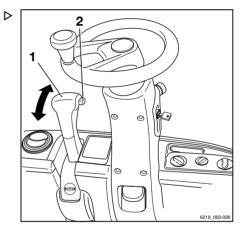
Applying the parking brake

 Pull the parking brake lever (1) back fully and release it.

The parking brake lever engages. The parking brake is applied. The wheels on the drive axle are blocked.

The "parking brake" symbol (®) appears on the display in place of the speed information.

When a drive direction is selected and the accelerator pedal is actuated, the message Release parking brake (①) appears.



Releasing the parking brake

- Pull the parking brake lever (1) back.
- Push down the knob (2) and hold it down.
- Move the parking brake lever (1) forwards and release both the lever and the knob.

The parking brake is released.



NOTE

The parking brake lever swivels to the forward position automatically via spring force and requires only gentle manual guidance. If the movement of the parking brake is stiff, notify the authorised service centre.



After the parking brake has been released, the previously selected drive direction is retained and is shown on the drive direction indicator.

Special features when the parking brake is released

Cause	Effect
The driver's seat is vacated and the parking	The message Apply parking brake ap-
brake has not been applied.	pears.
The truck needs to be switched off but the parking brake has not been applied.	The message Apply parking brake ap-
	pears.
	The truck cannot be switched off.

"Safe parking" function (variant)

This function monitors the braking effect after the truck is parked. If a sensor is fitted on the lift mast (variant), it also checks whether the fork carriage is lowered.

This function alerts the driver with an audible signal if:

- The driver leaves the driver's seat without applying the parking brake
- The driver leaves the driver's seat without lowering the fork carriage (variant)
- The driver attempts to switch off the truck without applying the parking brake
- The truck starts moving approximately 20 seconds after the parking brake is applied

Activation and intervention of the function

Cause	Effect
The driver's seat is vacated and the parking brake has not been applied.	A warning signal sounds. Sitting in the driver's seat silences the warning signal.
The truck needs to be switched off but the parking brake has not been applied.	The truck cannot be switched off. A warning signal sounds. Applying the parking brake silences the warning signal.
The parking brake has been applied but has not been applied correctly as a result of a malfunction The driver's seat is vacated.	A warning signal sounds. Sitting in the driver's seat silences the warning signal. Use wedges to prevent the truck from rolling away. Notify the authorised service centre.
The truck needs to be switched off. The parking brake has been applied but has not engaged correctly as a result of a malfunction.	The truck cannot be switched off. A warning signal sounds. Use wedges to prevent the truck from rolling away. Notify the authorised service centre.



A DANGER

Risk of fatal injury from being run over if the truck rolls away!

If the parking brake is faulty, park the truck safely and secure it so that it cannot roll away.

- If necessary, use wedges to prevent the truck from rolling away.
- Have the parking brake repaired by an authorised service centre.

Actuating the electric parking brake (variant)



A DANGER

There is a risk of fatal injury from being run over if the truck rolls away.

- Do not park the truck on a gradient.
- Do not leave the truck until the parking brake has been applied.
- In an emergency, secure the truck with wedges on the downhill-facing side to prevent it from rolling away.

This truck is equipped with an electric parking brake. The parking brake must not be applied manually when the driver leaves the truck. The parking brake is applied automatically.

Despite these automatic aids, the driver is always responsible for parking the truck safely. The safety information about parking the truck safely applies.



NOTE

The electric parking brake can be actuated or released only if the battery male connector has been connected **and** the truck is switched on.

If the parking brake is applied, this is indicated by a symbol in the display-operating unit in place of the driving speed.



Symbols for the parking brake in the display-operating unit

Symbol	Description
I ((P))	The parking brake was applied automatically. Actuating the accelerator pedal automatically releases the parking brake.
6	The parking brake was applied by pressing the push button. Pressing the push button is the only way to release the parking brake.

Releasing the electric parking brake after the truck has been switched on

 Press the push button (1) to release the parking brake.

The truck is held in place by the traction motor

Manually actuating the electric parking brake when the truck is stationary

Applying the parking brake manually

- Press the push button (1).

The electric parking brake will make a noise when it is applied and the LED (2) lights up continuously. The (6) symbol appears in the display.

Releasing the parking brake manually

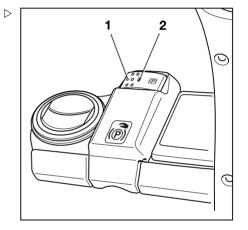
- Sit on the driver's seat.
- Press the push button (1).

The electric parking brake will make a noise when it releases and the LED (2) goes out.

The driving speed display is replaced by the (®) symbol.

Automatic actuation of the electric parking brake when the truck is stationary

When the truck is stationary, the electric parking brake is applied automatically in the following situations:





Automatically triggered actuation when the truck is stationary

Cause	Effect
The driver's seat is vacated.	The electric parking brake will make a noise when it is applied. The LED (2) lights up with a steady light.
The accelerator pedal is released (brake pedal not actuated).	After a specified delay, the electric parking brake is applied with an audible sound. The LED (2) lights up with a steady light. The truck is held on a gradient by the traction motor until the electric parking brake is applied.
The truck is switched off.	The electric parking brake is immediately applied with an audible sound. The LED (2) will light up briefly with a steady light until the control units switch off.
The emergency off switch is actuated.	The electric parking brake is immediately applied with an audible sound. The LED (2) lights up with a steady light.

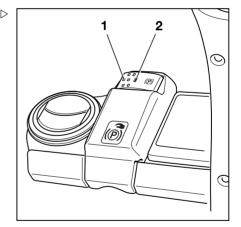
If the electric parking brake has applied automatically, the (P) symbol appears in the display-operating unit. The LED (2) lights up.

- To release the electric parking brake, the driver must sit down on the driver's seat again.
- Select a drive direction.
- Press the accelerator pedal.

The electric parking brake will make a noise when it is released. The LED (2) goes out.



If the (e) symbol appears in the display, the truck cannot be driven until the electric parking brake has been released by pressing the push button (1). This is the case if the parking brake has been applied manually.



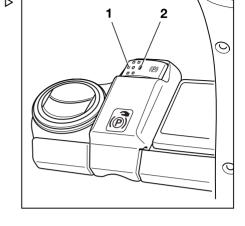
Actuation of the electric parking brake when the truck is in motion

Manual actuation when the truck is in motion

- Press the push button (1).

The truck is braked with the drive unit in accordance with the selected drive programme. Once the truck has come to a standstill, the electric parking brake is applied with an audible sound. The LED (2) lights up with a steady light. The (6) symbol appears in the displayoperating unit.

 If the braking effect is insufficient, also use the service brake.





NOTE

If the drive unit fails, the truck can be braked by pressing the push button (1). The truck brakes more strongly if the push button (1) is pressed and held or pressed several times. The electric parking brake cannot be released by actuating the accelerator pedal.

WARNING

Risk of accident!

The truck may decelerate abruptly.

- Fasten the seat belt.

Automatically triggered actuation when the truck is in motion

Cause	Effect
The driver's seat is vacated.	The truck is braked in accordance with the selected drive programme. Once the truck has come to a standstill, the electric parking brake is applied with an audible sound. The LED (2) lights up with a steady light. The (®) symbol appears in the display.
The key switch is switched off.	The truck will coast to a stop. Once the truck has come to a standstill, the electric parking brake is applied with an audible sound. The LED (2) lights up with a steady light. The (®) symbol appears in the display until the control units switch off.



Cause	Effect
The emergency off switch is actuated.	The truck will coast to a stop. Once the truck has come to a standstill, the electric parking brake is applied with an audible sound. The LED (2) lights up with a steady light. The (®) symbol appears in the display.
The truck accelerates sharply, even though the driver's seat has been vacated.	The electric parking brake is immediately applied with an audible sound. The LED (2) lights up with a steady light. The (®) symbol appears in the display.
The truck accelerates sharply, even though the accelerator pedal has not been actuated.	The parking brake is immediately applied with an audible sound. The LED (2) lights up with a steady light. The (®) symbol appears in the display.

Malfunctions in the electric parking brake



A DANGER

There is a risk of fatal injury from being run over if the truck rolls away.

- Do not park the truck on a gradient.
- Do not leave the truck until the parking brake has been applied.
- In an emergency, secure the truck with wedges on the downhill-facing side to prevent it from rolling away.
- Before leaving the truck, make sure that the parking brake is properly applied.



Message:

Apply parking brake via button.

If the truck control unit detects a malfunction in the parking brake, the truck cannot be switched off.

- The message: (1) Apply parking brake via button is shown on the display-operating unit.
- The LED (1) on the push button (2) flashes.
- · A warning signal sounds.



If a truck with a faulty parking brake has to be switched off, always secure the truck against rolling away.

A possible cause of the malfunction is that the parking brake cannot determine whether the truck is stationary or still in motion. The following section describes how to actuate the parking brake when it is faulty:

Actuating a faulty parking brake when the truck is stationary

There are two ways to apply the parking brake:

 Press and hold the push button (1) for at least five seconds and then release the push button.

OR

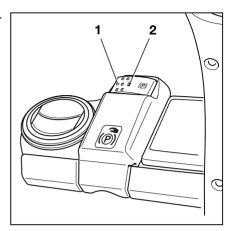
 Press the push button (1) several times in succession until a total of five seconds is reached.

The parking brake is applied with an audible sound. After the push button is released, the parking brake should not make any further sounds; if a sound is heard, this means the push button was pressed for less than five seconds. In this case, press the push button again to apply the parking brake again. If necessary, repeat this process until the parking brake is applied and the (P) symbol is displayed.

Actuating a faulty parking brake when the truck is in motion

- Press the push button (1).





The parking brake is applied.



NOTE

Keeping the push button (1) pressed for an extended time or pressing it multiple times makes the truck brake harder.

"Safe parking" function

This function monitors the braking effect after the truck is parked. If a sensor is fitted on the lift mast (variant), the function also checks whether the fork carriage is lowered.

This function alerts the driver with an audible warning signal if:

- The driver leaves the driver's seat but the parking brake could not be applied.
- The driver leaves the driver's seat without lowering the fork carriage (variant).
- The driver attempts to switch off the truck but the parking brake could not be applied.
- The truck starts moving within 20 seconds after the parking brake was applied.

Activating and intervening in the "Safe parking" function

Cause	Effect
The driver's seat is vacated. The electric parking brake cannot be applied or previously could not be applied.	The following message is shown on the display: Parking brake cannot be applied. - To acknowledge this, press the 🗹 Softkey. If the driver's seat is vacated, a warning signal sounds. Sitting on the driver's seat silences the warning signal.
The truck needs to be switched off. The electric parking brake cannot be applied or previously could not be applied.	The truck cannot be switched off. A warning signal sounds. The following messages are shown on the display: Parking brake cannot be applied. (①) - To acknowledge this, press the ☑ Softkey. Switch off truck anyway? ? - To acknowledge this, press the ☑ Softkey. Secure the truck to prevent it rolling away. △ - Secure the truck with wedges so that it cannot roll away To acknowledge this, press the ☑ Softkey. Only now can the truck be switched off.



A DANGER

Risk of fatal injury from being run over if the truck rolls away!

If the parking brake is faulty, park the truck safely. Secure the truck to prevent it from rolling away.

- To do this, strictly adhere to the following instructions:
- If the parking brake cannot be applied automatically or via the push button, perform an emergency actuation of the parking brake.
 See the section entitled "Emergency actuation of the electric parking brake (variant)" in the chapter entitled "Behaviour in emergencies".
- If the parking brake cannot be applied via the emergency actuation process, secure the truck with wedges so that the truck cannot roll away.
- Have the parking brake repaired by the authorised service centre.

Message:

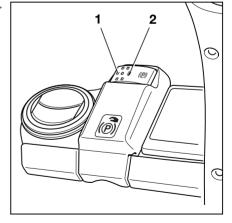
Parking brake cannot be applied

If the truck control unit detects a malfunction in $\,\,\,\triangleright$ the parking brake, the truck cannot be switched off.

- The message Parking brake cannot be applied is shown on the display-operating unit.
- The LED (2) on the push button (1) flashes.
- · A warning signal sounds.



If it is necessary to switch off a truck with a faulty parking brake, the section entitled "Switching off the truck when the electric parking brake is faulty" must be observed. It is essential to secure the truck to prevent it from rolling away.







If the parking brake is released via the emergency actuation process, it is possible to drive the truck at a low speed.

- · The truck can then be moved out of the hazardous situation or to the repair location.
- · Driving with a faulty parking brake requires the driver to be especially vigilant.
- If the parking brake cannot be applied automatically or via the push button, apply the parking brake via the emergency actuation process. See the section entitled "Emergency actuation of the parking brake (variant)" in the chapter entitled "Behaviour in emergencies".
- If the parking brake cannot be applied via the emergency actuation process, secure the truck with wedges so that the truck cannot roll away.
- Have the parking brake repaired by an authorised service centre.



Steering

▲ DANGER

Risk of accident!

If the hydraulics fail, there is a risk of accident as the steering characteristics will have changed.

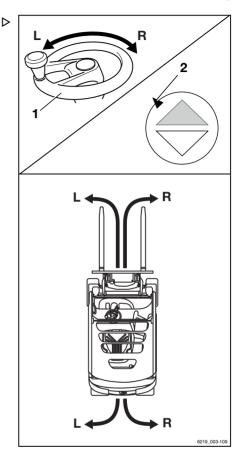
- Do not operate the truck if it has a defective steering system.
- Steer the truck by turning the steering wheel (1) accordingly.

Turning the steering wheel to the left (L) steers the truck to the left (L).

Turning the steering wheel to the right (R) steers the truck to the right (R).

The arrow (2) displays the direction in which the truck is moving.

For information on the turning radius, see the "Technical data".





Reducing speed when turning (Curve Speed Control)

This function reduces the speed of the truck as the steering angle increases, regardless of the amount to which the accelerator has been actuated. If the steering angle is reduced again upon exiting the curve, the truck accelerates in line with how far the accelerator is depressed.

However, the function does not release the driver from the duty to approach a curve at a speed according to the following factors:

- · The carried load
- · The roadway conditions
- · The radius of the curve



The Curve Speed Control function cannot override the physical limits of stability. Despite this function, there still is a risk of tipping!

 Before using this function, familiarise yourself with the change to the driving and steering characteristics of the truck.

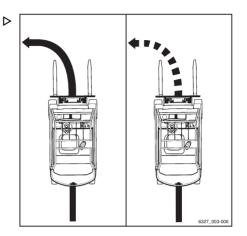
A DANGER

Increased risk of tipping if the Curve Speed Control function is disabled! If the controller fails while the truck is in motion or if the controller is disabled, the truck will no longer automatically brake when steering.

- Do not turn off the key switch while driving.
- Actuate the emergency stop switch only in emergencies.
- Always adapt your driving style to the conditions.

Despite the Curve Speed Control function, the truck may overturn in extreme cases within the following situations:

- Cornering too fast on uneven or inclined roadways.
- Turning the steering wheel sharply while driving.
- Cornering with an inadequately secured load
- Cornering too fast on a smooth or wet roadway.





Speed reduction when the fork carriage is raised (variant)

If the truck is equipped with this variant, the driving speed is automatically reduced to 5 km/h (forwards and backwards) from a lift height of more than 500 mm.

If the fork carriage is lowered below this lift height again, the driving speed limitation is deactivated.



NOTE

If the lift height measuring system is not working correctly, e.g. due to contamination of the sensor, the driving speed is permanently limited to 5 km/h.

Speed reduction when the cab door is open

WARNING

Risk of accident from sudden deceleration of the truck

If the cab door is opened while the truck is in motion, the truck brakes automatically.

- Keep the cab door closed when driving.

With the "cab" equipment variant, the truck has a cab door monitoring function via a sensor. The signal from this sensor is linked with the signal from the buckle switch in the control electronics of the truck.

If the cab door is not closed and the seat belt is not fastened, the driving speed is limited to 4 km/h. The message Close cab door or seat belt appears in the display.

If the cab door is opened while the truck is in motion, the truck brakes automatically to a speed of 4 km/h. The message Close cab door appears in the display.

If the seat belt is released with the cab door closed, no message appears in the display.





NOTE

There is a variant that prevents the truck from being driven when the cab door is open. The message Close cab door ! appears in the display.

Speed limitation (variant)

The speed limitation (variant) is a function that can be configured by the fleet manager. It sets a maximum speed that can either be permanent or be called up by the driver. This function helps the driver to comply with speed restrictions, e.g. in storage areas or specific areas.

Switching the speed limitation on and off

Press the button.

The first menu level appears.

- Press the "Drive" softkey @=.

The "Drive" menu appears.

- Press the "Speed limitation" softkey (5).

The activation bar appears next to the symbol. The speed limitation is switched on.

- To switch off the speed limitation, press the softkey again.

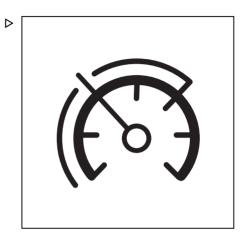
Configuring the speed limitation



Access to the settings menu is only available if the truck is at a standstill and the parking brake is applied. If the parking brake is released prematurely, the settings menu will close. Access is only granted when the password is entered by the fleet manager.

- Stop the truck.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Press the 🔳 button.
- Press the "Settings" softkey ...

The first menu level appears.





 Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".

The "Settings menu" opens on the display.

- Press the Truck settings softkey 🞉.
- Press the Speed limitation softkey.

The menu that opens offers the following functions:

- Permanent
 Enabling this function limits the speed until the fleet manager disables this function.
- By pressing a button
 If this function is activated, the driver may switch the speed limitation on and off by pressing the \$\sigma\$ softkey.
- Entering the maximum speed
 This menu can be used to set the maximum truck speed when speed limitation is active.
- To adjust the maximum speed, press the Enter max. speed softkey.

The Speed restriction menu opens.

 Using the softkeys, set a maximum speed between 2 km/h and 20 km/h.

The maximum speed is dependent on the truck equipment and may be restricted by a factory setting.

- To save, press the button.

The maximum speed is entered.

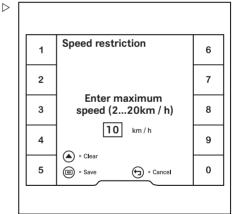
To clear, press the △ scroll button.

The entry is deleted.

To cancel, press the back button ←

The display reverts to the previous menu.

The main display button $\widehat{\mbox{\ }}$ takes you to the main display.





Cruise control (variant)

The "cruise control" assistance function allows the driver to maintain a constant truck speed over a reasonable distance. In addition, the cruise control function can be used to comply with any speed restriction that is in force on the company's premises. The cruise control function operates when driving forwards at a speed of 6 km/h or faster. The function is put on standby via the display-operating unit and can be activated and deactivated using the drive direction switch on the operating device for the hydraulic functions.

When the cruise control function is activated, the driver can save the speed when driving forwards at a speed of at least 6.0 km/h by pressing a button and can continue driving without actuating the accelerator pedal.

The pictogram $^{\frac{1}{6}}$ (3) for operating the cruise control function is located on the operating device for the hydraulic functions.

Putting the cruise control function on standby

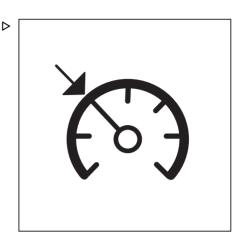
In order for the cruise control function to be activated via the drive direction switch, the function must first be put on standby using the display-operating unit.

- Press the 🗏 button.

The first menu level appears.

Press the "Drive" softkey © =.

The "Drive" menu appears.





- Press the "cruise control" (5) softkey.

The orange-coloured activation bar next to the "cruise control" (S) softkey lights up. The cruise control function is ready.

The greyed-out "cruise control" (5) symbol (1) appears on the display.

Taking the cruise control function off standby

Pressing the "cruise control " \mathfrak{F} softkey again takes the function off standby.

A single beep sounds. The "cruise control" \(\) symbol (1) goes out.

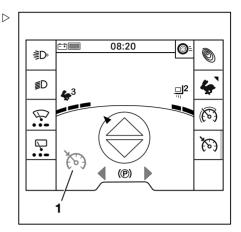
Activating cruise control

A WARNING

Risk of accident from failing to adjust speed!

Driving at excessive speeds can cause accidents, e.g. the truck could tip over when cornering.

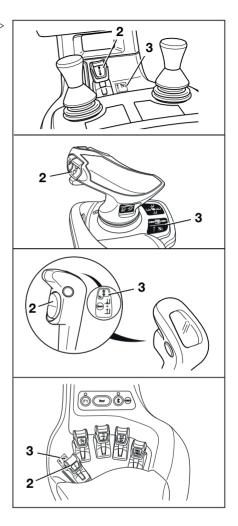
- Adjust speed along the entire distance being travelled
- Pay particular attention to cornering speed
- Observe safety regulations when driving
- Observe the special behaviour of the cruise control function and the dangers associated with it
- Accelerate the truck to the required speed (at least 6.0 km/h)



 Actuate the drive direction switch (2) for for- ▷ wards travel.



In the dual-pedal version (variant), the drive direction switch (2) is used exclusively to activate and deactivate the cruise control function (variant).





The cruise control function is active. The current speed is saved.

Two beeps signal that the cruise control function is active. The \(\) symbol (4) appears in black in the display.

- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The truck continues to drive at the selected speed until the cruise control function is deactivated.

 To save a different speed, deactivate the cruise control function and activate the function at the newly selected speed.

Deactivating cruise control

Deactivating the cruise control function means that the speed is again controlled by the accelerator pedal. The cruise control function remains on standby. The function can be activated at any time when the accelerator pedal is depressed by pressing the drive direction switch for forwards travel again.

When the cruise control function is deactivated, the symbol (3) (1) is greyed out.

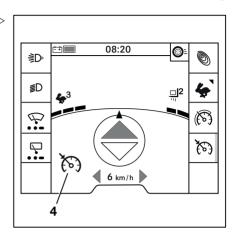


NOTE

The easiest way to deactivate the cruise control function is to touch the accelerator pedal.

The following actions deactivate the cruise control function:

- · Actuating the foot brake
- · Actuating the parking brake
- Actuating the accelerator pedal Depressing the accelerator pedal beyond the set speed accelerates the truck.
- · Changing the travel direction
- Press the drive direction switch for forwards travel again without actuating the accelerator pedal
- Press the "cruise control" softkey
 Actuating the "cruise control" softkey
 switches off the cruise control function.





Other conditions that will cause the truck control unit to deactivate the cruise control function are:

- · Vacating the driver's seat
- Truck speed less than 2.5 km/h.
- · Speed limit set to less than 4.5 km/h.
- The truck control unit detects abnormalities, e.g. battery door open, battery carrier not retracted.

If the accelerator pedal is actuated in these circumstances, the truck is initially braked via the drive unit. The following message appear on the display:

Release the accelerator pedal

The truck will continue to drive only when the accelerator pedal is released and then actuated again.

If these conditions have changed again, the speed that was initially saved is set again.



NOTE

If the truck is configured with automatic functions to reduce the driving speed and the driving speed is reduced to 6 km/h or less, the cruise control function is automatically deactivated.



Parking

Parking

Parking the truck securely and switching it off



A DANGER

There is a risk of fatal injury from being run over if the truck rolls away.

- Do not park the truck on a gradient.
- In emergencies, secure the truck using wedges on the side facing downhill.
- Only leave the truck when the parking brake has been applied.

A DANGER

There is a risk to life caused by a falling load or if truck components are being lowered.

- Lower the load fully before leaving the truck.

A CAUTION

Batteries may freeze!

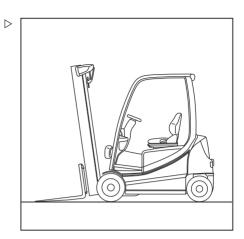
If the truck is parked in an ambient temperature of below -10°C for an extended period, the batteries will cool down. For lead-acid batteries, the electrolyte can freeze and damage the batteries. The truck is then not ready for operation.

- At ambient temperatures of below -10°C, only park the truck for short periods of time.
- Drive the truck out of the potentially explosive area to a space assigned by the safety officer.
- Actuate the parking brake.

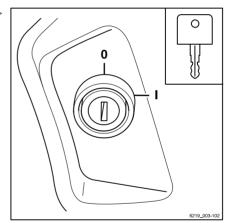


Parking

- Lower the fork carriage to the ground.
- Tilt the lift mast forwards until the tips of the fork arms rest on the ground.
- If attachments (variant) are fitted, retract the working cylinders; see the chapter entitled "General instructions for controlling attachments".



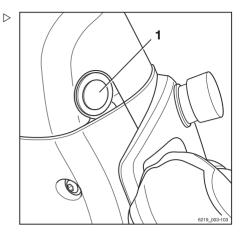
Turn the switch key to position "0" and remove the key.





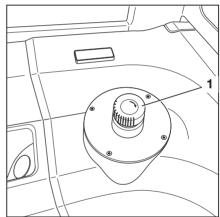
 In the "push button ignition" variant, press the button. (1)

Depending on the truck version:



- Push the battery isolating switch (1).

OR





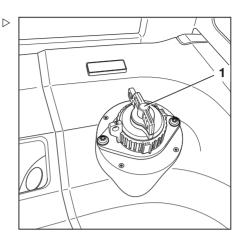
Parking

- Turn the battery isolation switch (1) anticlockwise up to the stop and into the "OFF" position.



i NOTE

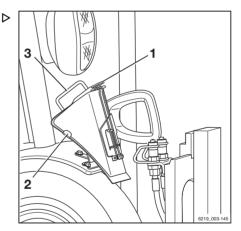
Switch keys, FleetManager cards (variant), FleetManager transponder chips (variant) and the PIN code for access authorisation (variant) must not be handed over to other persons unless explicit instructions to this effect have been given by the responsible fleet manager.



Wheel chock (variant)

The wheel chock (variant) is used to prevent the truck from rolling away on a slope. It is located on the right-hand mudguard.

- Pull the latch forward (1) and hold it in place.
- Grip the wheel chock by its handle (3). Remove the wheel chock from the support mounting via the guide (2).
- Push the wheel chock under a front axle wheel on the side facing the descending gradient.
- After use, reinsert the wheel chock in the support mounting.
- Make sure that it is correctly seated in the guide (2) and that the latch (1) is holding the wheel chock in place.





Lifting

Lifting system variants

The movement of the fork carriage and the lift mast heavily depends on the following equipment:

- The lift mast with which the truck is equipped, see ⇒ Chapter "Lift mast versions", Page 229
- The operating device with which the hydraulic functions are controlled, see
 ⇒ Chapter "Operating devices for the lifting system", Page 231

Regardless of the equipment variants of the truck, the basic specifications and procedures must be complied with, see \Rightarrow Chapter "Safety regulations when handing loads", Page 257.

Lift mast versions

A DANGER

Risk of accident if the lift mast or the load collides with low ceilings or entrances.

- Note that the inner lift mast or load may be higher than the fork carriage.
- Observe the heights of ceilings and entrances.

One of the following lift masts may be attached to the truck:

Telescopic lift mast

When lifting, the lift mast rises above the outer lift cylinders. The lift mast takes the fork carriage with it via the chains. In this scenario, the fork carriage rises at twice the speed of the inner lift mast. The top edge (1) of the inner lift mast can therefore be higher than the fork carriage.





 \triangleright

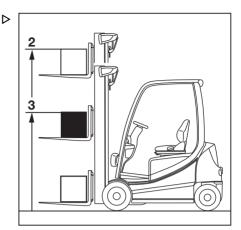
NiHo lift mast (variant)

During lifting, the inner lift cylinder moves up to free lift (3) and then the outer lift cylinders raise the inner lift mast up to the maximum height (2).



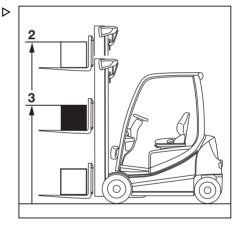
NOTE

When lifting above the free lift, the fork carriage always remains at the upper edge of the extending lift mast.



Triple mast (variant)

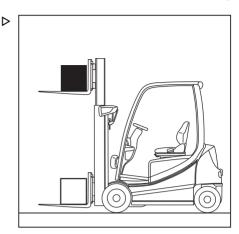
During lifting, the inner lift cylinder moves up to free lift (3) and then the outer lift cylinders raise the inner lift mast up to the maximum height (2).





Mono lift mast "Easy-View"

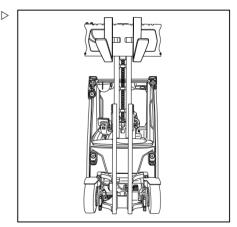
When lifting, the inner lift mast rises above the outer lift cylinders. The lift mast takes the fork carriage with it via a chain. In this scenario, the fork carriage rises at twice the speed of the inner lift mast.



This lift mast has a low, narrow design to make it easier to handle pallets. The driver has an unobstructed view past the lift mast to the left and right, and can also see over the lift mast.

Data

Height: lift mast re- tracted (h ₁)	1650 mm
Height: lift (h ₃)	2137 mm
Rated capacity: load (Q)	2000 kg



Operating devices for the lifting system

The method of operating the lifting system depends on the operating devices included in the truck's equipment.

Possible equipment variants include:

- Multi-lever
- · Double mini-lever
- · Triple mini-lever
- · Quadruple mini-lever



- · Fingertip
- · Joystick 4Plus

For clarity, the movements of the lifting system \triangleright are referred to by the letters (A, B, C, D) in this subchapter.

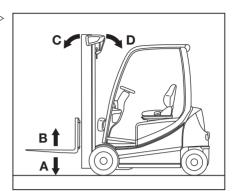
- A Lower the fork carriage
- B Lift the fork carriage
- C Tilting the lift mast forwards
- D Tilting the lift mast backwards
- See the relevant sections in this subchapter.

WARNING

Risk of injury due to delayed response from the truck!

If the lifting movements are configured to use low dynamics, the lifting system responds after a delay when the operating device is released, even in an emergency. The fork carriage does not stop immediately upon release. It only stops after approximately one second. This behaviour may also occur when specific settings are configured for the Dynamic Load Control 1 & 2 assistance systems.

- Work with particular attention and care.



Controlling the lifting system using multi-lever operation

A DANGER

Reaching into or climbing between moving parts of the truck (e.g. lift mast, sideshifts, working equipment, load carrying devices etc.) can lead to serious injury or death and is therefore prohibited.

- Observe the safety regulations for handling loads.
- Operate the lifting system from the driver's seat only.

WARNING

Risk of accident as a result of an operating error!

These operating instructions describe how to operate the lifting system in the factory configuration.

If the authorised service centre has configured a different configuration, the newly applied pictograms must be observed to ensure safe operation. The operating company must make all drivers aware of the fact that a different configuration has been configured

- Observe the pictograms on the operating levers.
- Before use, check that the hydraulic functions are working correctly.

The lifting and lowering movements of the lift mast are controlled using the "lift-lower" operating lever (1). The adhesive label with the corresponding pictogram (4) is located on the operating lever.

The tilting movement of the lift mast is controlled using the "tilting" operating lever (2). The adhesive label with the corresponding pictogram (3) is located on the operating lever.

The pictograms are arranged according to the directions of movement of the operating lever (1) or (2).

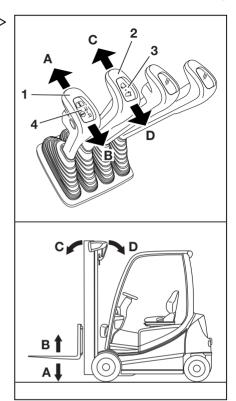
Lifting/lowering the fork carriage

To lift the fork carriage:

Move the "lifting/lowering" operating lever (1) in the direction of the arrow (B).

To lower the fork carriage:

Move the "lifting/lowering" operating lever (1) in the direction of the arrow (A).





Tilting the lift mast

To tilt the lift mast forwards:

 Move the "tilting" operating lever (2) in the direction of the arrow (C).

To tilt the lift mast backwards:

 Move the "tilting" operating lever (2) in the direction of the arrow (D).

Movements of the lifting system and meanings of the pictograms

- B 1 Lifting



Controlling the lifting system using a ▷ double mini-lever

A DANGER

Reaching into or climbing between moving parts of the truck (e.g. lift mast, sideshifts, working equipment, load carrying devices etc.) can lead to serious injury or death and is therefore prohibited.

- Observe the safety regulations for handling loads.
- Operate the lifting system from the driver's seat only.

WARNING

Risk of accident as a result of an operating error!

These operating instructions describe how to operate the lifting system in the factory configuration.

If the authorised service centre has configured a different configuration, the newly applied pictograms must be observed to ensure safe operation. The operating company must make all drivers aware of the fact that a different configuration has been config-

- Observe the pictograms on the operating levers.
- Before use, check that the hydraulic functions are working correctly.

The lifting, lowering and tilting movements of the lift mast are controlled using the "lift mast" 360° lever (3). The adhesive label bearing the pictograms for the hydraulic functions (1) or (2) is affixed at the designated point (4).

The pictograms are arranged according to the direction of movement of the "lift mast" 360° lever (3).



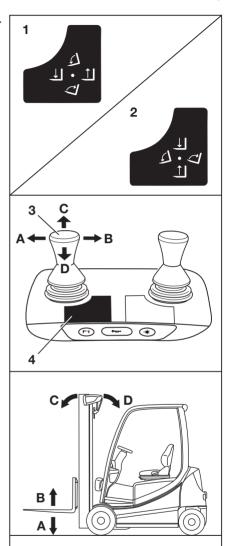
The truck is configured at the factory in accordance with the adhesive label (1). The following steps for moving the fork carriage and lift mast are based on this configuration.

Lifting/lowering the fork carriage

To lift the fork carriage:

- Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (3) in the direction of the arrow (B).

To lower the fork carriage:





Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (3) in the direction of the arrow (A).

Tilting the lift mast

To tilt the lift mast forwards:

Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (4) in the direction of the arrow (C).

To tilt the lift mast backwards:

Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (4) in the direction of the arrow (D).

Movements of the lifting system and meanings of the pictograms

- B <u>↑</u> Lifting



Controlling the lifting system using a ▷ triple mini-lever

A DANGER

Reaching into or climbing between moving parts of the truck (e.g. lift mast, sideshifts, working equipment, load carrying devices etc.) can lead to serious injury or death and is therefore prohibited.

- Observe the safety regulations for handling loads.
- Operate the lifting system from the driver's seat only.

WARNING

Risk of accident as a result of an operating error!

These operating instructions describe how to operate the lifting system in the factory configuration.

If the authorised service centre has configured a different configuration, the newly applied pictograms must be observed to ensure safe operation. The operating company must make all drivers aware of the fact that a different configuration has been config-

- Observe the pictograms on the operating levers.
- Before use, check that the hydraulic functions are working correctly.

The lifting, lowering and tilting movements of the lift mast are controlled using the "lift mast" 360° lever (3). The adhesive label bearing the pictograms for the hydraulic functions (1) or (2) is affixed at the designated point (4).

The pictograms are arranged according to the direction of movement of the "lift mast" 360° lever (3).



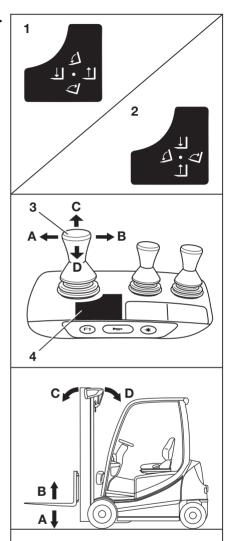
The truck is configured at the factory in accordance with the adhesive label (1). The following steps for moving the fork carriage and lift mast are based on this configuration.

Lifting/lowering the fork carriage

To lift the fork carriage:

- Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (3) in the direction of the arrow (B).

To lower the fork carriage:





Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (3) in the direction of the arrow (A).

Tilting the lift mast

To tilt the lift mast forwards:

Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (4) in the direction of the arrow (C).

To tilt the lift mast backwards:

Move the "lift mast" 360° lever (4) in the direction of the arrow (D).

Movements of the lifting system and meanings of the pictograms

- B 1 Lifting

Controlling the lifting system using a ⊳ quadruple mini-lever

A DANGER

Reaching into or climbing between moving parts of the truck (e.g. lift mast, sideshifts, working equipment, load carrying devices etc.) can lead to serious injury or death and is therefore prohibited.

- Observe the safety regulations for handling loads.
- Operate the lifting system from the driver's seat only.

A WARNING

Risk of accident as a result of an operating error!

These operating instructions describe how to operate the lifting system in the factory configuration.

If the authorised service centre has configured a different configuration, the newly applied pictograms must be observed to ensure safe operation. The operating company must make all drivers aware of the fact that a different configuration has been configured

- Observe the pictograms on the operating levers.
- Before use, check that the hydraulic functions are working correctly.

The lifting and lowering movements of the lift mast are controlled using the "lift-lower" operating lever (3). The adhesive label bearing the corresponding pictograms (1) is affixed at the designated point (6).

The tilting movement of the lift mast is controlled using the "tilting" operating lever (4). The adhesive label bearing the corresponding pictograms (2) is affixed at the designated point (5).

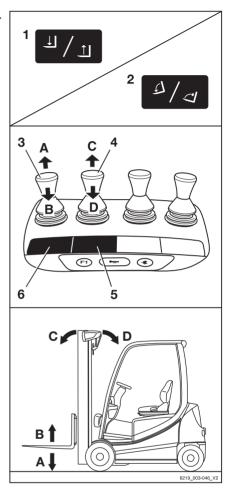
The pictograms are arranged according to the directions of movement of the operating lever (3) or (4).

Lifting/lowering the fork carriage

To lift the fork carriage:

Move the "lifting/lowering" operating lever (3) in the direction of the arrow (B).

To lower the fork carriage:





Move the "lifting/lowering" operating lever (3) in the direction of the arrow (A).

Tilting the lift mast

To tilt the lift mast forwards:

 Move the "lift mast" operating lever (4) in the direction of the arrow (C).

To tilt the lift mast backwards:

 Move the "lift mast" operating lever (4) in the direction of the arrow (D).

Movements of the lifting system and meanings of the pictograms

- B 1 Lifting



Controlling the lifting system using the Fingertip

A DANGER

Reaching into or climbing between moving parts of the truck (e.g. lift mast, sideshifts, working equipment, load carrying devices etc.) can lead to serious injury or death and is therefore prohibited.

- Observe the safety regulations for handling loads.
- Operate the lifting system from the driver's seat only.

WARNING

Risk of accident as a result of an operating error!

These operating instructions describe how to operate the lifting system in the factory configuration.

If the authorised service centre has configured a different configuration, the newly applied pictograms must be observed to ensure safe operation. The operating company must make all drivers aware of the fact that a different configuration has been configured

- Observe the pictograms on the operating levers.
- Before use, check that the hydraulic functions are working correctly.

The lifting and lowering movements of the lift mast are controlled using the "lift-lower" operating lever (4). The adhesive label with the corresponding pictogram (3) is located on the operating lever.

The tilting movement of the lift mast is controlled using the "tilting" operating lever (1). The adhesive label with the corresponding pictogram (2) is located on the operating lever.

The pictograms are arranged according to the directions of movement of the operating lever (4) or (1).

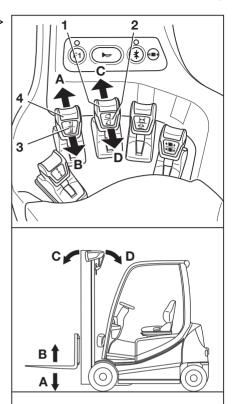
Lifting/lowering the fork carriage

To lift the fork carriage:

Move the "lifting/lowering" operating lever (4) in the direction of the arrow (B).

To lower the fork carriage:

Move the "lifting/lowering" operating lever (4) in the direction of the arrow (A).





Tilting the lift mast

To tilt the lift mast forwards:

 Move the "tilting" operating lever (1) in the direction of the arrow (C).

To tilt the lift mast backwards:

 Move the "tilting" operating lever (1) in the direction of the arrow (D).

Movements of the lifting system and meanings of the pictograms

B 1 Lifting

Controlling the lifting system using the Joystick 4Plus

A DANGER

Reaching into or climbing between moving parts of the truck (e.g. lift mast, sideshifts, working equipment, load carrying devices etc.) can lead to serious injury or death and is therefore prohibited.

- Observe the safety regulations for handling loads.
- Operate the lifting system from the driver's seat only.

A WARNING

Risk of accident as a result of an operating error!

These operating instructions describe how to operate the lifting system in the factory configuration.

If the authorised service centre has configured a different configuration, the newly applied pictograms must be observed to ensure safe operation. The operating company must make all drivers aware of the fact that a different configuration has been configured.

- Observe the pictograms on the operating levers.
- Before use, check that the hydraulic functions are working correctly.

The lifting, lowering and tilting movements of the lift mast are controlled using the Joystick 4Plus (1). The adhesive labels bearing



the pictograms for the hydraulic functions are located in positions (2) and (4).

The pictograms are arranged according to the directions of movement of the Joystick 4Plus (1) and the horizontal rocker button (3).

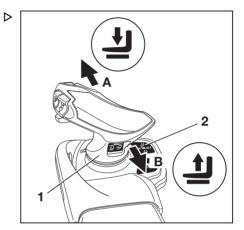
Lifting/lowering the fork carriage

To lift the fork carriage:

- Pull the Joystick 4Plus (1) backwards (B).

To lower the fork carriage:

- Push the Joystick 4Plus (1) forwards (A).



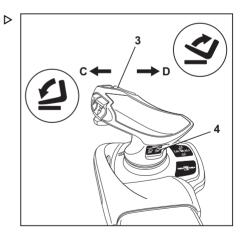
Tilting the lift mast

To tilt the lift mast forwards:

 Tilt the horizontal rocker button (3) to the left (C).

To tilt the lift mast backwards:

 Tilt the horizontal rocker button (3) to the right (D).





Fork carriage sideshift

To move the fork carriage to the left:

- Push the Joystick 4Plus (1) to the left (E).

To move the fork carriage to the right:

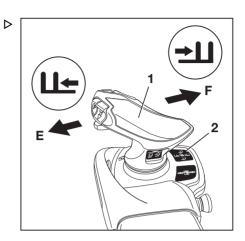
- Push the Joystick 4Plus (1) to the right (F).

Movements of the lifting system and meanings of the pictograms

B 1 Lifting

E ∐ Side shift left

F → I I Side shift right



Dynamics of the hydraulic movements

A WARNING

Risk of injury due to delayed response from the truck!

If the lifting movements are configured to use low dynamics, the lifting system responds after a delay when the operating device is released, even in an emergency. The fork carriage does not stop immediately upon release. It only stops after approximately one second. This behaviour may also occur when specific settings are configured for the Dynamic Load Control 1 & 2 assistance systems.

- Work with particular attention and care.

The authorised service centre can reduce the dynamics of the hydraulic movements to adapt the hydraulic movements to the application requirements. The hydraulic system movement will then respond more slowly to the actuation of the operating device.

Maximum dynamics are suitable for applications that require the load pick up system to respond quickly and directly. Minimum dynamics are suitable for applications that involve, for example, the movement of fragile goods during which impacts must be avoided.



Maximum dynamics (standard setting)

- The hydraulic movement immediately follows the actuation of the operating device.
- When the operating device is released, the hydraulic movement decelerates very quickly.

The fork carriage quickly comes to a standstill.

Minimum dynamics

- The hydraulic movement accelerates very slowly when actuating the operating device.
- The hydraulic movement follows the actuation of the operating device very slowly.
- When the operating device is released, the hydraulic movement only decelerates slowly.

The fork carriage therefore continues to run for some time before the movement comes to a standstill.

Selecting load programs 1 to 3

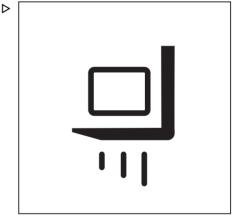
The truck has three load programs for the different lifting behaviours of the fork carriage and the lift mast. The higher the number of the load program selected, the greater the load dynamics.

Differences between the load programs

- □¹ Load program 1: 66% lifting speed
- □ Load program 2: 85% lifting speed

The lifting behaviour of the truck is selected via the display-operating unit under the "Load" ■ menu item.

Press the ^{□1}... ^{□3} softkey to select the desired load program.



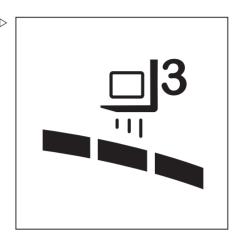


 If the load programs are saved as a favourite on a softkey, press the "Load dynamics" - softkey until the number of the desired load program is shown on the display.

The number of dynamic bar segments shows the load dynamics of the selected load program.



During the warm-up phase, the load dynamics are limited to \$\mathbb{\math}\m{\mathbb{\mathbb{\mathbb{\mathbb{\mathbb{\mathbb{\mathbb{\math



Fork wear protection (variant)

The "fork wear protection" variant ensures that the fork arms do not touch the ground. The fork arms are protected against wear and the building floor is protected against damage.

The lift cylinders have in-built fixed stops to prevent the fork arms from hitting the ground. The lower stop makes inserting the forks into a pallet more comfortable.

The driver cannot adjust the fork wear protection manually. However, the fork wear protection must be continually adjusted as the wear on the front tyres increases.

 Contact the authorised service centre on this matter.



Changing the fork arms



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

No work must be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas!

- Do not perform any work on trucks in potentially explosive areas.
- Change fork arms only outside of potentially explosive areas.



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

In potentially explosive areas, only fork arms that comply with explosion-protection regulations may be used.

These fork arms are specially coated to prevent sparks forming when coming into contact with the load or floor. The coating does not extend to the area inside the fork bends so that it is possible to check for cracks.

- Fit only fork arms that correspond to explosion protection regulations.
- Check that the cladding is complete.
- Do not use fork arms with worn cladding.

A DANGER

There is a risk of fatal injury from being run over if the truck rolls away.

- Do not park the truck on gradients.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Change the fork extension in a cordoned-off, safe location on a level surface.



WARNING

If the fork arms fall on your legs, feet or knees during replacement, there is a risk of injury due to their weight. The space to the left and right of the fork is a danger area.

- Wear protective gloves and safety shoes when changing the fork arms.
- Ensure that no one stands in the danger area!
- Do not pull on the fork arms.
- The fork arms must always be carried by two people; if necessary, use a hoist.



NOTE

It is advisable to use a transport pallet to support the fork arms when they are being installed or removed. The pallet size depends on the size of fork arms in use. It should be large enough that the fork arms do not protrude after being placed on the pallet.

- This means the fork arms can be safely placed down and transported.
- Both fork arms can be pushed over onto one side.



Removing

- Select the pallet according to the size of the fork arms
- Position the pallet to the left or right of the fork carriage.
- Raise the fork carriage until the lower edges of the fork arms are approx. 3 cm higher than the height of the pallet.
- Actuate the parking brake and make sure it is applied securely.
- Turn the switch key to the left and pull it out.
- Undo the locking screw (2) on the right or left.
- Pull the locking lever (1) upwards and push the fork arms outwards onto the pallet.

Installing

- Position the fork arms on a pallet to the left or right of the fork carriage.
- Push the fork arms onto the fork carriage from the outside towards the centre.
- Pull the locking lever (1) upwards and push the fork arms into the required position. Ensure that the locking lever snaps into place.
- Fit and tighten the locking screw (2).

A DANGER

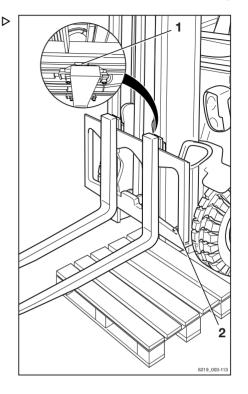
There is a risk of fatal injury from a falling load or fork!

It is not permitted to drive or to transport loads without the locking screw in place.

 Tighten the locking screw (2) each time a fork is changed.



If the truck is equipped with the "load measurement" comfort feature (variant), a "zero adjustment of the load measurement" must always be performed after the fork arms have been changed. Otherwise, correct load measurement cannot be guaranteed.





Fork extension (variant)



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

No work must be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas!

- Do not perform any work on trucks in potentially explosive areas.
- Change fork arms only outside of potentially explosive areas.



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

In potentially explosive areas, only fork arms that comply with explosion-protection regulations may be used.

These fork arms are specially coated to prevent sparks forming when coming into contact with the load or floor. The coating does not extend to the area inside the fork bends so that it is possible to check for cracks.

- Fit only fork arms that correspond to explosion protection regulations.
- Check that the cladding is complete.
- Do not use fork arms with worn cladding.

A DANGER

There is a risk of fatal injury from being run over if the truck rolls away.

- Do not park the truck on gradients.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Change the fork extension in a cordoned-off, safe location on a level surface.

WARNING

There is a risk of crushing!

The weight of the fork extension can cause crushing and cuts can be caused by sharp edges or burrs.

- Wear protective gloves and safety shoes.



WARNING

There is a risk of tipping!

The weight and dimensions of the fork extension affect the stability of the truck. The permissible weights stated on the capacity rating plate must be reduced in proportion to the actual load distance.

If the truck is equipped with a fork extension ex works, then the capacity rating plate will already have been adjusted accordingly.

Observe the load capacity; refer to the chapter entitled "Before picking up a load".



If the truck is equipped with the "load measurement" comfort feature (variant), a "zero adjustment of the load measurement" must always be performed after the fork arms have been changed. Otherwise, correct load measurement cannot be guaranteed.

Attaching

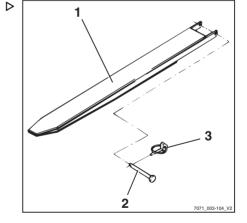
A DANGER

Risk of fatal injury from falling load!

At least 60% of the length of the fork extension must lie on the fork arm. No more than 40% of the length of the fork extension may overhang the end of the fork arms. In addition, the fork extension must be secured against slipping from the fork arm.

If the fork extension (1) is not secured with a securing bolt (2) and linch pin (3), the load may fall, along with the fork extension.

- Push the fork extension all the way to the back of the fork.
- Make sure that 60% of the length of the fork extension is on the fork arm.
- Always secure the fork extension with the securing bolt.
- Always secure the securing bolt with the linch pin.
- Remove the linch pin (3) from the securing bolt (2).
- Remove the securing bolt from the fork extension (1).
- Push the fork extension onto the fork arms until the fork extension is flush with the fork back.





- Insert the securing bolt located behind the fork back fully into the fork extension.
- Insert the linch pin into the securing bolt and secure.

Detaching

- Remove the linch pin (3) from the securing bolt (2).
- Remove the securing bolt from the fork extension (1).
- Pull the fork extension off the fork arms.
- Insert the securing bolt fully into the fork extension.
- Insert the linch pin into the securing bolt and secure

Operation with reversible fork arms ∨ (variant)



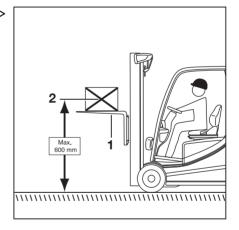
A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

No work must be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas!

- Do not perform any work on trucks in potentially explosive areas.
- Change fork arms only outside of potentially explosive areas.







▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Only reversible fork arms that comply with explosion-protection regulations may be used in potentially explosive areas.

These fork arms are specially coated to prevent sparks forming when coming into contact with the load or floor.

- Fit only fork arms that correspond to explosion protection regulations.
- Check that the cladding is complete.
- Do not use fork arms with worn cladding.

A DANGER

Risk of fatal injury from falling load!

Normal fork arms are not structurally designed for reverse operation. Failure to observe this instruction can lead to material failure and ultimately to the load falling.

 Only work in reverse operation using reversible fork arms (1).

A WARNING

Risk of accident from slipping load!

Loads may slip on the reversible fork arms if there is no load support. A fork extension (variant) cannot be secured against slipping.

Do not use a fork extension (variant).

A WARNING

Risk of accident from the truck tipping over.

When driving, the centre of gravity of the load (2) must not be more than 600 mm above the ground. The truck may tip forwards when driving or braking.

 Only drive with a load centre of gravity up to a max. of 600 mm above the ground



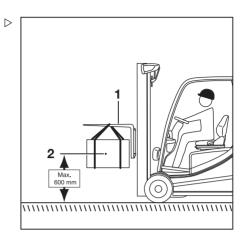
NOTE

If the truck is equipped with the "load measurement" comfort feature (variant), a "zero adjustment of the load measurement" must always be performed after the fork arms have been changed. Otherwise, correct load measurement cannot be guaranteed.



Reversible fork arms (1) can be used to reach an additional lift height. The reversible fork arms are attached to the fork carriage in the same manner as standard fork arms. Loads may be lifted on and beneath the reversible fork arms. The mast is lifted and tilted in the same manner.

- Only work in reverse operation using reversible fork arms.
- Do not use a fork extension (variant).
- If the "load measurement" comfort feature (variant) is available, perform a "zero adjustment of the load measurement".
- To drive, raise the load centre of gravity (2) to a max. of 600 mm above the ground.
- Observe the information in the section entitled "Transporting suspended loads".



Malfunctions during lifting mode Incorrect extension sequence

A DANGER

Risk of accidents!

In the case of Hi-Lo lift masts (variant) and triplex lift masts (variant), an incorrect extension sequence may occur, i.e. the inner lift mast may extend before the free lift is complete. As a result, the overall height is exceeded and damage may occur in passageways or from low ceilings.

An incorrect extension sequence may, for instance, result from:

- · The hydraulic oil temperature being too low.
- Blocking of the fork carriage in the inner lift mast
- · Blocking of the free lift cylinder.
- Blocking of the chain roller on the free lift cylinder.
- If the hydraulic oil temperature is too low, slowly actuate the lift mast functions several times in order to raise the oil temperature.

In the event that the fork carriage is blocked in the inner lift mast, or the free lift cylinder or chain roller are blocked, the cause of the blockage must be eliminated before resuming work.



- Notify your service centre

Load chains not under tension

A DANGER

Danger caused by a falling load!

 Make sure that the chain(s) does (do) not become slack when lowering the load.

Slack chains can, for instance, result from:

- Resting the fork carriage or the load on the racking.
- Fork carriage rollers blocking in the lift mast due to contamination.
- If the fork carriage or the load comes to an unexpected stop, lift the fork carriage until the chains are under tension again and lower the load at another suitable location.
- If the fork carriage rollers in the lift mast become blocked due to contamination, lift the fork carriage until the chains are under tension again. Remove the contamination before resuming work.

WARNING

Risk of injury!

 Observe the safety regulations for working on the lift mast, see the chapter entitled "Working at the front of the truck".

Hydraulic blocking function

The hydraulic blocking function ensures that all the functions of the working hydraulics are disabled whenever the seat switch in the driver's seat is unloaded.

If the driver's seat is vacated, the blocking function prevents hydraulic operation for the following functions:

- · Lift the load
- · Lower the load
- · Tilt the lift mast
- · Auxiliary hydraulic functions
- Steering





Only the emergency steering function remains available.



Safety regulations when handing loads

The safety regulations for handling loads are shown in the following sections.

A DANGER

There is a risk to life caused by falling loads or if parts of the truck are being lowered.

- Never walk or stand underneath suspended loads or raised fork arms.
- Never exceed the maximum load indicated on the capacity rating plate. Otherwise stability cannot be guaranteed!

A DANGER

Risk of accident from falling or crushing!

- Do not step onto the forks.
- Do not lift people.
- Never grab or climb on moving parts of the truck.

A DANGER

Risk of accident from a falling load!

- When transporting small items, attach a load safety guard (variant) to prevent the load from falling on the driver.
- Use a closed roof covering (variant) in addition.





Before picking up a load

Load capacity

The load capacity indicated for the truck on the capacity rating plate must not be exceeded. The load capacity is influenced by the load centre of gravity and the lift height as well as by the tyres, if applicable.

- The position of the capacity rating plate can be taken from the "labelling points".

WARNING

The figures show examples.

Only the capacity rating plates on the truck are valid!

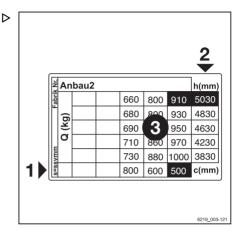
The attachment of additional weights to increase the load capacity is prohibited.

A DANGER

Risk of fatal injury from the truck losing stability!

Never exceed the maximum loads shown! These values apply to compact and homogeneous loads. If these values are exceeded, the stability and rigidity of the fork arms and lift mast cannot be guaranteed.

Improper or incorrect operation or the placement of persons to increase load capacity is prohibited.



Capacity rating plate

- Load distance from fork back 2
 - Permissible lift height
- 3 Weight of load to be lifted



Example

Weight of load to be lifted: 880 kg (3)

Load distance from fork back: 500 mm (1)

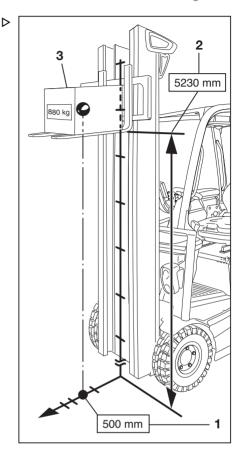
Permitted lift height: 5230 mm (2)

WARNING

Risk of accident from the truck losing stability!

The permissible loading of the attachments (variant) and the reduced load capacity of the combination of truck and attachment must not be exceeded.

Observe the special capacity rating plate information shown on the truck and the attachment.



Picking up loads

To make sure that the load is securely supported, it must be ensured that the fork arms are sufficiently far apart and are positioned as far as possible under the load.

If possible, the load should rest on the back of the fork.

The load must not protrude too far over the fork tips, nor should the fork tips protrude too far out from the load.

Loads are to be picked up and transported as close to the middle as possible.



A DANGER

Risk of accident from a falling load!

When transporting small items, attach a load safety guard (variant) to prevent the load from falling on the driver.

A closed roof covering (variant) should also be used.

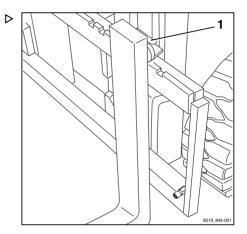
Removable roof panels may not be removed.

Adjusting the fork

- Lift the locking lever (1) and move the fork arms to the desired position.
- Allow the locking lever to snap back into place.

The load centre of gravity must be midway between the fork arms.

Only actuate the fork prong positioner (variant) when the fork is not carrying a load.



Danger area

The danger area is the area in which people are at risk due to the movements of the truck, its working equipment, its load-carrying equipment (e.g. attachments) or the load. Also included are the areas where loads could fall or working equipment could fall or be lowered.



A DANGER

Risk of injury!

- Do not step on the fork.



A DANGER

Risk of injury!

Do not step under the raised forks.



A DANGER

People may be injured in the danger area of the truck!

The danger area of the truck must be completely clear of all personnel, except the driver in his normal operating position. If persons fail to leave the danger area despite warnings:

- Cease work with the truck immediately.
- Secure the truck against use by unauthorised parties



▲ DANGER

Danger of death from falling loads!

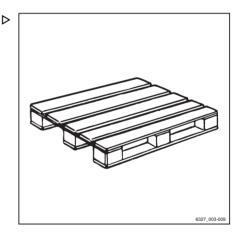
Never walk or stand underneath suspended loads.

Transporting pallets

As a rule, loads (e.g. pallets) must be transported individually. Transporting multiple loads at the same time is only permitted:

- · when instructed by the supervisor and
- when the technical requirements have been met.

The driver must ensure proper condition of the load. Only safely and carefully positioned loads may be transported.





Transporting suspended loads

Before transporting suspended loads, consult the national regulatory authorities (in Germany, the employer's liability insurance associations).

National regulations may place restrictions on these operations. Contact the relevant authorities.

A DANGER

Suspended loads that begin to swing can result in the following risks:

- Impaired braking characteristics and steering movement
- Tipping over the load wheels or drive wheels
- Tipping the truck at right angles to the drive direction
- · Risk of crushing of guide persons
- · Reduced visibility

A DANGER

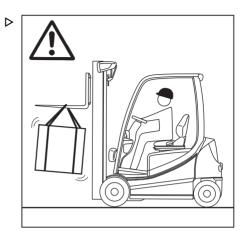
Loss of stability.

Slipping or swinging suspended loads can lead to a loss of stability and cause the truck to tip over.

When transporting suspended loads, observe the following instructions

Instructions for transporting suspended loads:

- Swinging loads must be prevented by using the proper driving speed and driving style (careful steering, braking)
- Hanging loads must be hooked on to the truck in such a way that the harness cannot shift or release unintentionally and cannot be damaged
- When transporting suspended loads, suitable devices (e.g. guy wires or supporting poles) must be available so that accompanying persons can guide suspended loads and prevent the loads from swinging
- Take particular care to ensure that there is no one in the drive direction in the driving lane
- If, despite this, the load begins to swing, ensure that no person is placed at risk





DANGER

Risk of accident!

When transporting suspended loads, never perform or end driving and load movements abruptly.

Never drive on slopes with a suspended load.

Transporting containers holding fluids as hanging loads is not permitted.

Transporting swinging loads



A DANGER

Risk of explosion from spark discharge!

Suspended loads can swing uncontrollably.

The load can strike against components or scrape along the ground.

This can cause sparks to be discharged, which in potentially explosive areas may lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

Transportation of swinging loads is not permitted.

- Do **not** transport swinging loads.

Calibrating the automatic mast vertical positioning

The automatic mast vertical positioning is calibrated using a wizard on the display-operating unit.



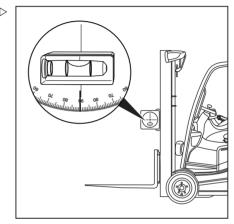
The wizard requires access authorisation for the fleet manager. Access to the settings menu is only available if the truck is at a standstill and the parking brake is applied. If the parking brake is released prematurely, the settings menu will close.

- Set the load down, if necessary.
- Drive the truck into an area that is to be used for placing loads into stock and removing loads from stock.

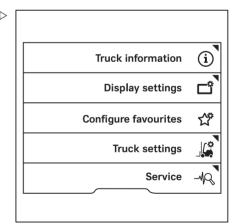


Once the "automatic mast vertical positioning" assistance system has been calibrated, a pallet can be stored horizontally in a rack when the truck is standing on a HGV ramp, for example.

- Lift the fork carriage slightly.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Attach a tilt angle template with a spirit level > to the outer lift mast.
- Bring the lift mast to the vertical position according to the spirit level.
- Press the button.
- Press the "Settings" Softkey &.
- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".

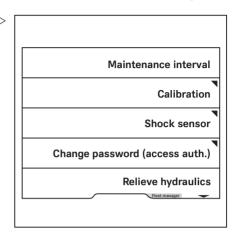


- Press the Service → softkey.





Press the scroll keys △ ♥ until the Cal- > ibration menu appears.



- Press the Lift mast tilting softkey. ▷

The wizard for calibrating the load measurement is started.

- Follow the instructions on the display.
- If the message Calibration failed ! appears, press the ☑ softkey.
- Repeat the process.

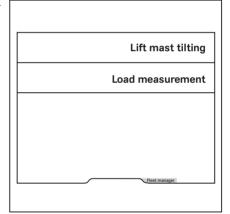
After the calibration has been completed successfully, the message Successful calibration \checkmark appears.

- Switch the truck off and on again.

The calibration is now complete.



If the message A6701 Fault: Monitoring of assistance system A appears during the calibration, perform the calibration again.



Automatic mast vertical positioning (variant)

A CAUTION

Risk of damage to property due to the lift mast colliding with racks or other objects!

 Before using the "automatic mast vertical positioning" assistance system, position the truck at a sufficient distance from racks and other objects.

The "automatic mast vertical positioning" assistance system can be used to set down the goods so that the goods are exactly vertical, e.g. paper rolls. This prevents damage when setting down the load. "Automatic mast vertical positioning" functions when tilting forwards. A further variant is available which also functions when tilting backwards. The tilt cylinders run into the end stops gently to prevent hard vibrations and impacts. Oscillating motions of the truck are minimised, thus increasing work safety. Automatic mast vertical positioning reduces wear on various components, thereby reducing repair costs.

The "automatic mast vertical positioning" assistance system consists of the following individual functions:

- Display of the "Automatic mast vertical positioning" feature
- Automatic startup of the "Automatic mast vertical position" feature

The truck can also be equipped with only the "mast tilt angle display" feature.



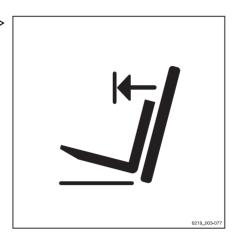
NOTE

Check the function of automatic mast vertical positioning whenever the truck is used.

- See the section entitled "Function checking of the automatic mast vertical positioning function".
- Push the "automatic mast vertical positioning" softkey

The J symbol appears in the display.

 Tilt back the lift mast until it reaches the end stop.





Tilt the lift mast forwards

The lift mast stops in the vertical position.



The lift mast also stops in the vertical position if it is tilted forwards by ≥ 3° from a backward



The automatic mast vertical positioning must be calibrated in order to ensure accuracy at all times. The "access authorisation for the fleet manager" is required for the calibration. This access is required:

- · When placing loads into stock and removing loads from stock on HGV ramps
- · In the event of tyre wear
- · If the lift mast is obviously not in the vertical position
- See the section entitled "Calibrating the automatic mast vertical positioning".

Picking up a load

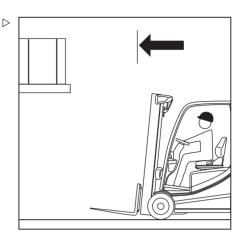
A DANGER

There is a risk to life from a falling load or from truck components being lowered.

- Never walk or stand underneath suspended loads or raised fork arms.
- Never exceed the maximum load values specified on the capacity rating plate. Otherwise, stability cannot be guaranteed.
- Only store pallets that do not exceed the specified maximum size. Damaged loading equipment and incorrectly formed loads must not be stored
- Attach or secure the load to the lifting accessory so that the load cannot move or fall.
- Store the load so that the specified aisle width is not reduced by protruding parts.



 Approach the rack carefully, brake gently and stop just in front of the rack.

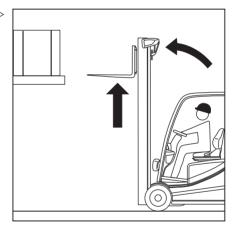


- Position the forks.
- Set the lift mast to vertical.
- Lift the fork carriage to the stacking height.

A CAUTION

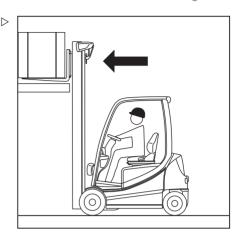
Risk of component damage!

When the fork is inserted into the rack, take care not to damage the rack or the load.





Insert the fork as far under the load as possible. Stop the truck as soon as the fork back is resting on the load. The load centre of gravity must be midway between the fork arms.



Lift the fork carriage until the load is resting entirely on the fork.

A DANGER

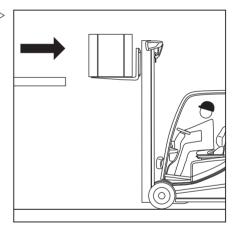
Risk of accident!

- Beware of any people in the danger area.
- Ensure that the roadway behind you is clear.

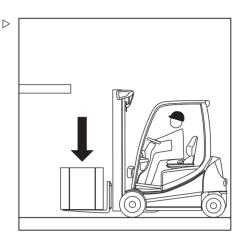
A DANGER

Due to the risk of tipping, never tilt the lift mast with a raised load!

- Lower the load before tilting the lift mast.
- Reverse carefully and slowly until the load is clear of the rack. Brake gently.

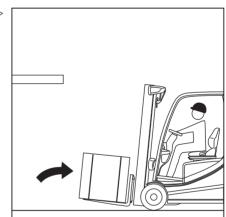


Lower the load while maintaining ground clearance.



- Tilt the lift mast backwards.

The load can be transported.



Transporting loads



Observe the information in the chapter entitled "Safety regulations when driving".

A DANGER

The higher a load is lifted, the less stable it becomes. The truck can tip over. The load can fall. There is an increased risk of accidents.

Driving with a raised load and the lift mast tilted forward is not permitted.

- Only drive with the load lowered.
- Lower the load until ground clearance is reached (not over 300 mm).
- Only drive with the lift mast tilted backwards.
- Drive slowly and carefully around corners.

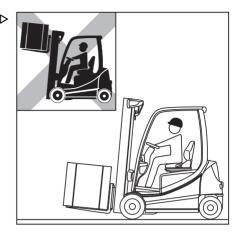


Observe the information in the chapter entitled "Steering".

- Always accelerate and brake gently.



Observe the information in the chapter entitled "Operating the service brake".



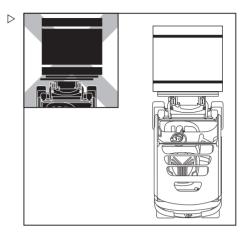




Operation

Handling loads

- Never drive with a load protruding to the side (e.g. with the sideshift)!



Shake function (variant)



The shake function is intended only for shortterm use, as it reduces the service life of the load chains due to the increased loading on them.

Description

The shake function of the hydraulics makes it easier for the driver to perform tasks such as emptying containers of bulk material. The shake function moves the fork carriage quickly up and down via the "Lifting" function.

This function may only be used for a limited load and must not be used with a full nominal load.

Maximum permissible load for the shake function:

· Maximum 30% of the nominal load. If an attachment is being used, its weight must be subtracted from this value.



The weight of an attachment can be seen on its nameplate.



Operation

To activate the shake function:

 Move the corresponding operating device for the "Lifting" function over the zero position four times in quick succession.

The fork carriage moves as normal. The shake function is active after the fourth time the operating device is moved.

 Continue to move the operating device back and forth.

The fork carriage moves up and down more quickly and more jerkily.

The intensity of the shaking is controlled via the vigour with which the operating device is moved. The more vigorously and frequently the operating device is moved, the more intense the shaking is.



NOTE

After the function has been activated, the driver has two seconds to start the shaking. If the two seconds elapse without the shake function being used, the shake function is deactivated again.

WARNING

The shake function remains active for two seconds following activation.

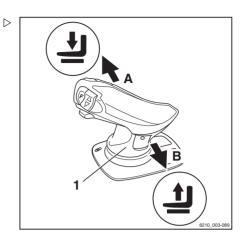
If the driver simply wants to lift or lower the load during this time, note that the fork carriage may move significantly more jerkily with the load than in normal operation. If the two seconds elapse without the shake function being used, the fork carriage can be moved normally again with the load.

The following section shows how the shake function is activated via the standard assignment for "lifting/lowering" using the different variants of the operating devices. If the "lifting/lowering" function is assigned differently on the operating device, the shake function is activated via this other assignment.



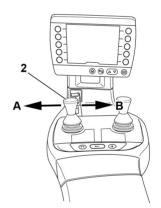
Joystick 4Plus:

 Move the Joystick 4Plus (1) back and forth between positions (A) and (B) four times.
 Then continue to move the component in the same way.



Double mini-lever:

Move the 360° lever (2) back and forth between positions (A) and (B) four times.
 Then continue to move the component in the same way.





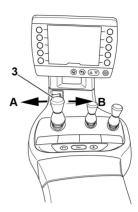
 \triangleright

 \triangleright

Handling loads

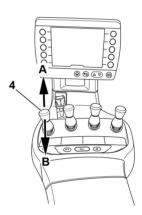
Triple mini-lever:

Move the 360° lever (3) back and forth between positions (A) and (B) four times.
 Then continue to move the component in the same way.



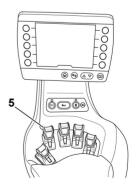
Quadruple mini-lever:

 Move the operating lever (4) back and forth between positions (A) and (B) four times.
 Then continue to move the component in the same way.



Fingertip:

 Move the operating lever (5) back and forth four times. Then continue to move the component in the same way.





Setting down a load

A DANGER

Risk of accident due to changed moment of tilt!

The load centre of gravity and the moment of tilt move due to tilting the lift mast forwards with a raised load or due to the load slipping. The truck may tip forwards.

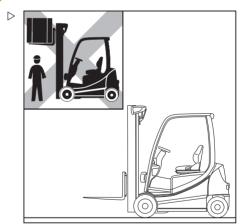
- Only tilt the lift mast forwards with a raised lifting accessory when it is directly above the stack.
- When the lift mast is tilted forwards, take particular care to ensure that the truck does not tip forwards and that the load does not slip.

WARNING

Risk of accident from falling load!

If the fork or the load remains suspended during lowering, the load may fall.

- When removing from stock, move the truck far enough back so that the load and the fork can be lowered freely.
- Drive up to the stack with the load lowered in accordance with regulations.
- Set the lift mast to vertical.
- Lift the load to the stacking height.
- Drive the truck towards the rack carefully.





Lower the load until it rests securely on the rack.

A DANGER

Risk of accident!

- Beware of any people in the danger area.
- Ensure that the roadway behind you is clear.
- Move the truck back until the fork arms can be lowered without touching the stack.
- Lower the fork while maintaining ground clearance
- Tilt the lift mast backwards and drive away.



A DANGER

Risk of fatal injury!

Driving on ascending and descending gradients carries special dangers!

- Always follow the instructions below.
- On ascending and descending gradients, the load must be carried facing uphill.
- It is only permitted to drive on ascending and descending gradients that are marked as traffic routes and that can be used safely.
- Ensure that the ground to be traversed is clean and provides a good grip.
- Do not turn on ascending and descending gradients.
- Do not drive onto or along ascending and descending gradients at an angle.
- Do not park the truck on ascending or descending gradients.
- In case of emergency, secure the truck with wedges so that the truck does not roll away.





Reduce the driving speed on descending gradients.

It is not permitted to drive on long ascending and descending gradients greater than 15% due to the specified minimum braking and stability values.

Before driving on ascending and descending gradients greater than 15%, consult the authorised service centre.

The process of placing loads into stock and removing loads from stock while on an ascending or descending gradient is not permitted!

 Always place loads into stock and remove loads from stock on a horizontal plane.

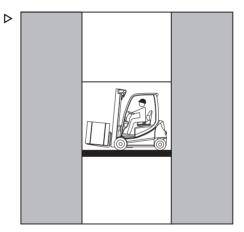
Driving onto lifts

The driver may only use this truck on lifts with a sufficient load capacity and for which the operating company has granted authorisation. See the chapter entitled "Definition of responsible persons".

A DANGER

There is a risk of fatal injury from being crushed or run over by the truck.

- There must not be any persons already in the lift when the truck is driven into the lift.
- Persons are only permitted to enter the lift once the truck is secure, and must exit the lift before the truck is driven out.



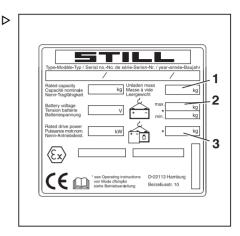


Determining the total actual weight

- Park the truck securely and switch it off.
- Determine the unit weights by reading the truck nameplate and, if necessary, the nameplate on the attachment (variant) and/or by weighing the load to be lifted.
- Add together the determined unit weights to obtain the total actual weight of the truck:

Net weight (1)

- + Max. permissible battery weight (2)
- + Ballast weight (variant) (3)
- + Net weight of attachment (variant)
- + Weight of the load to be lifted
- + 100 kg allowance for driver
- Total actual weight
- Drive the truck into the lift with the forks facing forwards. Make sure not to touch the shaft walls.
- Park the truck securely in the lift and switch it off to prevent uncontrolled movements of the load or the truck.





Driving on loading bridges

A DANGER

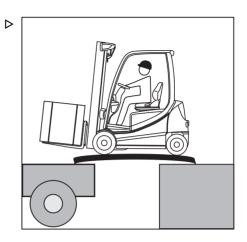
Risk of accident from the truck crashing!

Steering movements can cause the rear of the truck to veer off the loading bridge towards the edge. This may cause the truck to crash.

For three-wheel trucks, the useable area of the loading bridge must be enclosed so that the rear drive wheel does not fall through.

The lorry driver and the forklift truck driver must agree on the departure time of the lorry.

- Establish the departure time of the lorry.
- Determine the total actual weight of the truck.
- Before driving over a loading bridge, observe the company directive for the loading bridge.
- Make sure that the loading bridge is properly attached and secured and has a sufficient load capacity (e.g. lorry, bridge).
- Ensure that the lorry onto which you will be driving is secured to prevent it from shifting and that it can support the load of the truck.

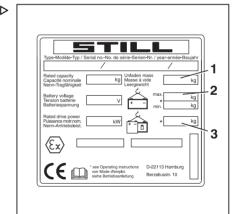


Determining the total actual weight

- Park the truck securely.
- Determine the unit weights by reading the truck nameplate and, if necessary, the nameplate on the attachment (variant) and/or by weighing the load to be lifted.
- Add together the determined unit weights to obtain the total actual weight of the truck:

Net weight (1)

- + Max. permissible battery weight (2)
- + Ballast weight (variant) (3)
- + Net weight of attachment (variant)
- Weight of the load to be lifted
- + 100 kg allowance for driver
- = Total actual weight
- Drive slowly and carefully on the loading bridge.





Need to depressurise the hydraulic system

To enable additional hydraulic functions other than the basic functions to be used, the truck has plug connectors (1) on the lift mast.

Clamping and non-clamping attachments can be connected to these plug connectors.

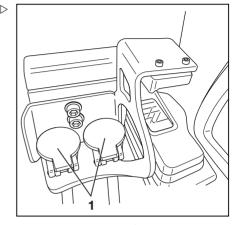
- Non-clamping attachments are connected to the third hydraulic circuit via the plug connectors (1) on the fork carriage and are controlled via the "5th hydraulic function".
 If the truck is equipped with multi-lever operation, the attachments can also be controlled via the "6th hydraulic function".
- Clamping attachments are not controlled via the "5th/6th hydraulic function"

Attachments must be installed only by competent persons. The specifications provided by the manufacturer and supplier of the attachments must be observed during installation of the attachments

Before changing attachments, the hydraulic system must be depressurised. This is done using a wizard on the display-operating unit.

If the truck has a "5th hydraulic function" or "6th hydraulic function", the hydraulic circuits of these functions must also be depressurised.

- Observe the following sections to depressurise the hydraulic system.
- "Wizard for depressurising the hydraulic system"
- "Depressurising the hydraulic system using ..." (see the respective operating device!)
- "Depressurising the hydraulic system using ... and the 5th function" (see the respective operating device!)
- · "Special feature for clamping attachments"
- · "Completing the depressurisation"



Plug connectors on the lift mast



Wizard for depressurising the hvdraulic system

The hydraulics are depressurised using a wizard on the display-operating unit.

If this function is required for daily operation, contact your authorised service centre. The authorised service centre can enable the function for the driver

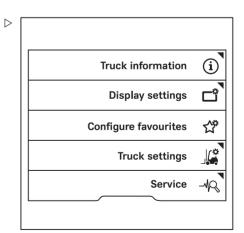


The wizard requires access authorisation for the fleet manager. Access to the settings menu is only available if the truck is at a standstill and the parking brake is applied. If the parking brake is released prematurely, the settings menu will close.

- Set the load down, if necessary.
- Apply the parking brake.

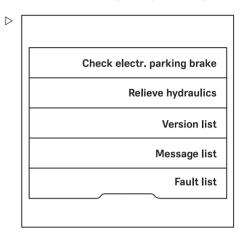
Starting the wizard

- Press the 🔳 button.
- Press the "Settings" Softkey &.
- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".
- Press the Service → softkey.





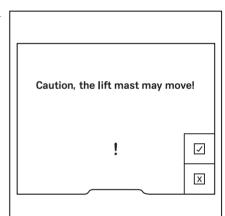
- Press the scroll keys △ ▼ until the Relieve hydraulics menu appears.
- Push the Relieve hydraulics soft-key.



The following message appears: Caution, the lift mast may move! !

- To confirm, push the ✓ softkey.

Press the X softkey to exit the wizard.





The following message appears: Disengage ▷ all hydraulic axles, then switch off the truck !

Depressurise the hydraulics; see the corresponding section.

▲ WARNING

The movements of the load lift system present a risk of crushing.

During the depressurisation process, the fork carriage or the lift mast can move slightly.

 Do not reach into or stand below the components of the load lift system.



NOTE

Do not move the steering wheel while depressurising the hydraulics. Otherwise the hydraulic system will build up pressure again. As soon as pressure has built up in the hydraulic system again, the function for relieving the hydraulics becomes inactive.

Depressurising the hydraulic system using multi-lever operation

 Start the "wizard for depressurising the hydraulic system".

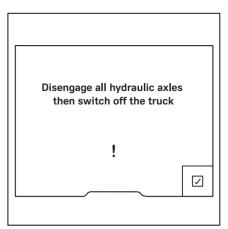
Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for ▷ the basic functions

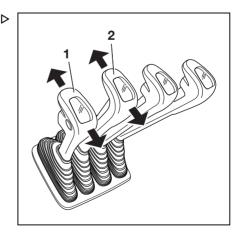
The basic functions include the first four hydraulic functions. The basic functions are controlled via the first two hydraulic circuits.

The basic functions are:

- · Lifting the fork carriage
- · Lowering the fork carriage
- Tilting the lift mast forwards
- · Tilting the lift mast backwards
- Push the operating levers (1, 2) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached

The hydraulic circuits of the basic functions are now depressurised.







Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for ▷ the additional functions

The additional features include features such as the sideshift and fork adjustment. Clamping attachments are also connected to these hydraulic circuits. These functions are controlled via hydraulic circuits three and four.

 Actuate the operating levers (3, 4) for controlling the additional functions once in the direction of the arrow until the end positions are reached

The hydraulic circuits of the additional functions are now depressurised.



Depending on the equipment, the operating lever (2) can be assigned the sideshift and the fork adjustment functions.

- In this case, press the button (1) and hold it down.
- Push the operating lever (2) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached
- Release the button (1).

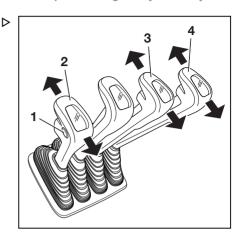
The hydraulic circuits of the sideshift and fork adjustment are now depressurised. The plug connectors on the lift mast are depressurised.

Completing the depressurisation

- To complete the depressurisation, observe the section entitled "Exiting the wizard".

Depressurising the hydraulic system using multi-lever operation and the 5th and 6th function

If the truck is equipped with multi-lever operation, the attachments can also be controlled via the "5th hydraulic function" and "6th hydraulic function".





If the truck has a "5th and 6th hydraulic function", their hydraulic circuits must also be depressurised. The procedure is similar to the depressurisation of the hydraulic circuits for the basic functions and the additional functions. In addition, the hydraulic circuits are depressurised in the same way as the attachments are operated. The hydraulic circuits for the "5th and 6th hydraulic functions" are actuated via the corresponding buttons on the operating devices

- Press the button (1) and hold it down.
- Push the operating lever (4) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached

The hydraulic circuit of the 5th hydraulic function is depressurised. The plug connectors on the lift mast are depressurised.

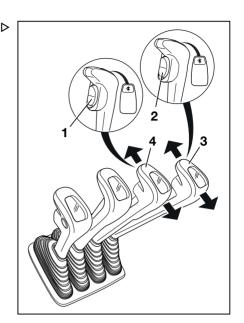
- Press the button (2) and hold it down.
- Push the operating lever (3) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached

The hydraulic circuit of the 6th hydraulic function is depressurised. The plug connectors on the lift mast are depressurised.

Completing the depressurisation

 To complete the depressurisation, observe the section entitled "Exiting the wizard".

Depressurising the hydraulic system using a double mini-lever





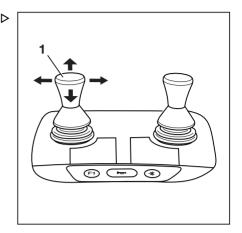
Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for ▷ the basic functions

The basic functions include the first four hydraulic functions. The basic functions are controlled via the first two hydraulic circuits.

The basic functions are:

- · Lifting the fork carriage
- · Lowering the fork carriage
- · Tilting the lift mast forwards
- · Tilting the lift mast backwards
- Push the cross lever (1) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached.

The hydraulic circuits of the basic functions are now depressurised.



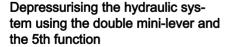
The additional features include features such as the sideshift and fork adjustment. Clamping attachments are also connected to these hydraulic circuits. These functions are controlled via hydraulic circuits three and four.

 Actuate the cross lever (1) for controlling the additional functions once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached.

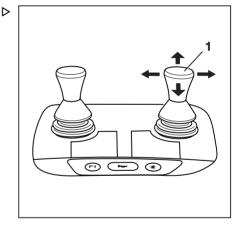
The hydraulic circuits of the additional functions are now depressurised.

Completing the depressurisation

 To complete the depressurisation, observe the section entitled "Exiting the wizard".



If the truck is equipped with the double minilever, the attachments can also be controlled via the "5th hydraulic function".





Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for the "5th hydraulic function" >>

If the truck has a "5th hydraulic function", the hydraulic circuit of this function must also be depressurised. The procedure is similar to the depressurisation of the hydraulic circuits for the basic functions and the additional functions. In addition, the hydraulic circuit is depressurised in the same way as the attachments are operated. The hydraulic circuit for the "5th hydraulic function" is actuated using the function key for the "5th function" (2).

Actuate the function key for the "5th function" (2).

The LED for the "5th function" +* lights up.

Push the cross lever (1) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached.

The hydraulic circuit of the 5th hydraulic function is depressurised. The plug connectors on the lift mast are depressurised.

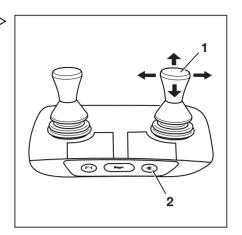
Actuate the function key for the "5th function" (2).

The LED for the "5th function" +* goes out.

Completing the depressurisation

 To complete the depressurisation, observe the section entitled "Exiting the wizard".

Depressurising the hydraulic system using a triple mini-lever





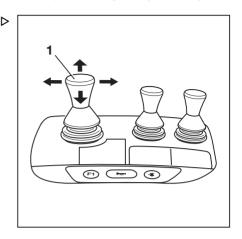
Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for ▷ the basic functions

The basic functions include the first four hydraulic functions. The basic functions are controlled via the first two hydraulic circuits.

The basic functions are:

- · Lifting the fork carriage
- · Lowering the fork carriage
- · Tilting the lift mast forwards
- · Tilting the lift mast backwards
- Push the cross lever (1) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached.

The hydraulic circuits of the basic functions are now depressurised.



Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for ▷ the additional functions

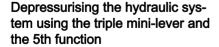
The additional features include features such as the sideshift and fork adjustment. Clamping attachments are also connected to these hydraulic circuits. These functions are controlled via hydraulic circuits three and four.

Actuate the operating levers (1, 2) for controlling the additional functions once in the direction of the arrow until the end positions are reached.

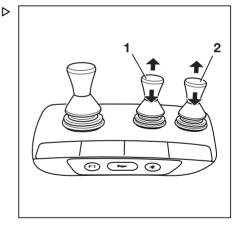
The hydraulic circuits of the additional functions are now depressurised.

Completing the depressurisation

 To complete the depressurisation, observe the section entitled "Exiting the wizard".



If the truck is equipped with the triple mini-lever, the attachments can also be controlled via the "5th hydraulic function".





Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for the "5th hydraulic function" >>

If the truck has a "5th hydraulic function", the hydraulic circuit of this function must also be depressurised. The procedure is similar to the depressurisation of the hydraulic circuits for the basic functions and the additional functions. In addition, the hydraulic circuit is depressurised in the same way as the attachments are operated. The hydraulic circuit for the "5th hydraulic function" is actuated using the function key for the "5th function" (2).

Actuate the function key for the "5th function" (2).

The LED for the "5th function" +* lights up.

 Push the operating lever (1) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached.

The hydraulic circuit of the 5th hydraulic function is depressurised. The plug connectors on the lift mast are depressurised.

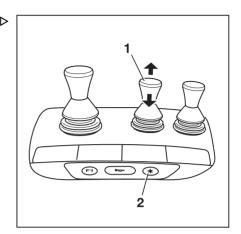
Actuate the function key for the "5th function" (2).

The LED for the "5th function" +* goes out.

Completing the depressurisation

 To complete the depressurisation, observe the section entitled "Exiting the wizard".

Depressurising the hydraulic system using a quadruple mini-lever



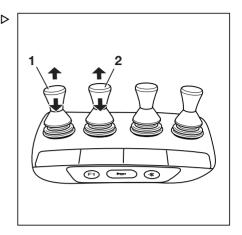
Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for ▷ the basic functions

The basic functions include the first four hydraulic functions. The basic functions are controlled via the first two hydraulic circuits.

The basic functions are:

- · Lifting the fork carriage
- · Lowering the fork carriage
- · Tilting the lift mast forwards
- · Tilting the lift mast backwards
- Push the operating levers (1, 2) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached.

The hydraulic circuits of the basic functions are now depressurised.



The additional features include features such as the sideshift and fork adjustment. Clamping attachments are also connected to these hydraulic circuits. These functions are controlled via hydraulic circuits three and four.

Actuate the operating levers (1, 2) for controlling the additional functions once in the direction of the arrow until the end positions are reached.

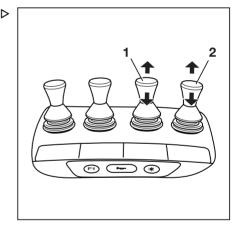
The hydraulic circuits of the additional functions are now depressurised.

Completing the depressurisation

 To complete the depressurisation, observe the section entitled "Exiting the wizard".

Depressurising the hydraulic system using the quadruple mini-lever and the 5th function

If the truck is equipped with the quadruple mini-lever, the attachments can also be controlled via the "5th hydraulic function".





Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for the "5th hydraulic function" >>

If the truck has a "5th hydraulic function", the hydraulic circuit of this function must also be depressurised. The procedure is similar to the depressurisation of the hydraulic circuits for the basic functions and the additional functions. In addition, the hydraulic circuit is depressurised in the same way as the attachments are operated. The hydraulic circuit for the "5th hydraulic function" is actuated using the function key for the "5th function" (2).

Actuate the function key for the "5th function" (2).

The LED for the "5th function" →* lights up.

 Push the operating lever (1) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached.

The hydraulic circuit of the 5th hydraulic function is depressurised. The plug connectors on the lift mast are depressurised.

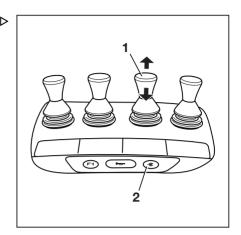
Actuate the function key for the "5th function" (2).

The LED for the "5th function" +* goes out.

Completing the depressurisation

 To complete the depressurisation, observe the section entitled "Exiting the wizard".

Depressurising the hydraulic system using the Fingertip





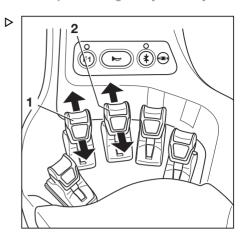
Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for bethe basic functions

The basic functions include the first four hydraulic functions. The basic functions are controlled via the first two hydraulic circuits.

The basic functions are:

- · Lifting the fork carriage
- · Lowering the fork carriage
- · Tilting the lift mast forwards
- · Tilting the lift mast backwards
- Push the operating levers (1, 2) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached.

The hydraulic circuits of the basic functions are now depressurised.



The additional features include features such as the sideshift and fork adjustment. Clamping attachments are also connected to these hydraulic circuits. These functions are controlled via hydraulic circuits three and four.

Actuate the operating levers (1, 2) for controlling the additional functions once in the direction of the arrow until the end positions are reached.

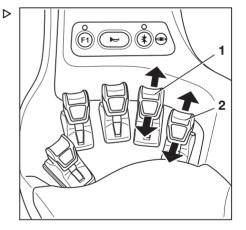
The hydraulic circuits of the additional functions are now depressurised.

Completing the depressurisation

 To complete the depressurisation, observe the section entitled "Exiting the wizard".

Depressurising the hydraulic system using the Fingertip and the 5th function

If the truck is equipped with the Fingertip, the attachments can also be controlled via the "5th hydraulic function".





Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for the "5th hydraulic function" >>

If the truck has a "5th hydraulic function", the hydraulic circuit of this function must also be depressurised. The procedure is similar to the depressurisation of the hydraulic circuits for the basic functions and the additional functions. In addition, the hydraulic circuit is depressurised in the same way as the attachments are operated. The hydraulic circuit for the "5th hydraulic function" is actuated using the function key for the "5th function" (2). The operating levers (1) or (4) can be assigned the 5th function. Observe the relevant pictogram for the 5th function.

Actuate the function key for the "5th function" (2).

The LED for the "5th function" +* (3) lights up.

 Push the operating levers (1) or (4) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached.

The hydraulic circuit of the 5th hydraulic function is depressurised. The plug connectors on the lift mast are depressurised.

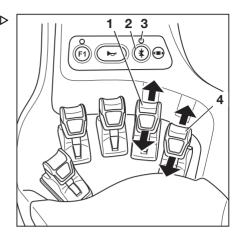
Actuate the function key for the "5th function" (2).

The LED for the "5th function" ** (3) goes out

Completing the depressurisation

 To complete the depressurisation, observe the section entitled "Exiting the wizard".

Depressurising the hydraulic system using the Joystick 4Plus



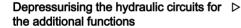
Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for bethe basic functions

The basic functions include the first four hydraulic functions. The basic functions are controlled via the first two hydraulic circuits.

The basic functions are:

- · Lifting the fork carriage
- · Lowering the fork carriage
- · Tilting the lift mast forwards
- · Tilting the lift mast backwards
- Push the Joystick 4Plus (2) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached.
- Push the horizontal rocker button (1) once in the direction of the arrow.

The hydraulic circuits of the basic functions are now depressurised.



The additional features include features such as the sideshift and fork adjustment. Clamping attachments are also connected to these hydraulic circuits. These functions are controlled via hydraulic circuits three and four.

Push the Joystick 4Plus (1) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached.

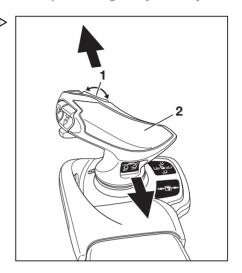
The hydraulic circuits of the additional functions are now depressurised.

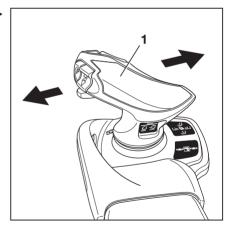
Completing the depressurisation

 To complete the depressurisation, observe the section entitled "Exiting the wizard".

Depressurising the hydraulic system using the Joystick 4Plus and the 5th function

If the truck is equipped with the Joystick 4Plus, the attachments can also be controlled via the "5th hydraulic function".







 Start the "wizard for depressurising the hydraulic system".

Depressurising the hydraulic circuits for the "5th hydraulic function" >>

If the truck has a "5th hydraulic function", the hydraulic circuit of this function must also be depressurised. The procedure is similar to the depressurisation of the hydraulic circuits for the basic functions and the additional functions. In addition, the hydraulic circuit is depressurised in the same way as the attachments are operated. The hydraulic circuit for the "5th hydraulic function" is actuated using the shift key "F" (1). The Joystick 4Plus (3) or the horizontal rocker button (2) can be assigned the 5th function. Observe the relevant pictogram for the 5th function.

- Press and hold shift key "F" (1).
- Push the Joystick 4Plus (3) once in the direction of the arrow until the end position is reached

Push the horizontal rocker button (2) once in the direction of the arrow.

The hydraulic circuit of the 5th hydraulic function is depressurised. The plug connectors on the lift mast are depressurised.

- Release shift key "F" (1).

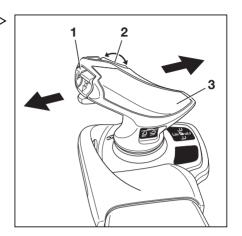
Completing the depressurisation

 To complete the depressurisation, observe the section entitled "Exiting the wizard".

Special feature for clamping attachments

If a clamping attachment is fitted, please observe the following:

- Depressurising the hydraulic circuit for clamping attachments is performed in the same way as opening and closing the clamp.
- Loosen the clamp locking mechanism; see the relevant sections related to the clamp locking mechanism.





- Push the operating device once in the "Open" direction.
- Push the operating device once in the "Close" direction.
- Observe the section entitled "Clamp locking mechanism (variant)" in the chapter entitled "Attachments".

Exiting the wizard

The wizard for depressurising the hydraulics is switched off. The truck is ready for operation.



Attachments

Fitting attachments



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

No work must be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas!

Only assemble attachments outside potentially explosive areas.



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working within potentially explosive areas with attachments that do not comply with explosion-protection regulations can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere!

- Only operate attachments that comply with the explosion-protection regulations.
- Check the area of application by comparing with the information on the nameplate of the attachments.
- If the area of application is not clear, ask the safety officer.

If the truck is equipped with an integrated attachment (variant) at the factory, the specifications in the STILL operating instructions for integrated attachments must be observed.

If attachments are fitted at the place of use, the specifications in the operating instructions from the attachment manufacturer must be observed

If an attachment is not delivered together with the truck, the specifications from the manufacturer and the operating instructions from the attachment manufacturer must be observed.

Before initial commissioning, the function of the attachment and the visibility from the driver's position with and without a load must be checked by a competent person. If the visibility is deemed insufficient, visual aids must be



used, such as mirrors, a camera, a monitor system etc.

Observe the following warning notices.

A DANGER

Risk of fatal injury from falling load!

If attachments that hold the load by clamping it or exerting pressure on it do not have a second method of operating the function (lock), the load can work loose and fall off

- Ensure that the second method of operating the function (lock) is available.
- When retrofitting such attachments, a second method of operating the function (lock) must also be retrofitted.

A DANGER

Risk of fatal injury from falling load!

When installing a clamp with an integrated sideshift function, ensure that the clamp does not open when the sideshift is actuated.

- Notify your authorised service centre before installation.
- Never grab or climb on moving parts of the truck.

A WARNING

Risk of accident due to incorrect labelling!

The use of attachments can cause accidents if the labelling is incorrect or missing.

If the truck is not fitted with an attachment-specific residual load capacity rating plate, and the operating devices are not marked with the relevant pictograms, the truck must not be used.

- Use only CE-certified attachments that include operating instructions and the required labels.
- Arrange for an attachment-specific residual load capacity rating plate to be fitted to the truck.
- Arrange for the operating devices to be re-labelled
- Arrange for the authorised service centre to adjust the hydraulic system to the requirements of the attachment (e.g. adjust the pump motor speed).



NOTE

If the required labelling is not provided with the attachment, contact the authorised service centre promptly.



Alternating operation using an electrical switch valve

If non-integrated attachments for alternating operation are used in conjunction with an electrical switch valve for the 5th and 6th hydraulic function, the electrical switch valve must operate at 12 V.

 Contact the authorised service centre if necessary.

Plug connectors on the lift mast

 Before fitting the attachment, release the pressure from the hydraulic system.

A CAUTION

Risk of damage to components!

Open connections on the plug connectors (1) can become dirty. Dirt can enter the hydraulic system. The plug connectors can become stiff.

 Once the attachment has been disassembled, seal the plug connectors using the protective caps.

Mounting attachments

Only competent persons are permitted to mount and connect the energy supply to the attachment.

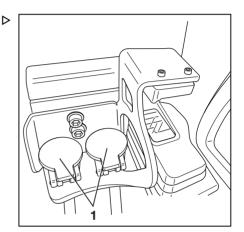
- Observe the information provided by the manufacturer and supplier or sub-supplier of the attachment when doing so.
- After each installation, the function of the attachment must be tested prior to initial commissioning.



Please observe the definition of the following responsible person: "competent person".

Load capacity with attachment

The permissible load capacity of the attachment and the permissible load (load capacity and load moment) of the truck must not be exceeded by the combination of the attachment and the payload. Comply with the





specifications of the manufacturer and supplier of the attachment.

 Observe the residual load capacity rating plate; see the chapter entitled "Picking up a load using attachments".



General instructions for controlling attachments

Attachments can be controlled via the first four hydraulic functions but also as a variant via the 5th or 6th function. The 5th or 6th function is activated via a button on the operating device and by moving the operating device or additional push buttons.

The way in which attachments (variant) are controlled depends on the operating devices included in the truck's equipment.

Possible equipment variants include:

- Multi-lever
- Multi-lever with a 5th or 6th function (variant)
- · Double mini-lever
- Double mini-lever with a 5th function (variant)
- · Triple mini-lever
- Triple mini-lever with a 5th function (variant)
- · Quadruple mini-lever
- Quadruple mini-lever with a 5th function (variant)
- Fingertip
- Fingertip with a 5th function (variant)
- · Joystick 4Plus
- · Joystick 4Plus with a 5th function (variant)
- To control attachments, see the sections relating to the respective operating devices in this chapter.



A WARNING

Use of attachments can give rise to additional hazards such as a change in the centre of gravity, additional danger areas etc.

Attachments must only be deployed for their intended use as described in the relevant operating instructions. Drivers must be taught how to operate the attachments.

Loads may only be picked up and transported with attachments if the loads are securely grasped and attached. If necessary, the loads must also be secured against slipping, rolling away, falling over, swinging and tipping over. Note that any change to the location of the load centre of gravity will affect the stability of the truck.

Observe the capacity rating plate for the attachments being used.



NOTE

Further variants and functions are available in addition to the functions described below. The directions of movement can be seen in the pictograms on the operating devices. All the attachments described fall into the category of equipment variants. An exact description of the respective movements or actions of the attachment fitted can be found in the relevant operating instructions.

With fleet manager access authorisation (variant), the fleet manager can adjust the speed of the auxiliary hydraulics for attachments.

 See also the section entitled "Adjusting the hydraulic speed for attachments" in this chapter.

Attachment example for the connection of the auxiliary hydraulics



NOTE

The authorised service centre will tell you which attachments can be used with this truck.

The connection of attachments to the auxiliary hydraulics is performed as per the diagram, as highlighted in the operating instructions for the attachment.

 Observe the "Information on the auxiliary hydraulics" in the "Technical data" chapter.



In the menu for the available hydraulic axles for attachments, the designation Hydraulic axle specifies the connection of the corresponding auxiliary hydraulics. See also the section entitled "Adjusting the hydraulic speed for attachments" in this chapter.

Attachment example for an attachment for ad- > iustment of the fork arms

- 1 Auxiliary hydraulics 1
- 2 Auxiliary hydraulics 2
- 3 Electrical connection for switch valve 1 (two switch valves are possible)

If an attachment is connected to the auxiliary hydraulics 1 (1) and this attachment requires another function, this is referred to as the function of the auxiliary hydraulics 3.

There is an electrical connection (3) for the switch valve that is required for this purpose.

The same applies to the auxiliary hydraulics 4, which is fed from the auxiliary hydraulics 2 (2) and is implemented by an additional connection for a switch valve that is not shown here.



NOTE

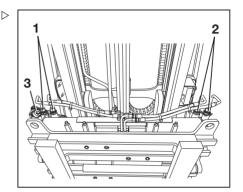
If one switch valve is used, the auxiliary hydraulic functions 1 & 3 and 2 & 4 that are supplied by this switch valve cannot be operated simultaneously. The switch valve supplies either auxiliary hydraulics 1 & 3 or 2 & 4.

Adjusting the hydraulic speed for attachments

If different attachments are mounted, the fleet manager can adjust the hydraulic speed for attachments and thus the flow rate of hydraulic oil. Obtain the necessary values from the operating instructions for the attachment. The authorised service centre will help to make the correct adjustments.

 Observe the "Information on the auxiliary hydraulics" in the "Technical data" chapter.

The "Information on the auxiliary hydraulics" differs depending on the truck. Take this into consideration when selecting the attachment.







The adjustment procedure requires access authorisation for the fleet manager. Access to the settings menu is only available if the truck is at a standstill and the parking brake is applied. If the parking brake is released prematurely, the settings menu will close.

- Apply the parking brake.
- Press the button.
- Press the "Settings" Softkey &.
- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".
- Push the "Auxiliary hydraulics" Softkey.

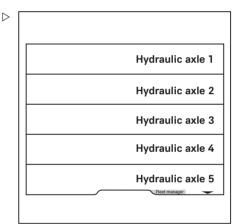
This menu lists all the available hydraulic axles for attachments.

- Refer to the operating instructions of the attachment to determine which hydraulic axle is occupied by the attachment.

The authorised service centre will help you determine the axles

Setting the revolution speed

- Push the softkey for the hydraulic axle to be configured.





This menu indicates the supply flow.

The return flow is shown in a lighter colour.

- The currently set speed of the hydraulic pump is given in rpm
- The currently set supply flow rate is given in L/min.



The supply flow rate depends on the speed.

To adjust the speed, push the "Plus" + or "Minus" - softkey.

To save the setting, press the "Confirm"
 softkey.

The settings are saved.

The settings return to the most recently set value.

Locking the flow rate

You can also lock the hydraulic oil flow rate in full.

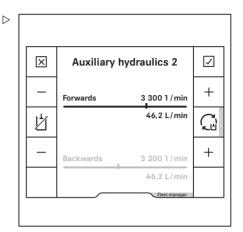
 To do this, push the "Deactivate auxiliary hydraulics" softkey

The hydraulic oil flow rate for this hydraulic axle is locked

Setting the return flow rate separately

Depending on the attachment, the return flow rate may need to be set separately.

 To do this, push the "Synchronise auxiliary hydraulics" softkey Q.





The return flow is displayed in addition to the supply flow at full brightness.

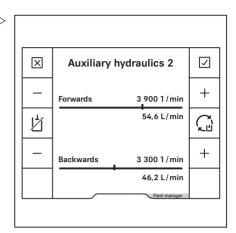
To adjust the speed, push the "Plus" + or "Minus" - softkey.

 To save the setting, press the "Confirm" softkev.

The settings are saved.

- To cancel the setting, press the "Cancel" X softkev.

The settings return to the most recently set value.



Clamp locking mechanism (variant)

This truck can be fitted with a clamp locking mechanism for clamping attachments. The clamp locking mechanism prevents the clamp from opening unintentionally if the operating function is inadvertently triggered.

A DANGER

If the correct function of the clamp locking mechanism is not guaranteed, there is a risk to life from a falling load!

If other attachments in addition to the clamp are used on this truck, the clamp locking mechanism must be reassigned to the corresponding operating device every time the clamp is reassembled.

- Make sure that the authorised service centre reassigns the function of the clamp locking mechanism to the corresponding operating device.
- Make sure that the additional clamp locking mechanism function is available.
- Observe the section entitled "Fitting attachments".



For technical reasons, clamping attachments must not be controlled via the "5th function".

The sections entitled "Controlling attachments using ..." describe how the clamp locking mechanism is operated.



See the section concerning the relevant operating device.



Controlling attachments using multi- ⊳ lever operation

In this version, the attachments (variant) are controlled using the operating levers (1, 3). The pictograms for the hydraulic functions (2, 4) are affixed to the operating levers.

- Observe the pictograms (2) or (4).

The pictograms are arranged according to the directions of movement of the operating lever (1) or (3).

The following applies:

Move the operating lever forwards.

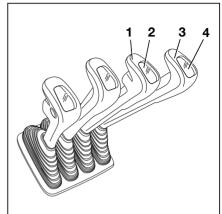
The attachment moves in the direction of movement shown in the upper part of the pictogram.

- Move the operating lever backwards.

The attachment moves in the direction of movement shown in the lower part of the pictogram.

Note the following attachment functions and pictograms.

Picto- gram	Attachment function
Ⅎ	Move the side shift frame or fork forwards
⇒	Move the side shift frame or fork backwards
<u>⊔</u> •	Move the sideshift to the left
1	Move sideshift to the right
\mapsto	Adjust fork arms: open
₩	Adjust fork arms: close
<u>+</u>]	Push off the load
<u>→</u> []	Pull in the load
5	Rotate to the left
C	Rotate to the right
P	Tip shovel over
₹₹	Tip shovel back
⊐ <u></u>	Swivel the fork to the left
≄⊏	Swivel the fork to the right







The pictograms are affixed according to the attachment fitted at the factory. If an attachment with different functions is fitted, the authorised service centre must check that the pictograms bear the correct representation and must change them if necessary.

Clamp locking mechanism



For technical reasons, no clamp locking mechanism is available for the multi-lever operating device.



Controlling attachments using multi- ⊳ lever operation and the 5th and 6th function

The function keys for the "5th and 6th function" (1, 2) and the operating levers (3, 4) are used to control the "5th function" or the "6th function"

The central and bottom parts of the pictograms on each operating lever show the function that is activated by that lever. The top part of the pictogram shows that the attachment is equipped with the "5th function" or the "6th function".

The following applies:

- Move the operating lever (3, 4) forwards.

The attachment moves in the direction of movement shown in the central part of the pictogram.

- Move the operating lever (3, 4) backwards.

The attachment moves in the direction of movement shown in the lower part of the pictogram.

- Press and hold the switch (1).

The additional function of the attachment is activated and can be controlled as the "5th function" with the operating lever (4).



NOTE

The movement/action of the "5th function" can be found in the operating instructions of the attachment that is fitted.

- Press and hold the switch (2).

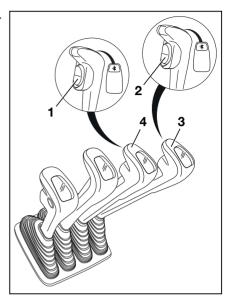
The additional function of the attachment is activated and can be controlled as the "5th function" or "6th function" with the operating lever (3).



NOTE

The movement/action of the "5th function" or "6th function" can be found in the operating instructions of the attachment that is fitted.





- Note the following attachment functions and pictograms.

Picto- gram	Attachment function
Ⅎ	Move the side shift frame or fork forwards
⇒	Move the side shift frame or fork backwards
Щ	Move the sideshift to the left
→ □	Move sideshift to the right
\bowtie	Adjust fork arms: open
<u>+∐+</u>	Adjust fork arms: close
<u>+</u>	Push off the load
→ □	Pull in the load
5	Rotate to the left
Č	Rotate to the right
P	Tip shovel over
₹₹	Tip shovel back
⊐ <u></u>	Swivel the fork to the left
≄ ⊏	Swivel the fork to the right



The pictograms are affixed according to the attachment fitted at the factory. If an attachment with different functions is fitted, the authorised service centre must check that the pictograms bear the correct representation and must change them if necessary. If the attachment is known, the relevant symbol is stuck on the panelling in front of the corresponding operating lever.



Controlling attachments using a double mini-lever

In this version, the attachments (variant) are controlled using the "attachments" cross lever (1). The adhesive label bearing the pictograms for the hydraulic functions (2) is affixed at the designated point.

- If the adhesive label becomes illegible or is missing, please contact your authorised service centre.
- Observe the pictograms for the attachment functions on the adhesive label (2).

The pictograms on the "attachments" cross lever (1) show the respective functions that are activated by this lever.

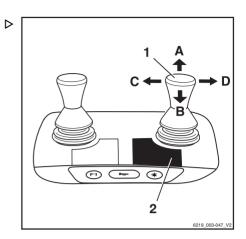
The pictograms are arranged according to the direction of movement of the "attachments" cross lever (1).

The following applies:

 Move the "attachments" cross lever(1) in the direction of arrow (A), (B), (C) or (D).

The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (A), (B), (C) or (D) as shown in the pictogram.

Picto- gram	Attachment function
Ⅎ	Move the side shift frame or fork forwards
ⅎ	Move the side shift frame or fork backwards
<u>L</u>	Move the sideshift to the left
→ ∐	Move sideshift to the right
\bowtie	Adjust fork arms: open
- ∐+	Adjust fork arms: close
≟	Release load retainer
å	Clamp load retainer
← Ⅲ →	Open clamps
≯ ■ (Close clamps
5	Rotate to the left
C	Rotate to the right
P	Tip shovel over
₹₹	Tip shovel back







NOTE

The pictograms are affixed according to the attachment fitted at the factory. If an attachment with different functions is fitted, the authorised service centre must check that the pictograms bear the correct representation and must change them if necessary.

Clamp locking mechanism

 To release the clamp locking mechanism, push the operating lever (2) forwards.

The clamp locking mechanism is released. The LED for the "clamp release" (1) lights up and remains lit while the clamp locking mechanism is released.



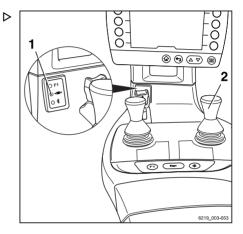
NOTE

The hydraulic function for opening the clamp is available for one second after the clamp locking mechanism is released. After one second, the clamp locking mechanism is automatically reactivated.

To open the clamp, push the operating lever (2) forwards again.

It is not necessary to release the clamp locking mechanism in order to close the clamp.

To close the clamp, pull the operating lever (2) backwards.





Controlling attachments using the double mini-lever and the 5th function



NOTE

For technical reasons, clamping attachments must not be controlled via the "5th function".

The function key for the "5th function" (3) and the cross lever (1) are used to control the "5th function".

The adhesive label bearing the pictograms for the hydraulic functions (2) is affixed at the designated point.

- If the adhesive label becomes illegible or is missing, please contact your authorised service centre.
- Observe the pictograms for the attachment functions on the adhesive label (2).

The pictograms on the "attachments" cross lever show the respective functions that are activated by this lever.

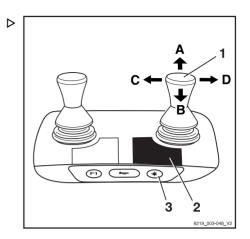
The following applies:

Actuate the function key for the "5th function" (3).

The LED for the "5th function" ** lights up.

 Move the "attachments" cross lever (1) in the direction of the arrow (A), (B), (C) or (D).

The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (A), (B), (C) or (D) as shown in the pictogram.



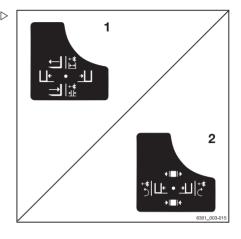


Example using the pictograms for configuration (1):

If the "attachments" cross lever (1) is moved in the direction of the arrow (A), the fork is extended.

If the function key for the "5th function" (3) is actuated and the "attachments" cross lever (1) is moved in the direction of the arrow (A), the fork arms open.

Picto- gram	Attachment function
+*	Auxiliary hydraulics "5th function"
Ⅎ	Move the side shift frame or fork forwards
⇒	Move the side shift frame or fork backwards
<u> </u>	Move the sideshift to the left
→ ∐	Move sideshift to the right
₩	Adjust fork arms: open
<u>+</u> ∐+	Adjust fork arms: close
5	Rotate to the left
C	Rotate to the right





The pictograms are affixed according to the attachment fitted at the factory. If an attachment with different functions is fitted, the authorised service centre must check that the pictograms bear the correct representation and must change them if necessary.



Controlling attachments using a triple mini-lever

In this version, the attachments (variant) are controlled using the operating levers (1, 2). The adhesive label bearing the pictograms for the hydraulic functions (3) for the operating lever (2) and the adhesive label (4) for the operating lever (1) are affixed at the designated points.

- If the adhesive labels become illegible or are missing, please contact your authorised service centre.
- Observe the pictograms for the attachment functions on the adhesive labels (3, 4).

The pictograms on the operating levers show the respective functions that are activated by these levers.

The following applies:

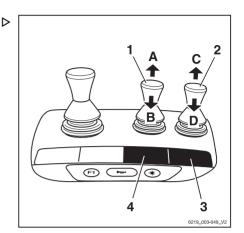
 Move the operating lever (1) in the direction of the arrow (A) or (B).

The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (A) or (B) as shown in the pictogram.

 Move the operating lever (2) in the direction of the arrow (C) or (D).

The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (C) or (D) as shown in the pictogram.

Picto- gram	Attachment function
Ⅎ	Move the side shift frame or fork forwards
ⅎ	Move the side shift frame or fork backwards
Ŭ+	Move the sideshift to the left
1	Move sideshift to the right
\mapsto	Adjust fork arms: open
±	Adjust fork arms: close
≟	Release load retainer
å	Clamp load retainer
← Ⅲ →	Open clamps
+ = +	Close clamps
5	Rotate to the left
C	Rotate to the right





Picto- gram	Attachment function
P	Tip shovel over
₹₹.	Tip shovel back



The pictograms are affixed according to the attachment fitted at the factory. If an attachment with different functions is fitted, the authorised service centre must check that the pictograms bear the correct representation and must change them if necessary.

Clamp locking mechanism

- To release the clamp locking mechanism. push the operating lever (2) forwards.

The clamp locking mechanism is released. The LED for the "clamp release" (1) lights up and remains lit while the clamp locking mechanism is released.



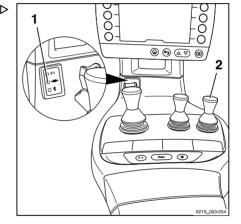
NOTE

The hydraulic function for opening the clamp is available for one second after the clamp locking mechanism is released. After one second, the clamp locking mechanism is automatically reactivated.

- To open the clamp, push the operating lever (2) forwards again.

It is not necessary to release the clamp locking mechanism in order to close the clamp.

- To close the clamp, pull the operating lever (2) backwards.



Controlling attachments using the triple mini-lever and the 5th function



NOTE

For technical reasons, clamping attachments must not be controlled via the "5th function".

The function key for the "5th function" (2) and the operating lever (1) are used to control the "5th function".

The adhesive label bearing the pictograms for the hydraulic functions (3) is affixed at the designated point.

- If the adhesive label becomes illegible or is missing, please contact your authorised service centre.
- Observe the pictograms for the attachment functions on the adhesive label (3).

The pictograms on the operating lever show the respective functions that are activated by this lever.

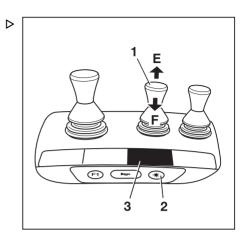
The following applies:

Actuate the function key for the "5th function" (2).

The LED for the "5th function" ** lights up.

Move the operating lever (1) in the direction (E) or (F).

The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (E) or (F) as shown in the pictogram.



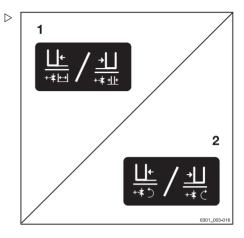


Example using the pictograms for configuration (1):

If the operating lever (1) is moved in the direction of the arrow (E), the sideshift moves to the left.

If the function key for the "5th function" (2) is actuated and the operating lever (1) is moved in the direction of the arrow (E), the fork arms open.

Picto- gram	Attachment function
+-*	Auxiliary hydraulics "5th function"
<u>Ll+</u>	Move the sideshift to the left
ш	Move sideshift to the right
₩	Adjust fork arms: open
11+	Adjust fork arms: close
5	Rotate to the left
C	Rotate to the right





The pictograms are affixed according to the attachment fitted at the factory. If an attachment with different functions is fitted, the authorised service centre must check that the pictograms bear the correct representation and must change them if necessary.



Controlling attachments using a quadruple mini-lever

In this version, the attachments (variant) are controlled using the operating levers (1, 2). The adhesive label bearing the pictograms for the hydraulic functions (3) for the operating lever (2) and the adhesive label (4) for the operating lever (1) are affixed at the designated points.

- If the adhesive labels become illegible or are missing, please contact your authorised service centre.
- Observe the pictograms for the attachment functions on the adhesive labels (3, 4).

The pictograms on the operating levers show the respective functions that are activated by these levers.

The following applies:

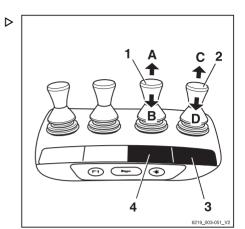
 Move the operating lever (1) in the direction of the arrow (A) or (B).

The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (A) or (B) as shown in the pictogram.

 Move the operating lever (2) in the direction of the arrow (C) or (D).

The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (C) or (D) as shown in the pictogram.

Picto- gram	Attachment function
Ⅎ	Move the side shift frame or fork forwards
ⅎ	Move the side shift frame or fork backwards
Ŭ+	Move the sideshift to the left
1	Move sideshift to the right
\mapsto	Adjust fork arms: open
±	Adjust fork arms: close
≟	Release load retainer
å	Clamp load retainer
← Ⅲ →	Open clamps
+ = +	Close clamps
5	Rotate to the left
C	Rotate to the right





Picto- gram	Attachment function
P	Tip shovel over
₹₹.	Tip shovel back



The pictograms are affixed according to the attachment fitted at the factory. If an attachment with different functions is fitted, the authorised service centre must check that the pictograms bear the correct representation and must change them if necessary.

Clamp locking mechanism

- To release the clamp locking mechanism. push the operating lever (2) forwards.

The clamp locking mechanism is released. The LED for the "clamp release" (1) lights up and remains lit while the clamp locking mechanism is released.



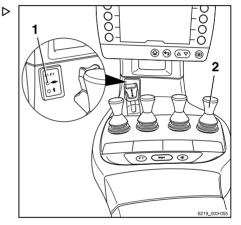
NOTE

The hydraulic function for opening the clamp is available for one second after the clamp locking mechanism is released. After one second, the clamp locking mechanism is automatically reactivated.

- To open the clamp, push the operating lever (2) forwards again.

It is not necessary to release the clamp locking mechanism in order to close the clamp.

- To close the clamp, pull the operating lever (2) backwards.



Controlling attachments using the quadruple mini-lever and the 5th function



NOTE

For technical reasons, clamping attachments must not be controlled via the "5th function".

The function key for the "5th function" (2) and the operating lever (1) are used to control the "5th function".

The adhesive label bearing the pictograms for the hydraulic functions (3) is affixed at the designated point.

- If the adhesive label becomes illegible or is missing, please contact your authorised service centre.
- Observe the pictograms for the attachment functions on the adhesive label (3).

This essentially involves the following:

Actuate the function key for the "5th function" (2).

The LED for the "5th function" +* lights up.

Move the operating lever (1) in the direction (E) or (F).

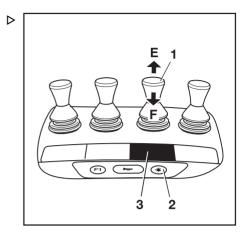
The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (E) or (F) as shown in the pictogram.

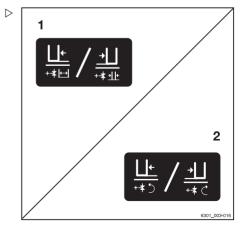
Example using the pictograms for configuration (1):

If the operating lever (1) is moved in the direction of the arrow (E), the sideshift moves to the left.

If the function key for the "5th function" (2) is actuated and the operating lever (1) is moved in the direction of the arrow (E), the fork arms open.

Picto- gram	Attachment function
+-\$	Auxiliary hydraulics "5th function"
<u>⊔•</u>	Move the sideshift to the left
→ ∐	Move sideshift to the right
⊬	Adjust fork arms: open







Picto- gram	Attachment function
<u>+ </u> +	Adjust fork arms: close
5	Rotate to the left
C	Rotate to the right



The pictograms are affixed according to the attachment fitted at the factory. If an attachment with different functions is fitted, the authorised service centre must check that the pictograms bear the correct representation and must change them if necessary.

Controlling attachments using the **Fingertip**

In this version, the attachments (variant) are controlled using the operating levers (1) and (2). The adhesive label bearing the pictograms for the hydraulic functions (3) for the operating lever (2) and the adhesive label (4) for the operating lever (1) are affixed at the designated points.

- If the adhesive labels become illegible or are missing, please contact your authorised service centre
- Observe the pictograms for the attachment functions on the adhesive labels (3, 4).

The pictograms on the operating levers show the respective functions that are activated by these levers.

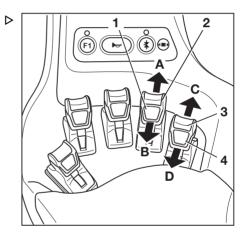
The following applies:

- Move the operating lever (1) in the direction of the arrow (A) or (B).

The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (A) or (B) as shown in the pictogram.

- Move the operating lever (2) in the direction of the arrow (C) or (D).

The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (C) or (D) as shown in the pictogram.



	·
Picto- gram	Attachment function
₽	Move the side shift frame or fork forwards
⇒	Move the side shift frame or fork backwards
∐÷	Move the sideshift to the left
<u>+</u> ∐	Move sideshift to the right
\mapsto	Adjust fork arms: open
<u>+∐+</u>	Adjust fork arms: close
â	Release load retainer
å	Clamp load retainer
+ ■ +	Open clamps
+ ■ +	Close clamps
5	Rotate to the left
C	Rotate to the right
P	Tip shovel over
₹3.	Tip shovel back

i NOTE

The pictograms are affixed according to the attachment fitted at the factory. If an attachment with different functions is fitted, the authorised service centre must check that the pictograms bear the correct representation and must change them if necessary.

Clamp locking mechanism

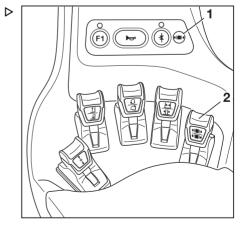
- To release the clamp locking mechanism, push the operating lever (2) forwards.

The clamp locking mechanism is released. The LED for the "clamp release" (1) lights up and remains lit while the clamp locking mechanism is released



The hydraulic function for opening the clamp is available for one second after the clamp locking mechanism is released. After one second, the clamp locking mechanism is automatically reactivated.

- To open the clamp, push the operating lever (2) forwards again.





It is not necessary to release the clamp locking mechanism in order to close the clamp.

To close the clamp, pull the operating lever (2) backwards.

Controlling attachments using the Fingertip and the 5th function



NOTE

For technical reasons, clamping attachments must not be controlled via the 5th function.

The function key for the "5th function" (2) and the operating levers (1, 6) are used to control the "5th function".

The pictograms (1, 5) behind the operating levers show the functions that are activated by the respective levers.

 If the adhesive labels become illegible or are missing, please contact your authorised service centre.

The following applies:

Actuate the function key for the "5th function" (2).

The LED for the "5th function" +* (3) lights up.

 Move the operating lever (4) or (6) in the direction of the arrow (E) or (F).

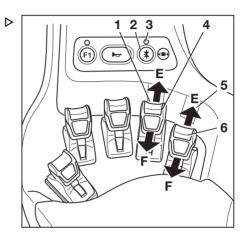
The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (E) or (F) as shown in the pictogram.



NOTE

The place where the adhesive label bearing the pictograms (1) or (5) is affixed shows which operating lever is intended to operate the "5th function". The pictograms show the functions that are activated by switching with the function key (2).

Picto- gram	Attachment function	
+-*	Auxiliary hydraulics "5th function"	
<u>L</u>	Move the sideshift to the left	
→ □	Move sideshift to the right	





Picto- gram	Attachment function	
\mapsto	Adjust fork arms: open	
→ +	Adjust fork arms: close	
5	Rotate to the left	
C	Rotate to the right	



The pictograms are affixed according to the attachment fitted at the factory. If an attachment with different functions is fitted, the authorised service centre must check that the pictograms bear the correct representation and must change them if necessary.



Controlling attachments using the Joystick 4Plus

In this version, the attachments (variant) are controlled via the Joystick 4Plus (1) and the slider (4). The adhesive label bearing the pictograms for the hydraulic functions (2) for the Joystick 4Plus (1) and the adhesive label (3) for the slider (4) are affixed at the designated points.

- If the adhesive labels become illegible or are not present, please contact your authorised service centre
- Observe the pictograms for the attachment functions on the adhesive labels (2, 3).

The pictograms on the adhesive labels regarding operation of the Joystick 4Plus show the respective functions that are activated by the individual operating devices of the Joystick 4Plus.

The following applies:

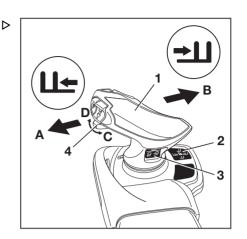
 Move the Joystick 4Plus (1) in the direction of the arrow (A) or (B).

The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (A) or (B) as shown in the pictogram.

Move the slider (4) in the direction of the arrow (C) or (D).

The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (C) or (D) as shown in the pictogram.

Picto- gram	Attachment function		
Ⅎ	Move the side shift frame or fork forwards		
⇒	Move the side shift frame or fork backwards		
<u> </u>	Move the sideshift to the left		
→ □	Move sideshift to the right		
₩	Adjust fork arms: open		
<u>+</u> ∐+	Adjust fork arms: close		
≟	Release load retainer		
₫	Clamp load retainer		
← →	Open clamps		
→ +	Close clamps		





Picto- gram	Attachment function	
5	Rotate to the left	
C	Rotate to the right	
P	Tip shovel over	
₹₹	Tip shovel back	



The pictograms are affixed according to the attachment fitted at the factory. If an attachment with different functions is fitted, the authorised service centre must check that the pictograms bear the correct representation and must change them if necessary.

Clamp locking mechanism

- To release the clamp locking mechanism, push the slider (1) to the left.

The clamp locking mechanism is released. The LED for the "clamp release" (2) lights up and remains lit while the clamp locking mechanism is released

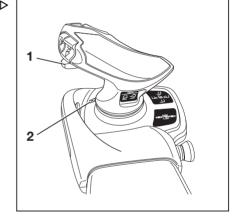
- To open the clamp, push the slider (1) to the left again.



The hydraulic function for opening the clamp is available for one second after the clamp locking mechanism is released. After one second, the clamp locking mechanism is automatically reactivated.

It is not necessary to release the clamp locking mechanism in order to close the clamp.

- To close the clamp, push the slider (1) to the right again.





Controlling attachments using the Jovstick 4Plus and the 5th function



For technical reasons, clamping attachments must not be controlled via the 5th function.

Use shift key "F" (4) and the Joystick 4Plus (2) and the horizontal rocker button (1) to control the "5th function"

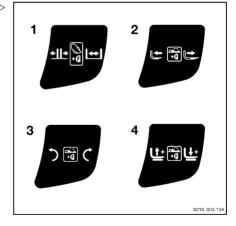
The adhesive label bearing the pictograms for the hydraulic functions (3) for the Joystick 4Plus (2) and for the horizontal rocker button (1) is affixed at the designated point.

- If the adhesive label becomes illegible or is missing, please contact your authorised service centre

The pictograms on the adhesive label regarding operation of the Joystick 4Plus show the respective functions that are activated by the individual operating devices of the Joystick 4Plus

 Note the following attachment functions and ▷ pictograms.

	Operating device	Function of the at- tachment	
1	Shift key "F" and Joystick 4Plus	Adjust fork arms: close/open	
2	Shift key "F" and horizontal rocker button	Adjust fork: back- wards/forwards	
3	Shift key "F" and horizontal rocker button	Swivel lift mast or fork: left/right	
4	Shift key "F" and horizontal rocker button	Additional fork car- riage: lift/lower	



The following applies:

- Press and hold shift key "F" (4).
- Move the Joystick 4Plus (2) in the direction (E) or (F).



The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (E) or (F) as shown in the pictogram.

 Push the horizontal rocker button (1) in the direction (G) or (H).

The attachment moves accordingly in the directions (G) or (H) as shown in the pictogram.

- Release shift key "F" (4).



The pictograms are affixed according to the attachment fitted at the factory. If an attachment with different functions is fitted, the authorised service centre must check that the pictograms bear the correct representation and must change them if necessary.

Picking up a load using attachments ▷

WARNING

Risk of accident!

Attachments must only be deployed for their intended use as described in the relevant operating instructions.

Drivers must be taught how to operate the attachments.

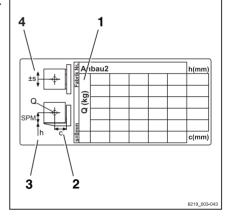
A WARNING

Risk of accident!

Loads may only be picked up and transported with attachments if the loads are securely grasped and attached. Where necessary, loads must also be secured against slipping, rolling, falling over, swinging or tipping over. Note that any change to the position of the load centre of gravity will affect the stability of the truck.

Check the capacity rating plates for the attachments or combination of attachments.

- The rating plates show the permissible values for:
- Load capacity Q (kg)
- 2 Load distance C (mm)
- 3 Lift height h (mm)
- Permissible sideshift s (mm)





Auxiliary equipment

Auxiliary equipment

General note

Depending on which zone the truck has been modified for, the number of pieces and the appearance of auxiliary equipment will vary.

FleetManager (variant)

FleetManager is an equipment variant and can be fitted to the truck in different versions. The description and operation information can be found in the separate operating instructions for the corresponding FleetManager versions.

Shock recognition (variant)

The shock recognition is an equipment variant of the FleetManager (variant) in which an acceleration sensor is installed in the truck. The acceleration sensor records data arising from rapid accelerations or decelerations of the truck, e.g. in the event of an accident. This data can be electronically read out and evaluated.

 If you have any questions, please contact your authorised service centre.

Driver restraint systems (variants)

Different driver restraint systems are available as variants for this truck. The description and operation for these systems can be found in the separate "Driver restraint systems" operating instructions.

Actuating the windscreen wipers and windscreen washers (variant)

Pressing the softkey switches between the operating stages in the sequence shown below.

Press softkey	Operating stage	
	Off	
1st time	On	
2nd time	Interval	



Press softkey	Operating stage
3rd time	Off
Hold (possible in all operating stages)	Washer

Front windscreen wiper and washer

 To activate the "On" operating stage, press the softkey ⊕ (1).

The "On" operating stage is activated. The symbol (3) appears

To activate the "Intermittent mode" operating stage, press the softkey again.

The symbol (2) is shown with an orange background.

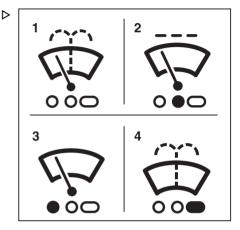
 To activate the "Washer" operating stage, press and hold the softkey.

The "Washer" operating stage is activated. The symbol (4) is displayed for as long as the softkey is pressed.

 Once the window is clean, release the softkey.

The previous operating stage is reactivated.

 To switch this operating stage off, press the softkey repeatedly until the symbol (1) appears again on the display. The activation bar next to the symbol goes out.





Auxiliary equipment

Rear window wiper and washer

 To activate the "On" operating stage, press the corresponding softkey
 ⊕ (5).

The "On" operating stage is activated. The symbol (7) appears

To activate the "Intermittent mode" operating stage, press the softkey again.

The symbol (6) is shown with an orange background.

 To activate the "Washer" operating stage, press and hold the softkey.

The "Washer" operating stage is activated. The symbol (8) is displayed for as long as the softkey is pressed.

 Once the window is clean, release the softkey.

The previous operating stage is reactivated.

 To switch this operating stage off, press the softkey repeatedly until the symbol (1) appears again on the display.

Roof panel wiper and washer

The "On" operating stage is activated. The symbol (11) appears

To activate the "Intermittent mode" operating stage, press the softkey again.

The symbol (10) is shown with an orange background.

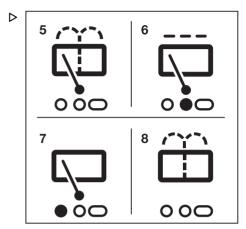
 To activate the "Washer" operating stage, press and hold the softkey.

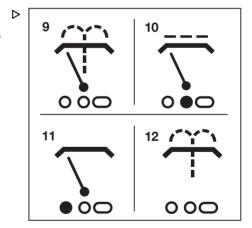
The "Washer" operating stage is activated. The symbol (12) is displayed for as long as the softkey is pressed.

 Once the window is clean, release the softkey.

The previous operating stage is reactivated.

 To switch off the speed limitation, press the softkey again.







Filling the washer system

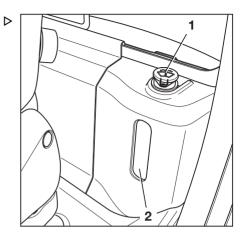
- Open the filler cap (1) of the washer system.
- Fill the washer reservoir (2) with washer fluid as described in the "Maintenance data table".



Damage due to the effects of frost!

When water freezes, it expands. If the washer system is not filled with fluid that is suitable for use in winter, ice can form in the washer system and cause damage.

- If there is a risk of frost, use fluid that is suitable for winter use.
- Close the filler cap.
- Operate the screen washer system until washer fluid is discharged from the spray nozzles.



Operating the rear window heating



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Operating the rear window heating system within potentially explosive areas classified as zones 1 and 21 can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

Rear window heating is only permissible and connected for category-3 versions (for zones 2 and 22).

Do not make any changes to the truck!

Auxiliary equipment

 To switch on the rear window heating, push the associated softkey on the display-operating unit.

The rear window heating is switched on.

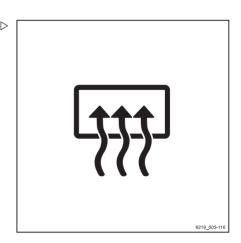
 To switch off the rear window heating, push the softkey again.

The rear window heating is switched off.



NOTE

The rear window heating will switch off automatically after approx. 10 minutes.



Ceiling sensor (variant)

Description

The ceiling sensor (1) on the overhead guard is an assistance system that automatically reduces the driving speed of the truck within halls. However, this assistance system does not release the driver from the responsibility of observing the speed limits on company premises.

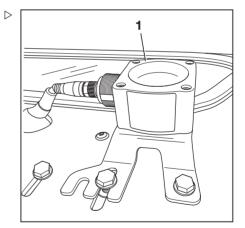
Depending on the system setting, the ceiling sensor can detect overhead structures above the truck at a height of 2 m to 24 m above the sensor.

If the truck is equipped with a ceiling sensor, this assistance system is listed in the "Assistance systems" menu in the display-operating unit.



The drivers must be instructed on the use of the ceiling sensor system by the operating company.

When the driver enters a hall for the first time after starting work, they must be certain that the ceiling sensor system is working correctly. Despite the ceiling sensor system being installed, the driver must also check the speed





indicator on the display-operating unit on a regular basis to ensure that they do not exceed the maximum speed permitted for the environment.

· Entering a hall

The ceiling sensor system automatically detects when the truck enters a hall. The system then automatically slows the truck to the maximum speed that is set for the hall. The "Speed restriction" symbol (appears in the display.

· Leaving a hall

If the truck leaves the hall again, the ceiling sensor system enables the maximum speed set for areas outside the hall. Due to the range of the sensor, this may not happen until the truck is a few metres away from the hall exit. Before the truck is able to accelerate to the maximum speed permitted for outdoor areas, the speed limitation must still be unlocked. To do this, release the accelerator briefly and then operate the accelerator again.

· Switching on the truck in a hall

If the truck is switched on inside a hall, the ceiling sensor system detects the hall ceiling and reduces the driving speed to the maximum speed that is set for halls.

Possible limitations for object recognition

- If the truck moves under larger overhead structures outdoors, e.g. a pedestrian bridge, the ceiling sensor system may interpret this overhead structure to be a hall ceiling and reduce the maximum speed.
- In rare cases, it may occur that the ceiling sensor system does not recognize a ceiling and does not then reduce the speed. This can happen if the signals from the ceiling sensor are insufficiently reflected due to the ceiling geometry; for example, if there are large window areas at a 45° angle.

In these cases, the sensitivity and the range of the ceiling sensor system must be adjusted. See the following section.



Auxiliary equipment

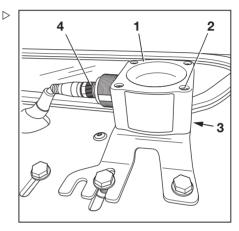
Changing the sensor settings



NOTE

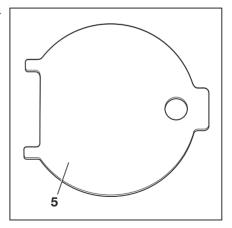
The ceiling sensor system is supplied by STILL with the following factory settings:

- · Sensitivity: High
- Ceiling height: 24 m
- Park the truck securely and switch it off.
- Turn the union nut (4) anti-clockwise to loosen it. Disconnect the electrical connection assembly by pulling out the plug.
- On the underside of the assembly baseplate on the overhead guard, hold four nuts (3) in place.
- Unscrew four socket head screws (2).



The key (5) is secured with a nut under the assembly baseplate. \triangleright

- Carefully remove the ceiling sensor (1).



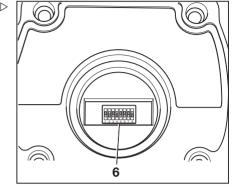


The sensor is adjusted using DIP switches (6). >

 To access the DIP switches, open the cover on the underside of the sensor housing with the key (5).

During this process, the two tabs of the key (5) fit into the recesses of the cover.

 Using the DIP switches "1 to 5" (6), adjust the range and the sensitivity of the sensor.
 The DIP switches can be adjusted using a small screwdriver.



A CAUTION

The settings for DIP switches "6 to 8" are the factory settings of the manufacturer.

Do **not** change the factory settings of the manufacturer!

Factory settings of the manufacturer

DIP switch		
6	7	8
1	1	0

The possible settings for DIP switches "1 to 5" are shown in the following tables:

DIP switch				
1	2	3	Range	
0	0	0	2 m	
0	0	1	3 m	
0	1	0	4 m	
0	1	1	6 m	
1	0	0	8 m	
1	0	1	12 m	
1	1	0	16 m	
1	1	1	24 m	

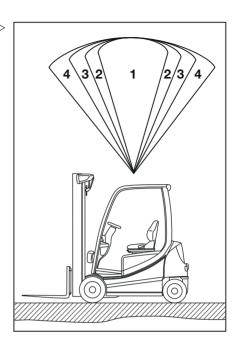
4	5	Sensitivity
0	0	Very high
0	1	High
1	0	Medium
1	1	Low



Auxiliary equipment

Representation of the beam angle depending on the sensitivity of the sensor that has been set, from (1) "low" to (4) "very high".

The sensor has different beam angles depending on the combination of range and sensitivity that has been set. See the following table:



Sensitivity	Range	Beam angle
	2 m	22.5°
	4 m	22.5°
Low (1)	8 m	20°
	16 m	15°
	24 m	5°
	2 m	35°
	4 m	30°
Medium (2)	8 m	25°
	16 m	22.5°
	24 m	10°



Auxiliary equipment

Sensitivity	Range	Beam angle
	2 m	42°
	4 m	33°
High (3)	8 m	22.5°
	16 m	20°
	24 m	15°
	2 m	45°
	4 m	43°
Very high (4)	8 m	30°
	16 m	22.5°
	24 m	18°

- After the adjustment, refit the cover.
- Refit the ceiling sensor and connect it.
- Check that it is working correctly.



Cab

Cab

Opening and closing the cab door



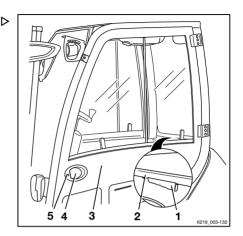
▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion due to static charge!

The plastic parts on category 2 trucks are coated with a special antistatic paint. This paint prevents the build-up of an electrostatic charge in plastic components. Otherwise, static discharge may occur, resulting in explosions in the surrounding atmosphere in potentially explosive areas.

The plastic parts of the cab (variant) are also covered with antistatic materials or coated with antistatic paint.

- Only drive into potentially explosive areas if the cab or fabric-covered cab complies with explosion protection directives.
- Make sure that the surfaces are not damaged.



A CAUTION

Risk of component damage.

If the cab door opens while driving, there is risk of damage from a collision.

The cab door must be latched securely in the engaged position.

The truck has a cab door sensor that is used to monitor the closing of the cab door.

If the seat belt is not fastened and the cab door is not closed, the driving speed is limited to 4 km/h. The message Close cab door or seat belt appears in the display.

If the cab door is opened while the truck is in motion and the seat belt is fastened, the truck decelerates and is restricted to a driving speed of 4 km/h. The message Close cab door appears in the display.

If the seat belt is released with the cab door closed, no message appears.

Opening the cab door from the outside:

 Insert the key in the door lock (5), unlock the door and remove the key.



- Pull the handle (4). Unlock the door lock.
- Open the cab door (3) by pulling it outwards.

Opening the cab door from the inside:

- Take hold of the handle (2) and the latch (1).
- Push in the latch. Push the cab door outwards.

Closing the cab door from the outside:

 Take hold of the door by the door handle (4). Close the cab door by pushing.

Closing the cab door from the inside:

- Take hold of the handle (2).
- Pull the cab door inwards and close the door

Opening and closing the side window

A WARNING

There is a risk of crushing between the window frame and side window due to the side windows slipping inadvertently during travel.

 Make sure that the handle engages securely in the corresponding stop slot.

Opening the front side window:

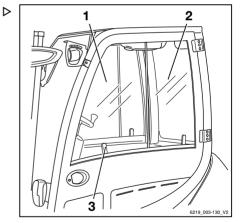
 Squeeze the handle (3). Slide the front side window (1) backwards.

Opening the rear side window:

The rear side window (2) can be opened in the same way as the front side window.

Closing the front side window:

Slide the front side window (1) forwards using the handle (3) until it snaps into place.





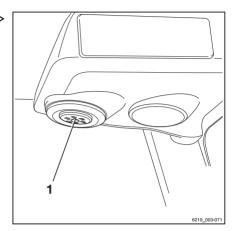
Cab

Closing the rear side window:

The rear side window (2) can be closed in the same way as the front side window.

Turning the interior lighting on or off ▷ (variant)

 To turn the interior lighting on or off, press the push button switch (1) in the middle of the interior lighting.



Radio (variant)

The radio and the loudspeakers are an equipment variant. If the truck is equipped with a radio and loudspeakers, they are integrated into the roof lining.

The description and operation can be found in the separate operating instructions for the radio.

WARNING

The driver's attention is adversely affected by operating the radio or listening to it at excessive volumes while driving or handling loads. Risk of accident!

- Do not operate the radio when driving or when handling loads.
- Adjust the radio volume so that you can still hear warning signals.



Heating system (variant)



A DANGER

There is a risk of poisoning if heavily polluted surrounding air is aspirated into the closed cab!

 Do not operate the heating system in the vicinity of storage areas or similar areas in which fuel vapours or fine dust (e.g. coal, wood or grain dust) can build up.



A DANGER

Risk of explosion due to heat!

The heat can cause gases to expand considerably or to ignite.

 Do not expose spray cans or gas cartridges to the flow of hot air.



A DANGER

Risk of fire due to overheating!

The heating system can overheat if the hot air cannot escape from it.

The heating system may only be switched on if the blower is running and the heating system is not covered by objects (such as a jacket or cover).

- Always switch the blower on first.
- Do not switch the heating system on until the blower is switched on.
- Move any objects away from the heating system or air distributors.



A DANGER

The heating system housing can become very hot during heating operation. There is a risk of burns if it is touched!

- Do not touch the heating system housing during operation.
- Only touch the switches provided.



Operating devices of the heating system

The operating devices of the heating system include:

- 1 Heating level control knob
- 2 Fan control knob
- 3 Air vent control knob

Switching on the blower and heating system

 Turn the fan control knob (2) to the desired blower position.

The blower runs at the speed level selected via the fan control knob (2).

 Turn the heating level control knob (1) to the desired heating level.

The heater warms the air to the heating level selected via the heating level control knob (1)

Turn the air vent control knob (3) to the desired position.

Selecting blower settings

- To select a lower fan output, turn the fan control knob (2) anticlockwise.
- To select a high blower output, turn the fan control knob (2) clockwise.

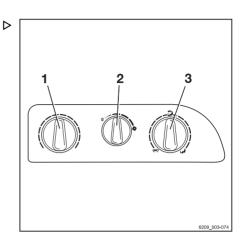
Setting heating levels

- To set a lower heater power, turn the heating level control knob (1) anticlockwise.
- To set a higher heater power, turn the heating level control knob (1) clockwise.

Setting the air vent control knob

- To direct the air flow to the footwell, turn the air vent control knob (3) in an anticlockwise direction to position (a).
- To direct the air flow to the windscreen, turn the air vent control knob (3) in a clockwise direction to position .

The centre position identities directs the air flow to the footwell and the windscreen.





Switching off the heating system and blower

 Turn the heating level control knob (1) in an anticlockwise direction until it reaches the stop.

The heating system is shut off.

 Turn the fan control knob (2) in an anticlockwise direction until it reaches the stop.

The blower is shut off

Adjusting the air distributors

The air distributors for the driver are always supplied with air. It is not necessary to adjust the heating system using the operating devices

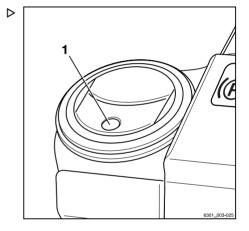
To open the air distributor, push the indentation (1) on the disc.

The discs open.

- Grasp the discs to align the air flow:

The discs can be adjusted to the desired angle. The air distributor can be rotated.

- Press down again to close the discs.



Changing fuses



A DANGER

Risk of fire as a result of short circuits!

Using the wrong fuses can result in short circuits.

Use only fuses with the prescribed nominal current.



Air conditioning (variant)

The air conditioning dries the air in the cab to prevent the glass panes misting up. The temperature of the air that is blown out is based on the heating level that has been set. The defrost function can be used to de-ice the wind-screen quickly.

The operating devices of the air conditioning include:

- 1 Heating level control knob
- 2 Fan control knob
- 3 Air vent control knob
- 4 Defrost switch
- 5 On/off switch
- To adjust the air distributors and to control the blower positions, the heat settings and the air vent control knob, see the section entitled "Heating system (variant)".



- Push the on/off switch (5).

The LED on the switch lights up green. The air conditioning is switched on.

Press the on/off switch (5) again.

The LED on the switch goes out. The air conditioning is switched off.

Defrost function

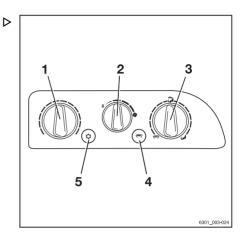
The defrost function can be used to de-ice and dehumidify the windscreen quickly. To do this, turn the air vent control knob (3) clockwise to the position. Open the air distributors and direct them onto the windscreen.

- Switch on the air conditioning.
- Push the defrost switch (4).

The LED on the switch lights up green. The air conditioning operates at full power. The highest heating level is selected. This feature operates for a limited period only. To save energy, it switches itself off automatically.

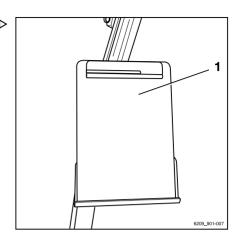
- Press the defrost switch (4) again.

The defrost function is switched off.



Clipboard (variant)

The removable clipboard (1) is an equipment variant.



Push-up roof window (variant)

M WARNING

Risk of crushing!

- When closing the roof window, do not reach between the roof window and the overhead guard.
- Do not reach in to touch the components as they are being closed.

The push-up roof window (1) can be pushed up to and locked in three positions:

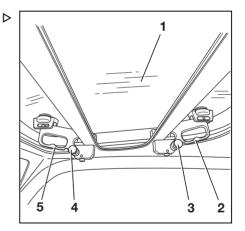
- · Pushed up at the front
- · Pushed up at the rear
- · Completely pushed up

Two handles (2, 5) and two locking bolts (3, 4) are located on the right-hand side for this purpose.

 To push up and close the roof window, stop the truck and apply the parking brake.

Pushing up and closing the roof window at the front

 To push up the roof window, pull out the locking bolt (4) with your right hand and keep hold of the locking bolt.





 Use your left hand to take hold of the handle (5) on the roof window (1) and push upwards until the locking bolt (4) engages.

The roof window (1) is held in the pushed-up position

- To close the roof window, pull out the locking bolt (4) with your right hand and keep hold of the locking bolt.
- Use your left hand to take hold of the handle (5) on the roof window (1) and pull down until the locking bolt (4) engages.

The roof window (1) is closed.

Pushing up and closing the roof window at the rear

- To push up the roof window, pull out the locking bolt (3) with your left hand and keep hold of the locking bolt.
- Use your right hand to take hold of the handle (2) on the roof window (1) and push upwards until the locking bolt (3) engages.

The roof window (1) is held in the pushed-up position

- To close the roof window, pull out the locking bolt (3) with your left hand and keep hold of the locking bolt.
- Use your right hand to take hold of the handle (2) on the roof window (1) and pull down until the locking bolt (3) engages.

The roof window (1) is closed.

Pushing up and closing the roof window completely

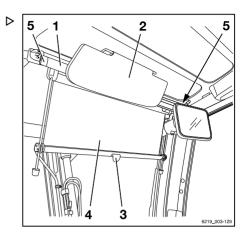
Follow the same steps as previously described to push up and close the roof window.



Sun visor and sun blind

The truck can be equipped with a sun visor (2), a sun blind for the roof (1) and a sun blind for the driver's view to the front (4).

- To adjust the sun visor (2), grasp it and move it to the desired position.
- To move the sun blind (4) up and down, grasp the tab (3) and move the sun blind.
- If necessary, fully unroll the sun blind for the roof (1) and attach the ends (5) in the extended position.
- To roll up, slowly roll the blind (1) back up.





Trailer operation

Safety information for trailer operation



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Trailers, tow couplings and coupling pins that do not meet explosion-protection regulations can cause explosions in the surrounding atmosphere within potentially explosive areas!

- Only use trailers, tow couplings and coupling pins that meet explosionprotection regulations.
- Check the area of application by referring to the information on the nameplates of the trailers and tow couplings.
- If the area of application is not clear, ask the safety officer.



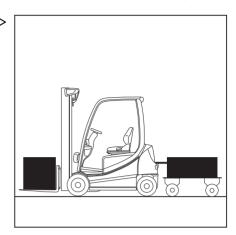
Towed load

A DANGER

There is an increased risk of accident when using a trailer.

Using a trailer changes the truck handling characteristics. When towing, operate the truck such that the trailer train can be safely driven and braked at all times. The maximum permissible speed when towing is 5 km/h.

- Do not exceed the permissible speed of 5 km/h.
- Do **not** couple the truck in front of rail vehicles.
- The truck must not be used to push any kind of trolley.
- It must be possible to drive and brake at all times.



A CAUTION

Risk of damage to components!

The maximum towed load for occasional towing is the rated capacity specified on the nameplate. Overloading can lead to component damage on the truck. The sum of the actual towed load and the actual load on the fork must not exceed the rated capacity. If the towed load present corresponds to the rated capacity of the truck, it is not permitted to transport a load on the fork at the same time. The load can be distributed between the fork and the trailer.

- Check the load distribution and adjust it to correspond to the rated capacity.
- Observe the permissible rigidity value of the tow coupling.

A CAUTION

Risk of damage to components!

The maximum towed load only applies when towing unbraked trailers on a level surface (maximum deviation +/- 1%) and on firm ground. The towed load must be reduced if towing on gradients. If necessary, notify the authorised service centre of the application conditions. The service centre will provide the required data.

Inform the authorised service centre.

A CAUTION

Risk of damage to components!

A support load is not permitted.

 Do not use trailers with tillers supported by the tow coupling.



This truck is suitable for the occasional towing of trailers. If the truck is equipped with a towing device, this occasional towing must not exceed 2% of the daily operating time. The manufacturer must be consulted if the truck is to be used for towing on a more regular basis.

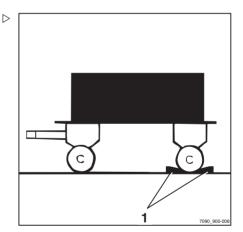
Coupling pin in the counterweight Coupling the trailer

A DANGER

Risk to life if the truck rolls away

If you briefly leave the truck to couple it or uncouple it, there is a risk of fatal injury caused by the truck rolling away and running you over.

- Apply the parking brake.
- Lower the fork to the ground.
- Switch off the truck. Remove the switch key or block access.
- Take measures to prevent the trailer from rolling away, e.g. using wedges (1).





Push the coupling pin (1) down, turn the pin by 90° and pull it out.



NOTE

Exceptions for the RX20-14C and RX20-16C: Turn the coupling pin (1) by 90° and pull it out.

- Adjust the height of the tiller.

A DANGER

People can become trapped between the truck and the trailer.

When coupling, ensure that there are no persons present between the truck and the trailer.

- Slowly move the truck backwards.
- By moving the truck backwards, introduce the tiller into the recess (2) in the counterweight.



Risk of accident due to damaged or lost coupling components!

If the coupling pin or securing bush is lost or damaged during towing, the trailer will become loose and uncontrollable

- Only use original coupling pins that have been checked.
- Ensure that the coupling pin is correctly inserted and secured.
- Insert the coupling pin into the counterweight, press downwards against the spring pressure and turn it by 90°.

The coupling pin is now locked in this position.



NOTE

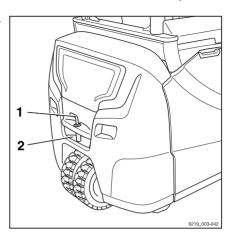
Exceptions for the RX20-14C and RX20-16C: Insert the coupling pin into the counterweight (1) and turn it by 90°.

Remove any items used to prevent the trailer from rolling away.

Uncoupling the trailer

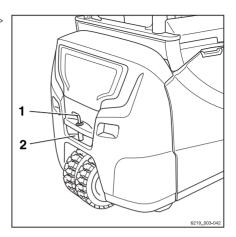
 Take measures to prevent the trailer from rolling away, e.g. using wedges.





- Push the coupling pin (2) down, turn the pin ⇒ by 90° and pull it out.
- Slowly move the truck forwards and guide the tow-bar eye completely out of the recess (2) in the counterweight.
- Insert the coupling pin into the counterweight, press downwards against the spring pressure and turn it by 90°.

The coupling pin is now locked in this position.



Tow coupling RO*244

A DANGER

People can become trapped between the truck and trailer.

When coupling, ensure that there are no persons present between the truck and the trailer.

A DANGER

Never jack up the truck on the tow coupling or use it for crane lifting. The tow coupling is not designed for this and could be deformed or damaged. This could cause the truck to fall, with potentially fatal consequences!

- Use the tow coupling only for towing.
- For jacking up and crane loading, use only the designated lifting points.

A DANGER

The tow coupling is not designed for support loads and could be deformed or destroyed. This could cause the supported load to fall, with potentially fatal consequences!

The tow coupling should be subjected only to horizontal loads, i.e. the tiller must be horizontal.



A DANGER

If you briefly leave the truck to couple or uncouple the trailer, there is a risk to life caused by the truck rolling away and running you over.

- Apply the parking brake.
- Lower the forks to the ground.
- Switch off the key switch and remove the key.

A WARNING

Never reach between the coupling pins and the towing jaws. If the component moves suddenly there is a risk of injury!

- To release the coupling pin, actuate the corresponding lever or use a suitable device (e.g. assembly lever).
- When not in use, close the automatic tow coupling.

WARNING

Risk of damage due to component collision.

A truck with tow coupling needs more room for manoeuvring due to its overhang. The tow coupling can damage the racking or the tow coupling itself when manoeuvring. If there is a collision with the tow coupling, check the tow coupling for damage such as cracks. A damaged tow coupling must not be used again.

- Always manoeuvre carefully and with sufficient room
- In the case of a collision, check the tow coupling for damage.
- Replace tow coupling if damaged, if necessary contact the authorised service centre.

A WARNING

Risk of damage to the tow bar eye or tiller!

Due to the truck's rear wheel steering, the side slewing angle of the tiller may not be adequate. The coupling or the tiller may be damaged! The tow bar eye of the tiller must fit the tow coupling in terms of shape and size.

- Ensure that the tow bar eye and tiller fit correctly.
- Avoid sharp cornering.
- Exercise care when travelling and manoeuvring in reverse.



WARNING

Risk of component damage if the tiller in the tow coupling is tilted!

The tiller should be kept as horizontal as possible when towing. This ensures that the rotation range is sufficient at the top and bottom. The authorised service centre can adjust the assembly height for the tow coupling to the tiller height if necessary.

- Make sure that the tiller is level.
- To change the coupling height, contact the authorised service centre



When manoeuvring in restricted areas, take into account the projection of the coupling.

Coupling the trailer



Tow coupling RO*244 is intended for a towbar eye in accordance with DIN 74054 (bore diameter 40 mm) or DIN 8454 (bore diameter 35 mm).

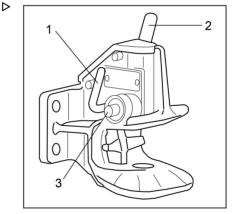
- Take measures to prevent the trailer from rolling away, e.g. using wedges.
- Adjust the tow bar eye of the tiller so that it is at the centre of the towing jaws.
- Push the hand lever (2) upwards until it snaps into place.

The tow coupling is opened.

A CAUTION

When being coupled, the tow-bar eye must engage in the middle of the coupling jaw. Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the coupling jaw or to the tow-bar eye!

- Ensure that the tow-bar eye enters the coupling jaw centrally.
- Move the truck back slowly until the tow bar eye is inserted centrally into the coupling jaw of the tow coupling and the coupling pin engages.







NOTE

The coupling pin is correctly engaged if the control pin (3) does not protrude out of its guide.

A DANGER

If the coupling pin drops out during towing, the trailer will work loose and can no longer be controlled. Risk of accident!

The control pin (3) must not protrude out of its guide.

- Ensure that the coupling pin is engaged correctly.

If the coupling pin is not correctly engaged:

- Remove any items used to prevent the trailer from rolling away.
- Move the truck with the trailer forwards approx.
 1 m and then move it back slightly.
- On the coupling pin, check again that the control pin does not protrude out of its guide.
- Remove any items used to prevent the trailer from rolling away.
- Tow the trailer.

Closing the coupling



Risk of injury from hand becoming trapped!

Do not reach into the coupling pin area. If, for example, a tow rope is to be secured in the tow coupling, only actuate the tow coupling via the closing lever (1).

 Press the closing lever (1) downwards as far as it will go.

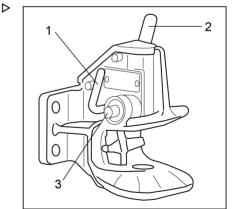
The tow coupling is closed.

Uncoupling the trailer

- Take measures to prevent the trailer from rolling away, e.g. using wedges.
- Push the hand lever (2) upwards until it snaps into place.

The tow coupling is opened.

 Slowly drive the truck forwards until the towbar eye and towing jaws are disconnected.





- Close the tow coupling by actuating the closing lever (1).



To protect the lower coupling pin bush against contamination, always keep the tow coupling closed.

Towing trailers

- Drivers who are towing a trailer for the first time must practise driving with a trailer in a suitable area.
- When passing through narrow road areas (entrances, gates etc.), observe the dimensions of the trailer and load.
- When towing multiple trailers, ensure a sufficient minimum distance to fixed installations when turning and cornering.

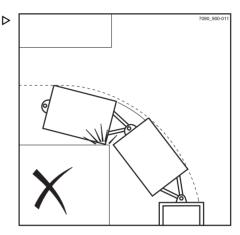
The permissible length of the trailer trains depends on the roadways to be driven and may need to be determined during the test drive.

It is the responsibility of the operating company to instruct the drivers regarding the permissible number of trailers and, where required. any additional speed reductions on individual sections of the route.



NOTE

Please observe the definition of the following responsible persons: "operating company" and "driver".





Cold store application

Cold store application

The truck is suitable for use in cold stores. Cold store equipment with low-temperature hydraulic oil may be required.

The truck is equipped for two different types of application.

The cold store symbol indicates the variant with cold store equipment that uses low-temperature hydraulic oil.

The display-operating unit is heated in this variant.

As another variant, the truck can be equipped with a driver's cab with a heating system.

Types of application

There are two different types of cold store application for the truck, distinguished by two different temperature ranges.

- 1 Constant use in the temperature range down to -5°C, short-term use at temperatures down to -10°C.
 - Operation possible with standard equipment and standard hydraulic oil.
- 2 Alternating between indoor use down to -32°C and outdoor use up to +25°C, briefly up to +40°C.
 - Operation possible only with cold store equipment and low-temperature hydraulic oil.



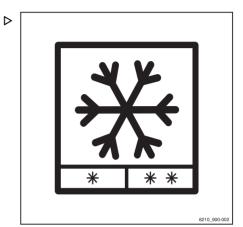
When changing to a different type of hydraulic oil, the authorised service centre must adjust the parameters of the truck control unit.

Operation

A WARNING

Risk of injury!

If condensation water freezes in the cold store, do not try to free parts that have become stuck with your hands.





Cold store application

▲ WARNING

Risk of accident due to restricted operational readiness!

At very low temperatures, the display-operating unit requires a longer period of time to reach operational readiness. The truck is not ready for operation during this time

This status is shown in the display as follows:

STILL *

 Only use the drive direction switch to perform emergency driving in an emergency. Refer to the section entitled "Emergency driving via the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever" in the chapter entitled "Procedure in emergencies".

A CAUTION

Changing from a cold internal temperature to a warm outside temperature may result in the formation of condensation water. This water may freeze on re-entry to the cold store, blocking moving parts of the truck.

It is essential that close attention is paid to the duration of deployment in the different temperature ranges for both types of application.

Before being used in the cold store, the truck must be dry and warmed up.

The truck must not leave the cold store area for more than 10 minutes. By adhering to this rule, condensation water will not have time to form.

If the truck stays outside for more than 10 minutes, it must remain there at least until the condensation water has drained away and the truck has dried off. Depending on the weather, this will take at least 30 minutes.



NOTE

During the warm-up phase, the hydraulic power is limited to load program "1".

- To ensure operational safety, drive the truck for approximately 5 minutes and actuate the brake several times.
- Actuate all hydraulic lifting functions several times.

This warm-up phase is necessary to ensure that the oil reaches the operating temperature.

 Always park the truck outside the cold store.



Cold store application

A CAUTION

Risk of component damage!

The lead-acid batteries must not be left in the cold store overnight without power uptake or charging.

 Charge the battery outside the cold store and operate the truck using a replacement battery.

Using batteries in the cold store

To compensate for the reduction in capacity at low temperatures, it is advisable to use lead-acid batteries with the maximum nominal capacity in the respective battery dimensions for the truck series.

Electric trucks must not be parked in a cold area for any longer than necessary. This also applies to unused batteries. The charging station and the parking area for trucks and batteries must be at normal room temperature (not below 10°C). Charging is extremely slow at low temperatures. At temperatures below 10°C, the battery cannot be fully charged with the usual charging parameters.

- Charge the battery fully before each shift.
- During the gassing phase, always top up with distilled water.

The distilled water will mix with the battery acid so that it does not freeze.

Water top-up systems must not be used at temperatures below 0°C, as this could cause the systems and the water present in the hose lines to freeze

The battery voltage when discharged is thus generally lower at low temperatures. The final discharged voltage is reached earlier, i.e. the capacity is lower.



Display messages

Behaviour when the explosion-protection warning lights are illuminated



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

During operation, the temperatures and insulation values of various components are monitored by sensors. The explosion-protection warning lights indicate when limit values have been reached.

If dangerous limit values are detected, the truck control unit automatically shuts down the drive unit. This automatic emergency shutdown indicates a serious malfunction.

- Do **not** operate the truck if the explosion-protection warning light is illuminated
- Inform the safety officer.
- Notify the authorised service centre.



Risk of injury from automatic emergency shutdown!

The driving functions of the truck are switched off as soon as one of the explosion-protection warning lights (1, 2) illuminates.

The hydraulic functions of the truck are switched off as soon as the explosion protection warning light(3) illuminates.

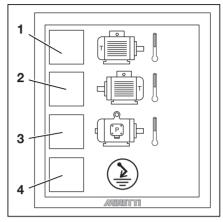
The driving functions of the truck are switched off as soon as the explosion-protection warning light (4) illuminates.

Stop the truck safely.

This section describes the actions required when an explosion-protection warning light is flashing.

As a general rule:

Only the safety officer may decide whether the truck can be removed from the potentially explosive area. The cause of the automatic emergency shutdown must be determined and remedied by the authorised service centre. The safety officer must order the reset button to be pressed.



- 4 (2) Insulation warning





NOTE

Observe the "Actuating the reset button after automatic emergency shutdown" section in the chapter entitled "Procedure in emergencies".

Traction motor and pump motor monitoring

The maximum surface temperature of the right-hand traction motor has been reached

No driving functions are available.

2 Surface temperature of the left-hand traction motor

The maximum surface temperature of the left-hand traction motor has been reached.

No driving functions are available.

The maximum surface temperature of the pump motor has been reached.

No hydraulic functions are available.

- Set down the load
- Actuate the reset button and drive the truck out of the potentially explosive area.
- Safely bring the truck to a standstill.
- Allow the overheated motor to cool down.
- If one of the warning lights (1-3) remains illuminated after the motor has cooled down, notify the authorised service centre.



NOTE

The insulation warning (4) explosion-protection light (2) is not present in category 3 trucks.

Insulation monitoring

- 4 (a) Insulation warning There is an insulation fault. No driving functions are available.
- Switch off the truck immediately.
- If necessary, perform emergency lowering of the load and set down the load.



- Tow the truck out of the potentially explosive area.
- See the section entitled "Towing" in the chapter entitled "Operating in special operating situations".

Actuating the reset button is prohibited in the event of an insulation fault.

- Notify the authorised service centre.



NOTE

For further instruction relating to explosionprotection warning lights, see the chapter entitled "Operating and display elements", section "Explosion-protection warning lights".

Messages

Certain truck conditions may cause event-related messages to be shown on the display of the display-operating unit.

There are messages about operation and messages about the truck. If a message about operation appears, the display-operating unit will prompt you to perform an action. A message about the truck means that the truck control unit has detected a fault.

The following types of message may appear individually or in combination:

- · A graphic symbol
- The message
- A code consisting of a letter and a four-digit number

The message is displayed until either the cause has been corrected or the message has been acknowledged.

In the case of successive events, the respective messages are displayed one after another on the display.

Messages about operation

If messages about operation appear on the display-operating unit, an action must be performed.



Code	Shown on display	Cause/action
	Log in a	The access authorisation (variant) is preventing the use of the truck Enable the access authorisation.
	Battery empty 🗓	The battery charge state is too low for truck use Charge the battery.
V6905 V6985 V6986 V6987 V7038	Battery: emergency operation 🗓	The battery charge state is low. The truck experiences a power reduction Charge the battery.
	Check the battery 🗀	This message about the on-board charger is triggered by different causes: A possible fault in the electrical connection between the battery and the on-board charger. The fuse for the on-board charger on the truck or the on-board charger is defective. The battery has a fault. The battery has exceeded its service life. The battery is incorrectly configured Contact the authorised service centre.
V6962	Check battery type 🗓	This message about the on-board charger is triggered by different causes: The battery is defective. The wrong battery is connected Contact the authorised service centre.
	Check battery acid lev- el	The acid level of the lead-acid battery is too low Check the acid level of the battery. Correct if necessary.
V6965	Battery temperature high ⊡	The charging process has been automatically terminated due to the battery temperature being too high. This message about the on-board charger is triggered by different causes: The truck was heavily used before charging and the battery has become very hot. The ambient temperature is too high and the battery cannot cool down. The charging profile is configured incorrectly. - Allow the battery to cool down Allow the battery temperature symbol on the display-operating unit to flash. Change the "Start" symbol to "Pause".
	Check battery door sensor T	The battery door sensor does not detect that the battery door is closed. - Make sure that the lock on the battery door is engaged. - If the message continues to appear, please contact the authorised service centre.



Code	Shown on display	Cause/action
	Close the battery door	The battery door is open. The truck will only move at a reduced speed. - Close the battery door.
	Battery too cold 🗓	The lithium-ion battery is too cold. - Move the truck to a warmer environment.
	Release brake pedal !	The desired action is only possible after releasing the brake pedal. - Release the brake pedal.
	Curve Speed Control Active !	Curve Speed Control reduces the curve speed No action is required.
	Data transmission required !	If the truck is equipped with this variant, data transmission must be carried out See the associated instructions.
	Diagnostic mode active Δ	This message is not displayed during normal operation. - Contact the authorised service centre.
	Set pump speed 🖰	If an attachment is fitted and no pump speed has been set for its direction of movement, this message will be displayed. - Set the revolution speed with the access authorisation.
V7059	Electrolyte circulation not working 🛆	The electrolyte circulation pump is not working. The charging process is continued without electrolyte circulation. Intermediate charging can cause damage to the battery. - Cancel the charging process. - Contact the authorised service centre.
	Development mode active Δ	This message is not displayed during normal operation Contact the authorised service centre.
	Drive unit blocked !	This message follows earlier messages, e.g. overtemperature. It is not possible to drive the truck. - Wait until the message disappears. If necessary, switch the truck off and on again. - If the message continues to appear, please contact the authorised service centre.
	Sit on the driver's seat 4	The truck is equipped with a seat contact switch. If the driver's seat is not occupied, the drives are disabled Sit on the driver's seat.
	Secure the truck against rolling away Δ	If the truck control unit detects a movement of the truck without the accelerator pedal being actuated, this message appears. - Apply the parking brake. - If necessary, secure the truck with wedges so that it cannot roll away.



Code	Shown on display	Cause/action
	Switch off truck? (10)	If the truck is switched off without having first applied the parking brake, this message appears. - Apply the parking brake.
	Switch off truck anyway? (10)	If the truck is to be switched off although the parking brake is not applied, this message appears. - Secure the truck with wedges so that it cannot roll away.
	Truck stop: Access system 🕯	The access authorisation (variant) is preventing the use of the truck. This can be caused by entry of an incorrect code. - Enable the access authorisation.
	Fault: Battery 🔧	The truck control unit detects an error in the lith- ium-ion battery Switch the truck off and on again If the message continues to appear, please contact the authorised service centre.
	Fault: Battery 🛆	The truck control unit detects an error in the lith- ium-ion battery Switch the truck off and on again If the message continues to appear, please contact the authorised service centre.
V7074 V7051	Mains voltage error ▲	This message about the on-board charger is triggered by different causes: The fuse for the power supply has been triggered. There is a defect in the power supply. There is a power failure Re-establish the power supply. When the power supply has been re-established, the charging process resumes automatically.
	Apply parking brake (10)	If the truck control unit detects a movement of the truck without the accelerator pedal being actuated, this message appears. - Apply the parking brake.
	Release parking brake (1)	The desired action is only possible after releasing the parking brake Release the brake pedal.
	Check parking brake Δ	The truck control unit detects that the braking force of the electric parking brake is reducing. - Secure the truck with wedges so that it cannot roll away. - Contact your authorised service centre.



Code	Shown on display	Cause/action
	Parking brake cannot be applied (0)	The parking brake cannot be applied due to a technical fault. - Apply the parking brake according to the section entitled "Malfunctions in the electric parking brake". - Secure the truck with wedges so that it cannot roll away.
	Parking brake cannot be applied 4	The parking brake cannot be applied due to a technical fault. - Apply the parking brake according to the section entitled "Malfunctions in the electric parking brake". - Secure the truck with wedges so that it cannot roll away.
	Apply parking brake via button(0)	The electric parking brake is not applying automatically Apply the parking brake by pressing the button.
	Release parking brake via button (0)	The electric parking brake cannot be released automatically Release the parking brake by pressing the button.
	Parking brake: Mainte- nance required \	The truck control unit detects that the electric parking brake needs servicing. - Secure the truck with wedges so that it cannot roll away. - Contact your authorised service centre.
	Lower forks !	This message appears e.g. for precision load measurement (variant). - Lower the fork carriage.
	Lift height restriction active !	The lift height restriction (variant) is switched on Observe the heights of ceilings and entrances.
	Close cab door or seat belt !	If the seat belt is not fastened and the cab door (variant) is not closed, the driving speed is limited to 4 km/h and this message appears. - Close the cab door or fasten the seat belt.
	Close cab door !	If the cab door is opened while the truck is in motion, the truck brakes automatically to a speed of 4 km/h. - Close the cab door.
	Configuration: Please wait (This message is not displayed during normal operation Contact the authorised service centre.



Code	Shown on display	Cause/action
	Remove charging cable 'C	If the truck is equipped with an integrated charger (variant) and charging is complete, this message appears. - Disconnect the charger plug from the plug connection on the truck.
A5902 V6954	Re-insert charging plug G	The charging button on the truck plug of the charging cable has been held down too long. - Pull the truck plug out and re-insert it after approx. 2 seconds. The charger starts a new charging process.
	Unsent data will be overwritten !	If the truck is equipped with this variant, data transmission must be carried out See the associated instructions.
	Emergency off active •	If the truck is switched on and an operating device is actuated when the emergency off switch is pressed, this message appears. The desired action is only possible once the emergency off switch is unlocked. - Unlock the emergency off switch.
	Emergency operation !	If the truck experiences a power reduction, for example due to a battery charge state that is too low, this message appears. - Observe the previous message.
		The drive direction switch on the hydraulic operating device has failed. Emergency driving is possible; to do so:
	Emerg. direct. via drive direction lever ⚠	- Move the drive direction selection lever on the travel direction selector and indicator module to the desired direction of travel and hold the drive direction selection lever in position. - Drive the truck to a safe area and park it safely. - Contact the authorised service centre.
	Emergency drive direction via drive direction switch △	The drive direction switch on the travel direction selector and indicator module has failed. Emergency driving is possible; to do so: - Set the drive direction switch on the hydraulic operating device to the desired direction of travel and hold the drive direction switch in position. - Drive the truck to a safe area and park it safely. - Contact the authorised service centre.
V7001 V7062	On-board charger power reduction, service required ♠	There is a fault with the charging program. The charging process is performed with reduced power. - Contact the authorised service centre.



Code	Shown on display	Cause/action
	Parameter calibration (?	This message is not displayed during normal operation Contact the authorised service centre.
	Seatbelt sequence !	If the configured sequence for applying the restraint systems is not observed, this message appears. - Fasten the seat belt.
	Close restraint system 6	If, for example, the truck is equipped with a bracket as a restraint system and the accelerator pedal is actuated, this message appears. The truck will not move. - Close the restraint system.
	Shaking blocked — overload Δ	If the shaking function (variant) is overloaded by an excessive load, this message appears. The shake function will remain unavailable as long as this situation persists.
	Switching on the key switch !	If the hazard warning system (variant) is switched on when the truck is switched off, the display-operating unit remains active. Then, when a truck function is called up, this message appears. - Switch on the truck.
	Shock event detected !	If the truck control unit detects a very strong acceleration or deceleration, e.g. in the event of an accident, this message appears.
	Service required 🔨	If the maintenance interval has been reached, this message appears Contact the authorised service centre.
	Service mode active Δ	This message is not displayed during normal operation Contact the authorised service centre.
	Close seat belt #	If the seat belt is not fastened, the driving speed is limited to 4 km/h and this message appears Fasten the seat belt.
	Are you sure? ?	If the display-operating unit is expecting confirmation from the driver, this message appears Continue with or cancel the input prompt.
	Software update Please wait (A	The on-board charger software is being updated. The update is complete when the charging process ends. - Wait until the charging process begins automatically.
	Enable sprint mode !	If the battery is charged after locking sprint mode or a normal temperature is reached, this message appears. Sprint mode can be used again once the truck has been restarted.



Code	Shown on display	Cause/action
	Sprint mode blocked — battery []	If the battery experiences under-voltage or too high a temperature, this message appears. Sprint mode is no longer available. - Observe the previous message.
	Sprint mode blocked — temperature	If the temperature at the drive units is too high, this message appears. Sprint mode is no longer available. - Observe the previous message.
	Dead man switch 🛆	If the truck is equipped with a foot switch, and a truck function is called up when the foot switch is not actuated, this message appears. - Actuate the foot switch.
	Overload 🕹	With the "overload protection" variant, this message appears if an excessive load is picked up Set down the load.
	Battery overtemperature 🗓	If the truck control unit detects an excessive battery temperature, this message appears Allow the truck to cool down.
	Working mode active Δ	This message is not displayed during normal operation Contact the authorised service centre.
	Access expired !	If the feet term to an all the title and all the
	Access denied !	If the truck is equipped with this variant, this message might appear.
	Access expires in < 1 month !	- See the associated instructions.
	Access expires in < 1 day !	
	Access expires in < 1 week !	If the truck is equipped with this variant, this
	Access expires in < 2 days !	message might appear See the associated instructions.
	Access expires in < 3 days !	

Messages about the truck

If messages with a code appear on the display-operating unit, the truck control unit has detected a fault. The message with a code is stored in the message list until the cause of the message is corrected. The saved messages can be called up from the "message list".



If, for example, the reflector or the lift-height sensor is contaminated, it usually helps to clean these components.

- Switch the truck off and on again.
- If the message still appears, please contact the authorised service centre.

The messages are sorted in ascending order according to their code:

Code	Shown on display	Description/possible solution
A2305	Fault: Control unit 🛆	Collective fault on the control unit
A2899	Monitoring ⚠	Collective fault of the process monitoring
A3027	Fault: Seat switch	The seat switch does not open - Stand up from the driver's seat and sit down again.
A3035	Fault: Brake fluid (1)	Brake fluid switch
A3143	Check lift height sensor and reflector Δ	Lift-height sensor measurement error
A5934	Re-insert charging plug G	Error on the charging connector detection - Disconnect the connection assembly and re- connect it.
A5961	Battery overtemperature II	Overtemperature of the lithium battery - Switch off the truck and leave it to cool down.
A5962	Battery too cold []	Insufficient lithium battery temperature - Move the truck to a warmer environment.
A5986	Fault: Control unit 🛆	General battery current measurement
A5993	Fault: Internal charger	On-board charger collective fault
A6502	Overtemp.: Parking brake (10)	Electric parking brake detects overtemperature
A6510	Fault: Parking brake (1)	Electric parking brake detects fatal fault
A6511	Fault: Parking brake (1)	Brake cannot release
A6512	Fault: Parking brake (10)	Brake cannot apply
	Error A	General fault



Emergency shutdown

▲ WARNING

No electric braking assistance is available if the emergency off switch or the battery isolating switch has been actuated.

Actuating the emergency off switch (1) disconnects the drives from the power supply. Actuating the battery isolating switch (2) disconnects the entire truck from the power supply.

The truck will not be held on a slope by the regenerative brake.

- To brake, actuate the service brake.

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is disconnected while the truck is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens the service life of the contacts.

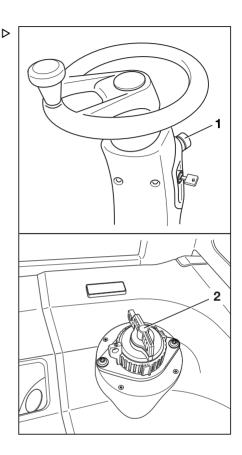
- Switch off the truck before the battery male connector is disconnected.
- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the truck is switched on, except in an emergency.

In an emergency, all functions of the truck can be shut down:

 Press the emergency off switch (1) or turn the battery isolating switch (2) to "OFF".

In drive mode, pressing the emergency off switch (1) or turning the battery isolating switch (2) has the following effects:

- No reduction in truck speed when the accelerator pedal is released, according to the drive programme selected. The truck will coast to a stop.
- The electric brake does not function during the first part of brake pedal travel:
 - To decelerate the truck with the mechanical brake, the brake pedal has to be pressed down further.
- The truck can only be held on a slope using the mechanical brake, not the electric brake.





- No power steering effect; the steering forces are increased by the remaining emergency steering function
- The "Curve Speed Control" system (automatic reduction in truck speed when cornering) does not function. Brake the truck using the service brake.
- · The hydraulic functions are not available.

The effects of pressing the emergency off switch (1) or turning the battery isolating switch (2) differ as follows:

Emergency off switch pressed	Battery isolating switch set to "OFF"
The lights work	The lights do not work
The display-operating unit works The message EMER- GENCY OFF ac- tive ♣ appears on the display-operating unit.	The display-operating unit does not work

Actuating the reset button after automatic emergency shutdown



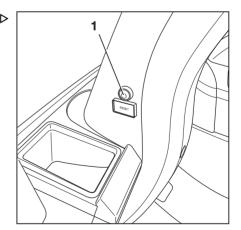
A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

During operation, the current temperatures, wear values and insulation values of various components are monitored by sensors.

If dangerous limit values are detected, the truck controller automatically shuts down the drive units. This automatic emergency shutdown indicates a serious malfunction.

- Remove the truck from the potentially explosive area.
- The cause of the automatic emergency shutdown must be determined by the authorised service centre and remedied.







A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Only the safety officer is authorised to order the reset button to be pressed.

They must use a suitable measuring device to determine that there is not a potentially explosive mixture of air in the area around the truck. Only then may the truck be driven out of the potentially explosive area.

A WARNING

Risk of injury from automatic emergency shutdown! If the truck controller automatically shuts down the drive units, no drive functions are available.

- Stop the truck with the service brake.



NOTE

It is essential that the safety officer gives approval to the following operation!

In an emergency (e.g. if the truck stops on train tracks), the truck can be immediately moved out of a danger area despite the automatic emergency shutdown having been triggered.

 To do this, push and hold the reset button (1) and simultaneously actuate the accelerator pedal.

The truck will move in the preselected drive direction.

- Drive the truck out of the danger area.
- Notify the authorised service centre.



NOTE

Only push the reset button without consulting the safety officer in the event of acute danger. Drive the truck out of the danger area (non-potentially explosive area)!



Procedure if truck tips over

A DANGER

If the truck tips over, the driver could fall out and slide under the truck with potentially fatal consequences. There is a risk to life.

Failure to comply with the limits specified in these operating instructions, e.g. driving on unacceptably steep gradients or failing to adjust speed when cornering, can cause the truck to tip over. If the truck starts to tip over, do not leave the truck under any circumstances. This increases the danger of being hit by the truck.

- Do not release your seat belt.
- Never jump off the truck.
- You must adhere to the rules of behaviour if the truck tips over.

Rules of behaviour if truck tips over:

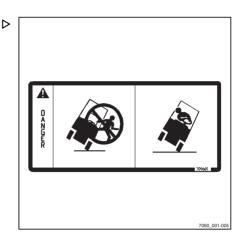
- Hold onto the steering wheel with your hands.
- Brace your feet in the footwell.
- Bend your upper body over the steering wheel.
- Bend your body against the direction of the fall

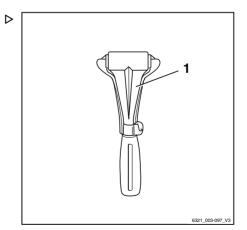
Emergency hammer

The emergency hammer is used to rescue the driver if he is shut inside the cab in a hazard-ous situation, for example if the truck has toppled over and the cab door cannot be opened.

Single-pane safety glass can be struck relatively safely using the emergency hammer in order for the driver to escape or be rescued from the danger area.

Using the emergency hammer







A WARNING

When glass is smashed there is a risk of injury caused by glass splinters!

When the cab glass is smashed, splinters of glass can shoot into the face and cause damage to skin and eyes through cuts. When a pane of glass is smashed, the face should be turned away and covered with the crook of the free arm.

- Protect the face when smashing a pane of glass.
- Pull the emergency hammer out of its support mounting at the handle.
- Using one of the two metal tips on the head of the emergency hammer, hit the pane of glass with force until it breaks.

Emergency driving via the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever

Under certain conditions, the emergency driving function can be used to remove the truck from a hazardous area.

As the truck can only be moved to a limited extent, this poses a risk of an accident.

This function is possible in the following situations:

- The drive direction switch on the operating device for the hydraulic functions has failed.
 The message Emerg. direct. via drive direction lever appears.
- The drive direction selection lever on the travel direction selector and indicator module (variant) has failed.

The message Emerg. direct. via drive direction switch \triangle appears.

 The temperature of the display-operating unit is too low.

This status is shown in the display as follows:



· The display-operating unit has failed.

To perform emergency driving, proceed as follows:

- Sit on the driver's seat.



- Fasten the seat belt
- Release the parking brake.
- Push the drive direction switch/drive direction selection lever in the desired drive direction.
- Press the accelerator pedal.
- Drive the truck to a safe area and park the truck safely.
- If the error occurs frequently, contact the authorised service centre.

Emergency lowering

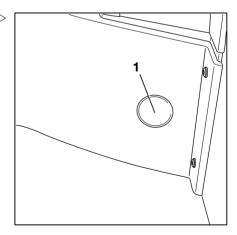
If the hydraulic controller fails whilst a load is raised, emergency lowering can be performed. An emergency lowering screw designed for this purpose is located on the valve block.



A DANGER

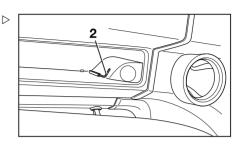
There is a risk to life from falling loads or from truck components being lowered.

- Do not walk beneath the raised load.
- Adhere to the steps detailed below.
- Remove the lid (1) on the right-hand side of the footwell panelling near the accelerator pedal.

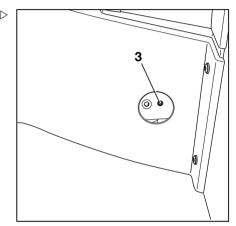




 Remove the hexagon socket wrench (2) from the compartment on the right next to the driver's seat.



 Using the hexagon socket wrench, turn the emergency lowering screw (3) a maximum of 1.5 revolutions to loosen it.



WARNING

The load is lowered!

Unscrewing the emergency lowering screw regulates the lowering speed.

- Observe the list of points below.

The following applies:

- · Tightening torque:
 - Max. 2.5 Nm
- Unscrewing the emergency lowering screw slightly:

The load is lowered slowly

 Unscrewing the emergency lowering screw further:

The load is lowered quickly

After lowering:

- Re-tighten the emergency lowering screw.
- Return the hexagon socket wrench to the support mounting in the compartment.
- Refit the lid.

A DANGER

If the truck is operated while the hydraulic controller is blocked, there is an increased risk of accidents.

- After the emergency lowering procedure, have the malfunction rectified.
- Notify the authorised service centre.



Emergency actuation of the electric parking brake (variant)



A DANGER

There is a risk of fatal injury from being run over if the truck rolls away.

The truck can roll away when the parking brake is released.

- In an emergency, secure the truck with wedges on the downhill-facing side to prevent it from rolling away.
- Manually release the parking brake only when the truck is at a standstill with the fork lowered.

The electric parking brake can be released and applied via an emergency actuation mechanism.

The electric parking brake must be manually actuated under the following conditions:

- The electric parking brake is not operating properly.
- The truck is being transported without a battery.



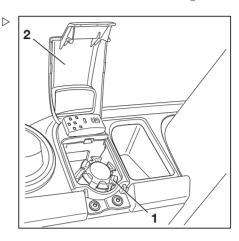
NOTE

If the parking brake is released via the emergency actuation mechanism, it is possible to drive the truck at a low speed.

- The truck can be moved out of the hazardous situation or to the repair location.
- Driving with a faulty parking brake requires the driver to be especially vigilant.



- Lift the cover (2) and fold it up.
- Pull out the hand wheel (1).



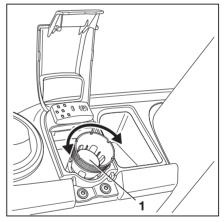
Turn the hand wheel (1) round and then attach it.

Releasing the parking brake ←(P)→

 To release the parking brake, push down the hand wheel (1) and gently turn it anticlockwise until the lower limit stop is reached.

Applying the parking brake →(P)←

- To apply the parking brake, push down the hand wheel (1) and turn it clockwise until the force required to do so increases significantly and the truck is held securely.
- Remove the hand wheel (1), turn it round and then insert it again.
- Fold the cover down again.
- If the condition of the parking brake cannot be reliably determined, secure the truck with wedges.





Towing

Safety information



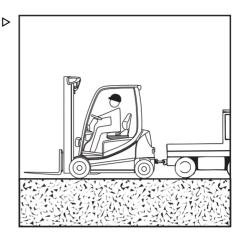
▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion through spark formation!

If the truck has to be towed out of a potentially explosive area, the towing vehicle and tow bar used must comply with explosion-protection regulations.

Unapproved tow bars can lead to spark formation. In potentially explosive areas, only tow bars with plastic sheathed ends may be used. This prevents spark formation at the connections.

 Ensure that the towing vehicle and the tow bar comply with the explosion-protection regulations.



A DANGER

The brake system on the towing vehicle may fail. Risk of accident!

If the brake system of the towing vehicle is not adequately sized, the vehicle may not brake safely or the brakes may fail. The towing vehicle must be able to absorb the pulling and braking forces from the unbraked towed load (total actual weight of the truck).

 Check the pulling and braking forces of the towing vehicle.

A DANGER

The truck could drive into the towing vehicle when the towing vehicle brakes. Risk of accident!

If a rigid connection has not been used for bidirectional power transmission during towing, the truck may drive into the towing vehicle when the towing vehicle brakes. For safety reasons, only a tested tow bar may be used.

Use a tested tow bar.



A DANGER

There is a risk of fatal injury during manoeuvring!

People can be crushed between the truck and towing vehicle during manoeuvring.

The towing vehicle may only be manoeuvred and the tow bar may only be attached using a second person as a guide. This ensures that the driver of the towing vehicle and the mechanic attaching the tow bar are aware of possible risks.

- Only manoeuvre with a guide.

A WARNING

Risk of accident if the hydraulics fail!

If the hydraulics fail, the power steering will no longer work. The steering will be stiff.

 Select a towing speed that allows the truck and towing vehicle to be braked and controlled effectively at all times.

A WARNING

Risk of accident due to unguided truck!

If the towed truck is not steered, the truck may veer out in an uncontrolled manner.

The truck being towed must also be steered by a driver.

The driver of the truck being towed must sit in the driver's seat and fasten the seat belt before towing.

- Use the available restraint systems.

A CAUTION

If the truck drive between the drive motor and the drive axle is not interrupted, the drive may be damaged.

 Set the drive direction switch to the neutral position



A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is disconnected while the truck is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts. which considerably shortens the service life of the contacts.

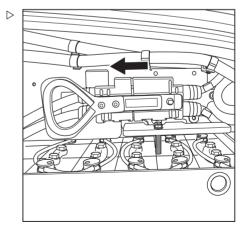
- Switch off the truck before the battery male connector is disconnected.
- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the truck is switched on, except in an emergency.

Procedure



As a general rule, a towing procedure out of a potentially explosive area must be approved by the safety officer.

- Set down the load and lower the fork arms close to the ground.
- Set the drive direction switch to the neutral position.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Switch off the truck.
- Disconnect the battery male connector.
- Check the pulling and braking forces of the towing vehicle.
- With the help of a guide, move the towing vehicle to the truck.
- Secure the tow bar to the tow coupling on the towing vehicle and the truck.
- Sit in the driver's seat in the truck being towed. Fasten the seat belt.
- Use the available restraint systems.
- Release the parking brake.
- Select a towing speed that allows the truck and towing vehicle to be braked and controlled at all times.
- Tow the truck out of the potentially explosive area





- After towing, secure the truck so that it cannot roll away, e.g. by applying the parking brake or by using wheel chocks.
- Remove the tow bar.



Connecting and disconnecting the battery male connector

Connecting the battery male connector



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

No work must be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas!

 Connect battery male connectors only outside of potentially explosive areas.

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is connected while the truck is switched on (under load), a transition spark will be produced. This transition spark can damage the contacts and considerably shorten the service life of the contacts.

- Do not connect the battery male connector with the truck switched on.
- Make sure that the truck is switched off before connecting the battery male connector.



A CAUTION

There is a risk of short circuit if the cables are damaged.

Do not crush the battery cable when closing the battery door.

 Ensure that the battery cable does not come into contact with the battery door.



Category 2 version



The category 2 and category 3 versions of the trucks have different battery male connectors. The specific features of the category 2 version are described here. The battery male connectors on the category 2 version are non-interchangeable.

- · The "positive" battery male connector (red marking) is routed through two grooves.
- The "negative" battery male connector (blue marking) is routed through one groove.
- Open the battery door.
- Loosen the screws (2).
- Connect the battery male connectors (2) by twisting them into the grooves (3) in the sockets (4).
- Tighten the screws (1) to secure the battery male connectors in place.

WARNING

Risk of accident!

The battery male connectors are only protected against disconnection when the screws (2) are tightened.

Otherwise, the battery male connectors may work loose during operation. If this happens, the power supply of the truck is interrupted and it is no longer possible to operate the truck.

- If necessary, connect the potential equalisation (5).

The potential equalisation point is marked with decal information (4).

- Close the battery door.



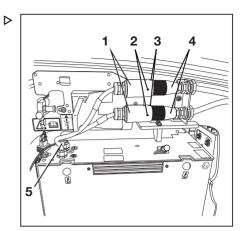
NOTE

The truck is not approved for use in potentially explosive areas if the battery male connectors are unsecured.

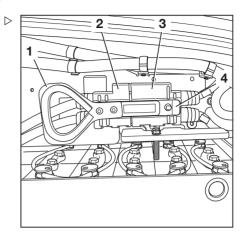
Category 3 version

- Open the battery door.





- Ensure that the battery male connector (2) and the plug connection (3) on the truck are dry, clean and free of foreign objects.
- Take hold of the battery male connector by its handle (1).
- Insert the battery male connector (2) into the plug connection (3) until the joining plate (4) clicks into place.
- Close the battery door.



Disconnect the battery male connector



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

No work must be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas!

 Disconnect battery male connectors only outside potentially explosive areas.

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is disconnected while the truck is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens the service life of the contacts.

- Switch off the truck before the battery male connector is disconnected.
- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the truck is switched on, except in an emergency.



Category 2 version



The category 2 and category 3 versions of the trucks have different battery male connectors. The specific features of the category 2 version are described here. The battery male connectors on the category 2 version are non-interchangeable.

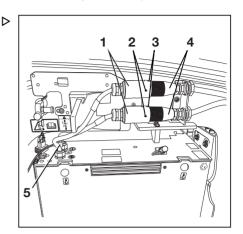
- The "positive" battery male connector (red marking) is routed through two grooves.
- The "negative" battery male connector (blue marking) is routed through one groove.
- Open the battery door.
- Loosen the screws (2).
- Disconnect the battery male connectors (2) from the sockets (3) by unscrewing the battery male connectors out of the grooves (4).
- Screw the screws (1) back in, so that they do not get lost.
- Before removing the battery also disconnect the potential equalisation (5).

The potential equalisation point is marked with decal information (4).

- Close the battery door.

Category 3 version

Open the battery door.



- Take hold of the battery male connector by its handle (1).
- Lift the joining plate (4).
- Pull out the battery male connector (2) from the plug connection (3) on the truck and set it down safely.

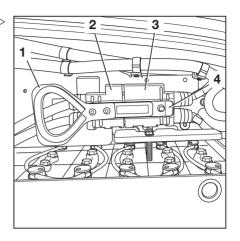


A CAUTION

There is a risk of short circuit if the cables are damaged.

Do not crush the battery cable when closing the battery door.

- Ensure that the battery cable does not come into contact with the battery door.
- Close the battery door.





Safety regulations for handling the battery



A DANGER

There is a risk of explosion if non-explosion-protected batteries are used!

Batteries intended for use in potentially explosive areas are designed for certain explosion groups, categories and temperature ranges. Batteries that do not comply with explosion-protection regulations can cause explosions in the surrounding atmosphere in potentially explosive areas!

Only batteries that are explosion-protected in accordance with applicable guidelines, referred to as ATEX batteries, may be used. The battery being used must match the permissible area of use of the truck.

- Only use explosion-protected batteries of the same type in accordance with the "Battery specifications" section
- Batteries may be checked only by a competent person.
- Observe the explosion-protection regulations.
- Compare the permissible operating areas of the truck and battery as listed on the respective nameplates.



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

When handling or charging batteries in potentially explosive areas, spark formation or overheating can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere. No work may be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas.

- Charge batteries only outside potentially explosive areas.
- National statutory provisions for the country of use must be followed when setting up and operating battery charging stations.





A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery charger!

Incorrect connection or incorrect operation of the charging station or the battery charger may result in damage to components.

- Follow the operating instructions for the charging station or battery charger and for the battery.
- Observe the following safety regulations when maintaining, charging and changing the battery.



NOTE

To simplify the description of the safety regulations, this section only refers to the "battery door". The safety regulations and instructions also apply to trucks with a battery cover. They apply 1:1.

Parking the truck securely

 If work is being performed on the battery, park the truck outside the potentially explosive areas.

The following points must be satisfied for the truck to be used:

- The battery male connectors must be connected and secured
- The battery door must be closed.

Maintenance personnel

Batteries may only be charged, maintained or replaced by properly trained personnel in accordance with the instructions from the manufacturers of the battery, battery charger and truck.

 Follow the handling instructions for the battery and the operating instructions for the battery charger.





▲ WARNING

Risk of crushing and shearing!

The battery is very heavy. There is a risk of serious injury if any parts of the body are caught under the battery.

There is a risk of injury if any parts of the body are wedged between the battery door and the edge of the chassis when the battery door is closed.

- Wear safety shoes when replacing the battery.
- Only close the battery door if there are no parts of the body between the battery door and the edge of the chassis.

The battery must only be replaced in accordance with the directions in these operating instructions.

 When charging and maintaining the battery, observe the manufacturer's maintenance instructions for the battery and the battery charger.

Fire protection measures



A DANGER

Risk of explosion due to flammable gases!

During charging, the battery releases a mixture of oxygen and hydrogen. This gas mixture (oxyhydrogen) is explosive and must not be ignited.

There must be no flammable materials or spark-forming operating materials within 2 m of either the truck when it is parked for charging or the battery charger

- When working with batteries, take the following safety precautions.
- Keep away from open flames and do not smoke.
- Ensure that work areas are adequately ventilated.
- Park the truck securely and switch it off.
- Disconnect the battery male connectors before charging and only when the truck and the battery charger are switched off.



- Keep the battery door open during charging.
- Do not place any metal objects on the battery.
- Fully open any protective structures (e.g. fabric-covered cab).
- Have fire extinguishing equipment ready.

Lifting accessories

A DANGER

Risk of accident!

The battery may fall from the lifting accessory. The lifting accessory may tip over and be damaged. If this happens, there is a risk to life and limb.

The battery must be removed only when the truck is on level, even ground with sufficient load capacity. The load capacity of the lifting accessory used (see operating instructions or nameplate) must at least match the battery weight (see battery identification plate).

- Check the load capacity of the lifting accessory.
- Remove the battery on suitable ground.

Battery weight and dimensions

A DANGER

Risk of tipping due to change in battery weight!

The battery weight and dimensions affect the stability of the truck. When replacing the battery, the weight ratios must not be changed. The battery weight must remain within the weight range specified on the nameplate.

- Do not remove or change the position of ballast weights.
- Note the battery weight.

Performing battery maintenance

The cell covers of the battery must be kept dry and clean. Do not open trays that have been sealed by the manufacturer.

Terminals and cable shoes must be clean, lightly coated with battery grease and screwed on tightly.

Neutralise any spilt battery acid immediately.



 For information on handling battery acid, see the "Battery acid" section in the chapter entitled "Safety regulations for handling consumables".

Damage to cables and battery male connectors

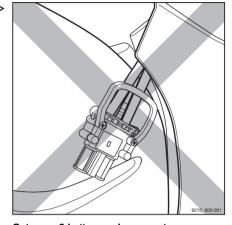


A CAUTION

There is a risk of short circuit if the cables are damaged.

Do not crush the battery cables when closing the battery door.

- Check the battery cables for damage.
- When removing and reinstalling the battery, ensure that the battery cables are not damaged.
- Ensure that the battery cables do not come into contact with the battery door.



Category-3 battery male connector

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is disconnected or connected while the truck is switched on or while the battery charger is under load, an electrical arc or a transition spark will be produced at the battery male connector. This can lead to erosion at the contacts and can considerably shorten the service life of the contacts.

- Switch off the truck or the battery charger before disconnecting or connecting the battery male connector.
- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while under load, except in an emergency.

Ventilation gap

The ventilation gaps between the battery door and the chassis are used for forced-air cooling of the battery compartment.

- Do not plug the ventilation gaps.
- If the battery door is deformed, contact the authorised service centre.



Maintaining the battery

A DANGER

Danger to life and limb!

 Observe the instructions in the chapter entitled "Safety regulations when handling the battery".

WARNING

Battery acid is toxic and corrosive!

 Observe the safety regulations in the chapter entitled "Battery acid".



NOTE

Battery maintenance is carried out in accordance with the battery manufacturer's operating instructions. The operating instructions for the battery charger must also be followed. Only the instructions that came with the battery charger are valid. If any of these instructions are missing, request the relevant instructions from the dealer.

The battery maintenance information is composed of the following sections: "Checking the status, acid level and acid density of the battery", "Checking the battery charge status", "Charging the lead-acid battery" and "Equalising charge to maintain the battery capacity".



Checking the battery condition, acid level and acid density



▲ WARNING

The electrolyte (diluted sulphuric acid) is poisonous and corrosive!



- Observe the safety regulations for handling battery acid; see the chapter entitled "Battery acid".
- Wear personal protective equipment (rubber gloves, apron and protection goggles).
- Rinse away spilt battery acid immediately using plenty of water.

A CAUTION

Improper handling of batteries can cause damage!

A competent person must check that the battery is in proper condition.

The tray cover interlock and connection assemblies must close properly. It must only be possible to open them using tools. (Category-2 version)

The reverse polarity protection of the battery male connectors must be checked.

- Observe the information in the operating instructions for the battery.
- Ensure that the battery tray is closed correctly all the way round.
- Ensure that a tray lid is present for category-2 versions
- Only use batteries and plug connectors that are approved for potentially explosive areas and for the truck.

The safety officer will allocate a safe place where the following work can be performed.

- Remove the battery from the truck.
- Open the battery tray cover. (Category-2 version)
- Check any ventilation openings for damage.
- Check the coating of the battery tray and the tray cover for damage.
- Check the battery for any cracks in the housing, raised plates and acid leaks.
- Check the battery male connectors.
- Check cable inlets for damage.



- A defective battery must only be repaired by the authorised service centre.
- Open the filler cap (1) and check the acid level.

For batteries with "caged cell plugs", the liquid must reach the bottom of the cage.

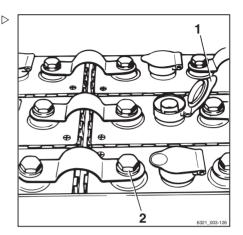
For batteries without "caged cell plugs", the liquid must reach a height of approx. 10 to 15 mm above the lead plates.

- If the fluid level is too low, top up the fluid with only distilled or demineralised water.
- Clean the battery cell covers and dry if necessary.
- Remove any oxidation residue on the battery terminals then coat the terminals with acid-free grease.
- At regular intervals, have the battery-terminal clips (2) tightened by the authorised service centre in accordance with the battery manufacturer's instructions.
- Check the acid density with an acidimeter.

After charging, the acid density must be between 1.28 and 1.30 kg/l.

For a discharged battery, the acid density must be **no lower** than 1.14 kg/l.

- Close the filler cap (1) again.





Checking the battery charge status

▲ CAUTION

Deep discharges shorten the service life of the battery.

Deep discharge begins when the battery charge display is red (3) (0% of the available battery capacity, i.e. approx. 20% of the nominal capacity).

- Deep discharge must be avoided (see the section entitled "Equalising charge to prevent a deep discharge of the battery").
- Stop working with the truck immediately.
- Charge the battery immediately.
- Do not leave batteries in a discharged or partly discharged state.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Switch on the truck.
- Read the charge status on the display of the display/operating unit.
- Charge a discharged or partly discharged battery.

Meaning of the colours in the display

1 Green:

The battery is sufficiently charged

2 Yellow:

Charge the battery soon.

3 Rec

Stop working. Charge the battery immediately. The battery is at risk of deep discharge.

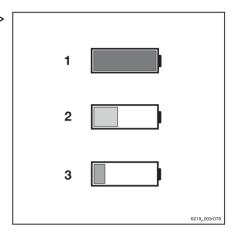
Charging the lead-acid battery



▲ DANGER

Explosive gases are generated during charging.

- Ensure that work areas are adequately ventilated.
- For trucks with a cab (including fabriccovered cabs), ensure adequate ventilation in the cab (variant).





A DANGER

Risk of explosion due to old batteries!

Old and inadequately maintained batteries can cause excessive gas emissions and excessive heating during charging.

The increased production of explosive gas can lead to an explosion.

- If an increased build-up of heat or a sulphurous odour is detected, stop the charging process immediately.
- Provide adequate ventilation.
- Inform the authorised service centre so that it can determine the condition of the battery.

A DANGER

There is a risk of damage, short circuiting and explosions!

- Do not place any metal objects or tools on the battery.
- Keep away from naked flames.
- Do not smoke.

M WARNING

Battery acid is toxic and corrosive!

Observe the safety regulations in the chapter entitled "Battery acid".



A CAUTION

Risk of damage to the battery charger!

Incorrect connection or incorrect operation of the charging station or the battery charger may result in damage to components

 Follow the operating instructions for the charging station or battery charger and for the battery.



A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is disconnected while the truck is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens the service life of the contacts.

- Switch off the truck before the battery male connector is disconnected.
- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the truck is switched on, except in an emergency.
- Park the truck securely.
- Ensure that work areas are adequately ventilated
- Make sure that the external ventilation gaps on the truck are unobstructed and are not blocked
- Fully open any protective structures (e.g. fabric-covered cab).
- Open the battery door completely.
- Disconnect the battery male connector.
- Do not place any metal objects or tools on the battery.
- Keep away from naked flames. Do not smoke.
- Check the battery cables for damage. If necessary, have the battery cables replaced by the authorised service centre.
- Connect the battery male connector to the plug on the battery charger.
- Adjust the settings of the battery charger to the battery capacity of the lead-acid battery.
- Start the battery charger.



NOTE

Observe the information in the operating instructions for the battery and the battery charger.





▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

The battery door must be kept slightly open during the charging process to ensure sufficient ventilation.

The battery door can be locked in the open position using a support bracket.

- Pull the support bracket (1) up and out of its support eyelet (2) on the battery door.
- Swing the support bracket (1) outwards in an anticlockwise direction.
- Press down on the support bracket (1) to clip it into the support eyelet (3) on the truck.

The battery door will lock into a slightly open position.

After charging

A CAUTION

Risk of danger to components!

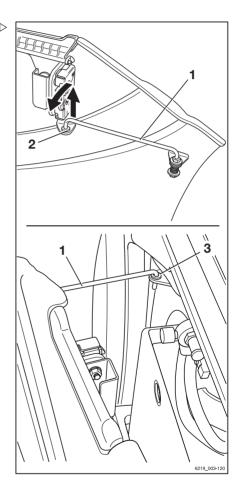
- Switch off the battery charger before disconnecting the charging cable.
- Switch off the battery charger.
- Swing the support bracket (1) back into position and lock it into the support eyelet (2) on the battery door.
- Open the battery door and lock it into the open position.
- Disconnect the battery male connector from the plug for the battery charger.
- Insert the battery male connector fully into the plug connection on the truck.



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Do not disconnect the plug and socket until the truck and battery charger are switched off.







A CAUTION

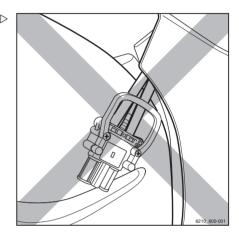
There is a risk of short circuit if the cables are damaged.

Do not crush the battery cable when closing the battery cover.

- Ensure that the battery cable does not come into contact with the battery door
- Close the battery door. When doing so, ensure that no cables are crushed between the chassis and the battery door.

The battery door must be locked in place.

If the truck is fitted with a door contact switch for the battery door (variant), the message Close battery door appears on the display-operating unit. The truck will not move.



Equalising charging to preserve the battery capacity

Equalising charges ensure that unevenly charged battery cells are evenly charged again. This preserves the service life of the battery and the battery capacity.

An equalising charge should be carried out in accordance with the battery manufacturer's instructions several times a month after the normal charging process.



Depending on the battery charger used, the equalising charge may not begin until 24 hours have elapsed. A period when no shifts are running, such as the weekend, is therefore ideal for performing the equalising charge.



405

 Observe the information in the operating instructions of the battery charger regarding how to perform an equalising charge.

Starting the equalising charge

- Charge the battery.
- After charging, leave the battery in the charger.

The battery charger remains switched on. Depending on the type of battery charger, the equalising charge begins between 6 and 24 hours after the end of the actual charging process. The equalising charge takes up to 2 hours.

 Please refer to the operating instructions from the manufacturer of the battery charger

Ending the equalising charge

The equalising charge ends automatically. If the battery is required during this process, you can interrupt the equalising charge by pushing the "stop button" on the battery charger.

 Please refer to the operating instructions from the manufacturer of the battery charger.

A CAUTION

Damage to the connection assembly is possible!

If you disconnect the charging cable while the battery charger is switched on, an arc will be produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens the service life of the contacts.

- Switch off the battery charger before you disconnect the charging cable.
- Switch off the battery charger.
- Disconnect the battery male connector from the plug for the battery charger.
- Insert the battery male connector fully into the plug connection on the truck.



General information on replacing the battery



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

No work must be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas!

- Only connect or disconnect battery male connectors outside of potentially explosive areas.
- Only change batteries outside of potentially explosive areas.

A CAUTION

Risk of components being damaged by the lifting accessory and battery rolling away!

If the battery is not on a level, smooth floor with sufficient load-bearing capacity, lifting accessories and the battery can roll away in an uncontrolled manner.

- Follow the operating instructions for the lifting accessories used.
- Always remove the battery on a level, smooth floor with sufficient load capacity.

Batteries can be removed with a truck and with a lift truck equipped with a battery change frame.

The load capacity of the lifting accessory used must at least match the battery weight. See the battery nameplate.



NOTE

Depending on the version, a potential equalisation connection is present between the battery tray and truck. When removing the battery, this connection must be disconnected at the potential equalisation point. The potential equalisation point is identified by the decal information (4).



Changing to a different battery type

The truck can be converted to a different battery type and capacity.

The new battery capacity and new battery type must be set in the display-operating unit.

- If this is not done, the actual battery discharge status cannot be determined. The battery charge level is not displayed correctly.
- In the worst case scenario, deep discharge can damage the battery.

Using his/her access authorisation, the fleet manager can set the new battery capacity and the new battery type in the display-operating unit.



NOTE

When changing to TENSOR® batteries, the authorised service centre must limit the maximum speed of the truck to 17 km/h for technical reasons.

Setting the new battery capacity and the new battery type

- Stop the truck.
- Actuate the parking brake.
- Press the button =
- Press the "Settings" softkey &.

The first menu level appears.

 Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".

The "Settings menu" opens on the display.

- Press the Battery softkey.
- Press the Battery type softkey.

The possible batteries for the truck are listed in the "Battery type" menu.

Press the corresponding softkey for the desired battery type.

The activation bar next to the selection lights up.



- Press the Back button ←
- Press the Capacity softkey.
- Press the corresponding softkey for the battery capacity according to the nameplate of the battery.

The activation bar next to the selection lights up.

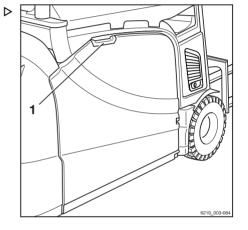
The main display button $\widehat{\ }$ takes you to the main display.

Opening/closing the battery door

Opening the battery door

 Take hold of the door handle (1) of the battery door and open the battery door by pulling it forwards.

The battery door locks into place automatically.





Locking the battery door into a slightly open position

The battery door can be locked in the open position using a support bracket.

- Pull the support bracket (1) up and out of its support eyelet (2) on the battery door.
- Swing the support bracket (1) outwards in an anticlockwise direction.
- Press down on the support bracket (1) to clip it into the support eyelet (3) on the truck.
- To close the support bracket (1), swing it back into position and lock it into the support eyelet (2) on the battery door.

Closing the battery door



WARNING

When closing the battery door, limbs could become trapped — risk of crushing!

When closing the battery door, nothing should come between the battery door and the edge of the chassis.

- Carefully close the battery door.
- Only close the battery door if there are no parts of the body in the way.

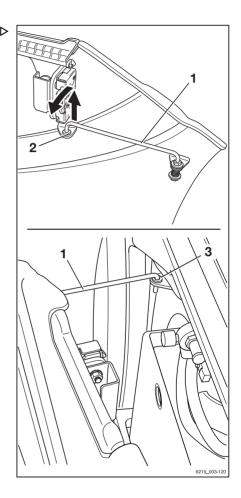


WARNING

When closing the battery door, there is a risk of trapping the battery cable. If the cable is crushed or sheared off, there is a risk of short circuit!

When closing the battery door, nothing should come between the battery door and the edge of the chassis.

- Carefully close the battery door.
- Only close the battery door if the battery cable is not in the way.





WARNING

Risk of accident due to the battery door opening!

An unlocked battery door may open if the truck decelerates sharply. If the battery door opens while driving, there is risk of damage from a collision.

- Ensure that the battery door is securely shut.
- Drive the truck only when the battery door is

A DANGER

Risk of fatal injury from the battery sliding out!

The battery may fall out if the battery door is not locked and the truck tips over. The battery could fall on the driver!

- Ensure that the battery door is securely shut.
- Drive the truck only when the battery door is locked.



The apertures in the door are necessary for forced ventilation and must not be blocked.

- If the battery door is fully open, take hold of the battery door by its handle and open it slightly further.

This will release the latch in the hinge.

- Close the battery door by hand until it engages in the lock.

The battery door must be locked in place

The truck is equipped with a door contact switch for the battery door. If the battery door is not fully closed, the message Close battery door appears on the display of the display-operating unit. The truck will then only move at a reduced speed.



Replacing the battery using a truck

Preparing

▲ WARNING

Risk of accident!

The load capacity of the truck in use must at least match the battery weight (see the battery nameplate).

- Observe the nameplates of the battery and of the change frame.
- Before picking up the battery, the fork arms must be adjusted to match the opening in the chassis (A). Push the fork arms together, selecting the maximum possible distance.

The fork arms must not be moved under the battery any further than the length of the chassis opening (B = max. 850 mm).

It is useful to mark this measurement (B) (measured from the fork tips) on the fork arms.

Removing the battery

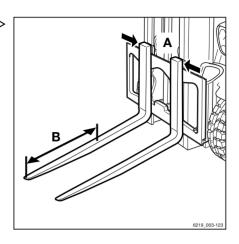
- Park the truck safely and switch it off.
- Open the battery door.

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is disconnected while the truck is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens the service life of the contacts.

- Switch off the truck before the battery male connector is disconnected.
- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the truck is switched on, except in an emergency.



- Disconnect the battery male connector.
- Disconnect the potential equalisation connection if necessary.



WARNING

Risk of crushing or shearing!

No one must stand directly next to the battery or between the battery and the truck when removing and inserting the battery.



A CAUTION

Risk of damage!

Position the battery cable on the battery in such a way that the cable cannot be crushed either when removing or inserting the battery or when closing the battery door.





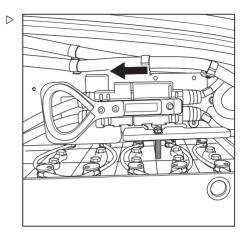
If the battery locks cannot be opened by hand. the coupling pin (2) from the counterweight can be used as a lever extension.

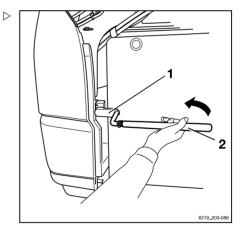
- Carefully drive the truck under the battery.
- Carefully lift the battery until it maintains a sufficient distance from the seating and from the chassis above.
- Position the fork arms horizontally.

A CAUTION

Damage to the battery possible!

- If the battery knocks against the chassis above, lower the battery immediately.
- Slowly remove the battery from the battery compartment.







Transporting and setting down the battery

WARNING

Risk of crushing or shearing!

The battery must be transported very carefully, i.e. at a low speed, using a slow steering movement and careful braking.

- Do not use the methods described here to transport the battery over long distances.
- Transport the battery to the intended storage space.

A CAUTION

Risk of damage!

The battery must be stored on a suitable beam support or on suitable racking.

The battery must not be stored on a wooden beam or any similar object.

Set down the battery.

Installing the battery

- Pick up the battery and transport it to the truck.
- Carefully insert the battery into the battery compartment.

When doing so, ensure that

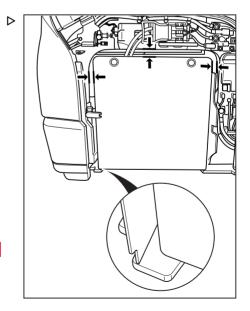
- Before inserting, the battery cable is positioned on the battery in such a way that it will not become trapped when the battery is inserted
- The load-carrying equipment is at a right angle to the truck
- The gaps are maintained for the entire time that the battery is being inserted, and the battery is inserted to a sufficient depth,



▲ DANGER

Risk of crushing or shearing!

While inserting the battery, avoid putting your hands between the battery and the chassis.







A CAUTION

Risk of damage!

 Position the battery cables on the battery in such a way that the cables cannot be crushed either when removing or inserting the battery or when closing the battery door.

Once the battery is correctly positioned in the battery compartment:

- Carefully lower the battery.
- Carefully move the lifting accessories out from under the battery.

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

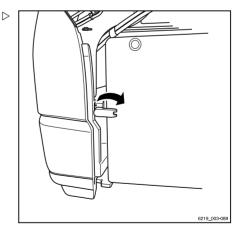
If the battery male connector is connected while the truck is switched on (under load), a transition spark will be produced. This transition spark can damage the contacts and considerably shorten the service life of the contacts.

- Do not connect the battery male connectors when the truck is switched on.
- Make sure that the truck is switched off before connecting the battery male connector.
- Close the battery lock (1).



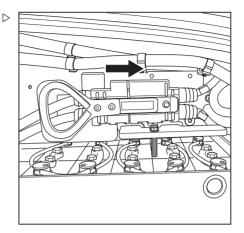
NOTE

The battery door will close only when the battery is locked.





- Insert the battery male connector fully into the plug connection on the truck.
- Close the battery door.





Replacing the battery using a lift truck and a battery change frame

WARNING

Risk of accident due to overloading the lift truck!

The load capacity of the lift truck used must at least match the weight of the battery and the weight of the change frame.

 Observe the nameplates of the battery and of the change frame.

A CAUTION

Damage to the battery possible!

- Place the battery change frame along with the battery only on a firm surface with sufficient loadbearing capacity.
- Do not place the battery change frame and battery on a soft surface or in a rack.

Battery replacement using a lift truck is carried out with a change frame. The battery remains on the change frame for charging and storage.

Preparing

- Check the nameplate (3) on the change frame to ensure that the selected change frame has the required load capacity.
- Check the change frame for deformation and breaks or cracks.

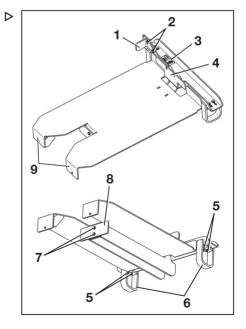
Faulty change frames must not be used. They must be replaced by the authorised service centre.

The distance between the feet (6) can be adjusted to ensure that the change frame picks up the battery precisely.

- To adjust the feet (6), loosen the screw joint (5).
- Adjust the feet (6) of the change frame according to the dimensions of the fork arms.
- Re-tighten the screw joint (5).

The side stop (1) must also be adjusted.

 To adjust the side stop (1), loosen the screw joint (2).





- Adjust the stop (1) so that the battery will later be centred on the change frame.



To pick up batteries with large trays, fasten the side stop in the outer bores, e.g. tray 366.

The battery must lie against the side stop (1) and against the stops (3).

- Re-tighten the screw joint (2).
- Position the change frame properly on the lift truck until the fork arm tips are touching the feet (9).

When the change frame is on the lift truck, the feet (5, 9) must be positioned close to the fork arms on both sides.



NOTE

When using narrow pallet trucks with a distance of 400 mm between the outer edges of the fork arms, the stop (8) must be removed. When using pallet trucks with a distance of ≥ 525 mm between the outer edges of the fork arms, the stop must be installed. The stop (8) is connected to the battery change frame via the screw joint (7).

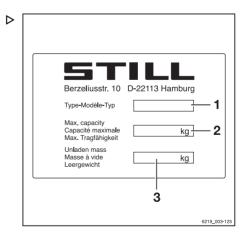
Types of change frames

 Observe the nameplate of the change frame.

The following information is listed on the nameplate:

- 1 The type of change frame (observe the following table)
- 2 Maximum permissible load capacity (see the nameplate on the battery)
- 3 The net weight of the change frame

The various battery change frames that are available are designed for specific types of battery.



Nameplate of the change frame





Battery replacement using a hand pallet truck is allowed only if using the change frame permitted for this purpose.

 For permitted combinations, observe and comply with the following table.

Tray	Battery type	Battery change frame
315	Lead-acid battery, circuit B	56364206701
364	Lead-acid battery, circuit A	30304200701
365	Lead-acid battery, circuit A	56364206708
366	Lead-acid battery, circuit A	30304200706

Removing the battery

- Park the truck securely.
- Open the battery door.

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is disconnected while the truck is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens the service life of the contacts.

- Switch off the truck before the battery male connector is disconnected.
- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the truck is switched on, except in an emergency.



- Disconnect the battery male connector.
- Disconnect the potential equalisation connection if necessary.



WARNING

Risk of crushing or shearing!

No one must stand directly beside the battery or between the battery and the lift truck when removing or inserting the battery.



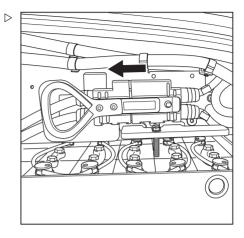
A CAUTION

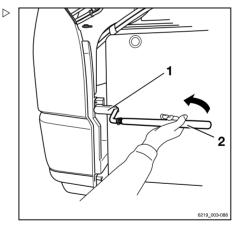
Potential for damage to the battery cable!

- Position the battery cable on the battery in such a way that it cannot be crushed, either when removing or inserting the battery or when closing the battery door.
- Open the battery lock (1).



If the battery lock cannot be opened by hand, the coupling pin (2) from the counterweight can be used as a lever extension.







- Carefully drive the lift truck under the battery until the battery touches the stops (1) and (2).
- Carefully lift the battery until it maintains a sufficient distance from the seating and from the chassis above

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery!

- If the battery knocks against the chassis at the top, lower the battery immediately.
- Slowly remove the battery from the battery compartment.

Transporting and setting down the battery

A WARNING

Risk of injury when transporting the battery!

The battery must be transported very carefully, i.e. at a low speed, using a slow steering movement and careful braking.

- Do **not** use the methods described here to transport the battery over long distances.
- Transport the battery to the intended storage space.

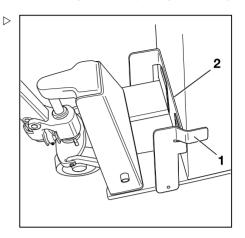
A CAUTION

Damage to the battery possible!

The change frame and battery must be stored on a suitable beam support or on suitable racking.

The change frame must not be stored on a wooden beam or any similar object.

- Set down the battery.





Installing the battery

- Pick up the battery and transport it to the truck.
- Position the battery cable on the battery so that it will not become trapped when the battery is inserted.
- Position the battery at a right angle to the truck.
- Carefully insert the battery into the battery compartment.
- Carefully place the battery onto the battery holding fixtures.



A DANGER

Risk of crushing or shearing!

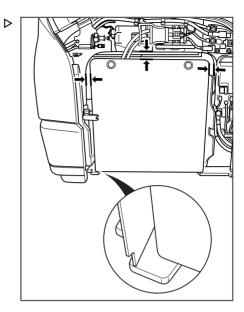
When inserting, do not allow your hands to come between the battery and the chassis.



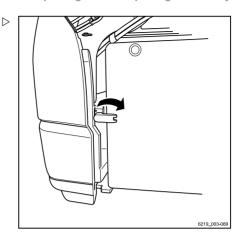
A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery cable!

- Position the battery cable on the battery in such a way that it cannot be crushed, either when removing or inserting the battery or when closing the battery door.
- When the battery is correctly positioned in the battery compartment, carefully lower the battery.
- Carefully move the lifting accessory out from under the battery.



- Close the battery lock.



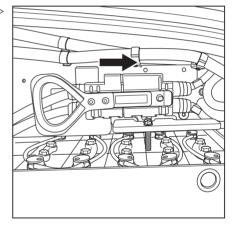
 Insert the battery male connector fully into the plug connection on the truck.

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is connected while the truck is switched on or the battery charger is under load, a transition spark will be produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts and can considerably shorten the service life of the contacts.

- Switch off the truck and the battery charger before connecting the battery male connector.
- Close the battery door.





Transporting the lead-acid battery by crane



▲ DANGER

There is risk of fatal injury from being struck by falling loads!

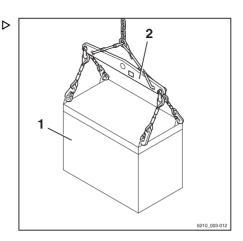
Never walk or stand underneath suspended loads.

The tray for the lead-acid battery (1) is equipped with four lifting eyes. The battery may only be transported by crane using a lifting gear and bridge piece (2) that are suitable in terms in size and load capacity.

- To avoid short circuits, cover batteries with open terminals or connectors with a rubber mat.
- Observe the operating instructions for the lifting gear.
- Attach the battery (1) to suitable lifting gear
 (2).
- Lift the battery carefully and ensure that it hangs straight on the lifting gear.

The lifting gear must be vertical when lifting, so that no lateral pressure is applied to the tray.

- Set the battery down carefully.
- Remove the lifting gear after the battery has been set down.
- Do not place slack lifting gear on the battery cells or allow it to fall on the battery cells.





Note on flame proof enclosures

Depending on the category of the truck, it can be equipped with one or more flame proof enclosures. These flame proof enclosures contain components of the truck control unit and other electrical and electronic components.



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion due to improper handling!

The pressure-tight housings have a specified gap between the cover and housing. Improper opening and closing of the pressure-tight housings can cause a detrimental change to this gap. Potentially explosive substances in the atmosphere can penetrate the housing during operation in at-risk areas; this can cause an explosion, which can in turn spread to the surrounding environment.

- Do **not** open pressure-tight housings.



A CAUTION

If water penetrates the electrical system, there is a risk of a short circuit occurring!

The flame proof enclosures have a narrow gap that could allow water to penetrate.

Do not use high-pressure cleaning equipment.

Cleaning the truck



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

No work must be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas!

Trucks must only be cleaned outside potentially explosive areas.





▲ DANGER

Risk of fire due to flammable cleaning materials!

Flammable cleaning materials can be ignited by hot components.

Do **not** use any flammable cleaning materials.



A DANGER

Risk of fire due to flammable materials!

Deposits and solids can be ignited by hot components, e.g. drive units.

Remove deposits and solids.



WARNING

Risk of injury from falling off the truck!

When climbing onto the truck, there is a risk of getting stuck or slipping and falling. Use suitable equipment to reach higher points on the truck.

- Use only the steps provided for this purpose to climb onto the truck.
- Use equipment such as stepladders or platforms to reach inaccessible areas.

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is disconnected while the truck is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens the service life of the contacts.

- Switch off the truck before the battery male connector is disconnected.
- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the truck is switched on, except in an emergency.

A CAUTION

Excessive water pressure or water and steam that are too hot can damage truck components.

- Strictly adhere to the following steps.



A CAUTION

Abrasive cleaning materials can damage the surfaces of components!

Using abrasive cleaning materials that are unsuitable for plastics can cause plastic parts to dissolve or become brittle. The screen on the display-operating unit could become cloudy.

- Strictly adhere to the following steps.
- Park the truck safely and switch it off.
- Disconnect the battery male connector.
- Do not spray electric motors and other electrical components or their covers directly with water.
- Do not use high-pressure cleaning equipment.
- Do not aim the cleaning jet directly at adhesive labels or decal information.
- Remove all deposits and accumulations of foreign materials in the vicinity of hot components.
- Use only non-flammable fluids for cleaning.
- Observe the manufacturer's guidelines for working with cleaning materials.
- Clean plastics only with cleaning materials intended for plastics.
- Observe the manufacturer's guidelines for working with cleaning materials.
- Clean the truck exterior using water-soluble cleaning materials and water. Cleaning with a water jet, a sponge or a cloth is recommended.
- Clean all accessible areas.
- Before lubrication, clean the oil filling openings and the area around the oil filling openings, as well as the lubricating nipples.



Cleaning the electrical system

WARNING

Danger of electric shocks due to residual capacity!

 Never reach into the electrical system with your bare hands.



A CAUTION

Cleaning electrical system parts with water can damage the electrical system.

Cleaning electrical system parts with water is forbidden!

- Do not remove covers etc.
- Only use dry cleaning materials according to the specifications in the section "Cleaning the truck".

The components of the electrical system are fitted underneath the cover sheet of the counterweight etc.

 Clean the electrical system parts with a metal-free brush and blow the dust off with low-pressure compressed air.

Cleaning load chains

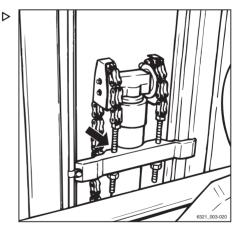
WARNING

Risk of accident!

Load chains are safety elements.

The use of cold cleaning solvents, chemical cleaners or fluids that are corrosive or contain acid or chlorine can damage the chains; use of these items is forbidden!

- Observe the manufacturer's guidelines for working with cleaning materials.
- Place a collection container under the lift mast.
- Clean with paraffin derivatives, such as benzine.
- Dry the chain links using compressed air immediately after cleaning. Move the chain several times during this procedure.





 Immediately after drying the chain, spray it with chain spray. Move the chain several times during this procedure.

For chain spray specifications, refer to the "Maintenance data table".



ENVIRONMENT NOTE

Dispose of any fluid that has been spilled or collected in the collection vessel in an environmentally friendly manner.

 Observe the national regulations for the country in which the truck is being used.

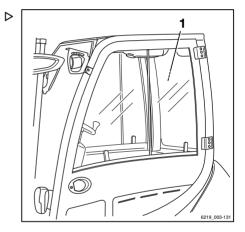
Cleaning the windows

Any glass, for example cab windows (variant), must always be kept clean and free of ice. This is the only means of guaranteeing good visibility.

A CAUTION

Do not damage the rear window heater (inside).

- (1) Clean the rear window very carefully. Do not use sharp objects!
- Clean the windows with a soft cloth and commercial window cleaner





After cleaning

A CAUTION

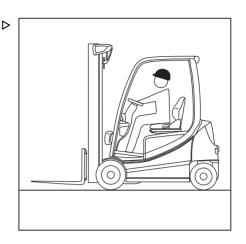
Risk of short circuit!

Ingress of moisture or dirt into the battery male connector and plug connection can lead to an electrical short circuit.

- Use compressed air to dry the battery male connector and the plug connection before connecting them
- Use compressed air to remove any foreign objects that may be lodged in the battery male connector and the plug connection.
- Carefully dry the truck, e.g. using compressed air.
- Lubricate the joints and actuators.
- Lubricate the truck according to the "lubrication plan".



The more often the truck is cleaned, the more frequently the truck must be lubricated.



Transporting the truck

Transport



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

No work must be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas!

Only load and transport the truck outside of potentially explosive areas.

A CAUTION

Risk of material damage from overloading!

If the truck is driven onto a means of transport, the load capacity of the means of transport, HGV ramps and loading bridges must be greater than the total actual weight of the truck. Components can be permanently deformed or damaged due to overloading.

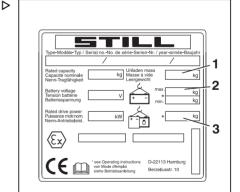
- Determine the total actual weight of the truck.
- Only load the truck if the load capacity of the means of transport, HGV ramps and loading bridges is greater than the total actual weight of the truck.

Determining the total actual weight

- Park the truck securely.
- Determine the unit weights by reading the truck nameplate and, if necessary, the attachment nameplate (variant).
- Add together the determined unit weights to obtain the total actual weight of the truck:

Net weight (1)

- + Max. permissible battery weight (2)
- + Ballast weight (variant) (3)
- + Net weight of attachment (variant)
- + 100 kg allowance for driver
- Total actual weight





Transporting the truck

A DANGER

Risk of accident from the truck crashing!

Steering movements can cause the rear of the truck to veer off the loading bridge towards the edge. This may cause the truck to crash.

- Before driving across a loading bridge, ensure that the loading bridge is properly attached and secured
- Ensure that the transport vehicle onto which the truck is to be driven has been sufficiently secured to prevent it from shifting.
- Maintain a safety distance from edges, loading bridges, HGV ramps, working platforms etc.
- Drive slowly and carefully onto the transport vehicle.

Wedging the wheels

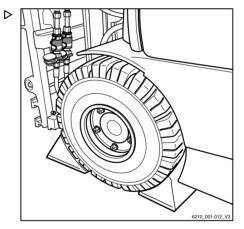
- Park the truck securely.
- Secure the truck from rolling away by placing a wedge in front of each front wheel and behind each rear wheel.

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is disconnected while the truck is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens the service life of the contacts.

- Switch off the truck before the battery male connector is disconnected.
- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the truck is switched on, except in an emergency.
- Ensure that the truck is switched off.
- Disconnect the battery male connector.





Lashing down

▲ DANGER

The load may slip if the lashing straps/tension belts slip!

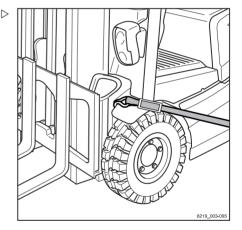
The truck must be lashed securely so that it cannot move during transportation.

 Make sure that the lashing straps/tension belts are tightened securely and that the pads cannot slip off.

A CAUTION

Abrasive lashing straps/tension belts can rub against the surface of the truck and cause damage.

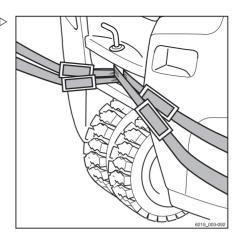
- Position slip-resistant pads (e.g. rubber mats or foam) underneath the lifting points.
- Hook the lashing straps/tension belts onto both sides of the curves in the mudguard and lash the truck towards the rear.





Transporting the truck

 Position the lashing straps/tension belts for the coupling pin around the coupling pin as shown and lash the truck at an angle towards the front.



Crane loading

Crane loading is only intended for transporting the complete truck, including the lift mast, for its initial commissioning. This may be performed only by the authorised service centre with the harnesses expressly provided and approved for this purpose.

- Do not load the truck by crane!



Decommissioning

Safety information for shutting down and restarting



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

No work may be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas.

 Only decommission or store the truck outside potentially explosive areas.



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Damage to explosion-protected components may occur during storage of the truck; this damage cannot always be predicted. Discharge sparks or overheating due to damaged components can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere in potentially explosive areas. The entire explosion-protected system must be checked before re-commissioning.

 Have the explosion-protection equipment inspected by the authorised service centre before re-commissioning.

Decommissioning and storing the truck

A CAUTION

Damage to components due to incorrect storage!

Improper storage or decommissioning for a period of more than two months can result in corrosion damage to the truck. If the truck is parked in an ambient temperature of below -10°C for an extended period, the batteries will cool down. The electrolyte may freeze and damage the batteries.

- Store the truck in a dry, clean, frost-free and wellventilated environment.
- Implement the following measures before decommissioning.



Decommissioning

Measures to be implemented before decommissioning

- Clean the truck thoroughly; see the chapter entitled "Cleaning the truck".
- Lift the fork carriage to the stop several times.
- Tilt the lift mast forwards and backwards several times and, if fitted, move the attachment repeatedly.
- To relieve the strain on the load chains, lower the fork onto a suitable supporting surface, e.g. a pallet.
- Check the hydraulic oil level.
- Apply a thin layer of oil or grease to all uncoated moving parts.
- Lubricate the truck according to the "lubrication plan".
- Lubricate the joints and actuators.

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is disconnected while the truck is switched on (under load), an electric arc will be produced. This can lead to erosion of the contacts, which considerably shortens the service life of the contacts.

- Switch off the truck before the battery male connector is disconnected.
- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the truck is switched on, except in an emergency.
- Disconnect the battery male connector.
- Check the battery condition, acid level and acid density.
- Service the battery.



NOTE

Only store batteries that are fully charged.

 Spray all exposed electrical contacts with a suitable contact spray.



A CAUTION

Tyre deformation as a result of continuous loading on one side!

Have the truck raised and jacked up by the authorised service centre so that all wheels are off the ground. This prevents permanent deformation of the tyres.

 Only have the truck raised and jacked up by the authorised service centre.

A CAUTION

Risk of corrosion damage due to condensation on the truck!

Many plastic films and synthetic materials are watertight. Condensation water on the truck cannot escape through these covers.

- Do not use plastic film as this facilitates the formation of condensation water.
- Cover with vapour-permeable material, e.g. cotton
- Cover the truck to protect it from dust.
- If the truck needs to be shut down for even longer periods, contact the authorised service centre to find out about additional courses of action.

Use after storage or decommissioning

If the truck has been decommissioned for longer than six months it must be checked carefully before being used again. As with the annual safety inspection, this inspection must also include all safety-related aspects of the truck.

- Clean the truck thoroughly; see the chapter entitled "Cleaning the truck".
- Lubricate the joints and actuators.
- Check the battery condition, acid level and acid density.
- Check the hydraulic oil for condensation water. Change the hydraulic oil if necessary.
- Arrange for the authorised service centre to perform the same inspections and tasks



Decommissioning

that were carried out before initial commissioning.

- The explosion protection inspection must be performed by the authorised service centre.
- Perform the "visual inspections and functional checks".

The following points in particular must be checked:

- · Drive
- Controller
- Steering
- Brakes (service brake, parking brake)
- Lifting system (lifting accessories, load chains, mounting)



NOTE

For further information, see the workshop manual for the truck or contact the authorised service centre



Maintenance

5 Maintenance

Safety regulations for maintenance

Safety regulations for maintenance

General information



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

No work must be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas!

- Trucks must only be maintained and repaired outside potentially explosive areas.
- Ask the safety officer to allocate a safe working area.

All necessary safety measures must be taken to prevent accidents during maintenance and repair work:

- Park the truck and switch it off.
- Disconnect the battery male connector.

Category-2 versions of the truck have two battery male connectors (+ and -). These are secured against accidental disconnection with screws. To prevent loss of the screws, screw the screws back in place after disconnecting the battery male connector.

- Ensure that the truck cannot move unintentionally or start up inadvertently.
- If necessary, have the truck jacked up by the authorised service centre.

Components specifically for explosion protection are attached on the underside of the truck. If these components are damaged, the truck is no longer approved for use in potentially explosive areas.

- Have the raised fork carriage or the extended lift mast secured against accidental lowering by the authorised service centre.
- Observe the maximum lift height of the lift mast and compare the dimensions listed in the chapter entitled "Technical data" with the dimensions of the hall in which the truck is to be driven.



 Avoid collisions with the ceiling of the hall and the resultant damage.

Working on the hydraulic equipment

The hydraulic system must be depressurised prior to all work on the system.

Working on the electrical equipment



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

Work on the electrical equipment must only be performed outside potentially explosive areas and only by a competent person.

Any interference with the electrical equipment of the truck is forbidden.

 For work on the electrical equipment, contact the authorised service centre.

Safety devices

After maintenance and repair work, all safety devices must be reinstalled and tested for operational reliability.

Set values

The device-dependent set values must be observed when making repairs and when changing hydraulic and electrical components.

These are listed in the appropriate sections.



5 Maintenance

Safety regulations for maintenance

Lifting and jacking up

A DANGER

There is a risk to life if the truck tips over!

If not raised and jacked up properly, the truck may tip over and fall off. Only the hoists specified in the workshop manual for this truck are allowed and are tested for the necessary safety and load capacity.

- Only have the truck raised and jacked up by the authorised service centre.
- Only jack the truck up at the points specified in the workshop manual.

The truck must be raised and jacked up for various types of maintenance work. The authorised service centre must be informed that this is to take place. Safe handling of the truck and the corresponding hoists is described in the truck's workshop manual.

Working at the front of the truck

A DANGER

Risk of accident due to an unsecured lift mast.

If the lift mast or fork carriage is raised, no work may be performed on the lift mast or at the front of the truck unless the appropriate safety measures are put in place.

- When securing, only use chains with sufficient load-bearing capacity.
- Contact the authorised service centre regarding this matter.

A CAUTION

Possibility of damage to the ceiling!

- Note the maximum lift height of the lift mast.

Securing the lift mast against tilting backwards

A DANGER

Risk of accident!

This work must only be performed by an authorised service technician.

 To secure the lift mast against tilting back, contact the authorised service centre.



Safety regulations for maintenance

Removing the lift mast

A DANGER

Risk of accident!

This work must only be performed by an authorised service technician.

Commission the authorised service centre to remove the lift mast.

Securing the lift mast against falling off

A DANGER

Risk of accident!

This work must only be performed by an authorised service technician.

 To secure the lift mast against falling, contact the authorised service centre.



5 Maintenance

General maintenance information

General maintenance information

Personnel qualifications



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

The operating company is responsible for its work equipment in accordance with the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health (BetrSichV). It is the operating company's responsibility to ensure that testing and repairs are carried out properly.

 Repair work must only be carried out by a competent person.

See the "Operating company" section in the chapter entitled "Definition of responsible persons".



A DANGER

Risk of explosion

Working on a truck within potentially explosive areas can lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere. No work may be performed on the truck in potentially explosive areas.

Only perform truck maintenance or repairs outside potentially explosive

Only qualified and authorised personnel are allowed to perform maintenance work. Regular safety checks and checks after unusual incidents must be performed by a competent person.

 See also the section entitled "Competent person for explosion protection checks" in the chapter entitled "Definition of responsible persons".

The competent person must conduct their evaluation and assessment from a safety point of view, unaffected by operational and economic conditions. The competent person must have sufficient knowledge and experience to be able to assess the condition of a truck and the effectiveness of the protective devices in accordance with technical conventions and the principles for testing trucks.



Maintenance personnel for batteries

Batteries must only be charged, serviced, and replaced by personnel who have received appropriate training in accordance with the instructions from the manufacturers of the battery, battery charger and truck.

 Observe the handling instructions for the battery and the operating instructions for the battery charger.

Maintenance work by the operating company

All of the required inspection points for 150-hour maintenance by the operating company are listed in this chapter in the section entitled "Maintenance by the operating company: Explosion-protection components - 150 hours/monthly".

 If you have any questions about this, please contact your authorised service centre.

Maintenance work without special qualifications

Simple maintenance work, such as checking the hydraulic oil level, may be carried out by untrained personnel. A qualification of the type held by a competent person is not required to carry out this work. The required tasks are described in the chapter entitled "Preserving operational readiness"

Maintenance of the explosion protection components

The explosion protection components of the truck must be tested on a regular basis, but no later than after the "explosion-protection check " has been performed according to the "workshop manual" and the latest technological standard, and according to the applicable standards and regulations for conversion. The elements for the maintenance and repair of the electrical system are listed in the standard "DIN EN 60079-17:2014-10".



5 Maintenance

General maintenance information

According to the standard "DIN EN 1755:2015-02" they include:

- checking the flame proof enclosure of the truck control unit and the restricted breathing housing for damage and integrity
- compliance with the minimum intervals for testing and inspection of the insulation resistance
- verification of a sufficient distance between fixed and rotating parts
- checking that the wheels, antistatic belts, corona electrodes, drive belts are in good condition and checking for any loss of conductivity caused by contamination
- verification of the potential equalisation and the surface resistance of the seat and nonmetallic covers
- verification of the proper function of security monitoring systems and shut-down systems, including their sensors
- regular replacement of safety-relevant parts or wearing parts
- verification of the correct rigidity of the screw connections and the correct maximum gap at the closure line of pressuretight housings
- verification of the lack of excessive wear and axial play of brake linings and brakes, in compliance with structural design safety and of the correct positioning of the temperature sensor and the brake lining wear sensor after repair (depending on the series)
- verification of the minimum thickness of 1 mm for the fork arm cladding
- verification of the integrity of housings, which provide a specific protection type
- verification of the integrity of identification plates and warning signs

Information for carrying out maintenance

This section contains all the information required to determine when the truck requires maintenance. Carry out maintenance work within the time limits according to the hour meter and using the maintenance check lists below. This ensures that the truck remains ready for operation and provides optimal performance and service life. It is also a precondition for any warranty claims.



Maintenance timeframe

If maintenance is needed, the message Service required \ appears on the display.

- Arrange for the authorised service centre to perform the maintenance work on the truck.
- The maintenance check lists indicate the maintenance work that is due

The intervals are defined for standard use Shorter maintenance intervals can be defined in consultation with the operating company, depending on the application conditions of the truck

The following factors may necessitate shorter maintenance intervals:

- · Dirty, poor-quality roadways
- · Dusty or salty air
- · High levels of air humidity
- · Extremely high or low ambient temperatures and extreme changes in temperature
- · Multi-shift operation with a high duty cycle
- Specific national regulations for the truck or individual components

Service menu

The date when the truck requires maintenance is stored in the Service menu.



Access to the settings menu is only available if the truck is at a standstill and the parking brake is applied. If the parking brake is released prematurely, the settings menu will close. Access is only granted when the password is entered by the fleet manager.

- Stop the truck.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Press the button.
- Press the "Settings" softkey ...

The first menu level appears.

- Activate the "Access authorisation for the fleet manager".



Maintenance

General maintenance information

The "Settings menu" opens on the display.

- Press the Service \ softkey.

The "Service menu" opens on the display.

- Press the Maintenance interval softkev.

This menu shows the operating hours remaining until the next scheduled maintenance interval or the latest date of the next scheduled maintenance interval



The maintenance interval can also be configured in the status line.

Maintenance by the operating company: Explosion-protection components -150 hours/monthly

At operating	hours						
150	300	450	600	750			
900	1050	1200	1350	1500			
1650	1800	1950	2100	2250			
2400	2550	2700	2850	3000			
3150	3300	3450	3600	3750			
3900	4050	4200	4350	4500			
4650	4800	4950	5100	5250			
5400	5550	5700	5850	6000			
6150	6300	6450	6600	6750			
6900	7050	7200	7350	7500		arrie	ed
7650	7800	7950	8100	8250		ut	-
8400	8550	8700	8850	10000		✓	×
Electrical sys	stem						
Check the mounting and condition of the electric cables of explosion-protection components							
Check the mounting and condition of the line connectors							
Check that the insulation monitoring is working correctly							
Check the co	Check the condition of the flame proof enclosure and check that it is sealed correctly						
Battery and	accessories						



General maintenance information

At operatin	ng hou	ırs									
150		300		450		600		750			
900		1050		1200		1350		1500			
1650		1800		1950		2100		2250		1	
2400		2550		2700		2850		3000			
3150		3300		3450		3600		3750			
3900		4050		4200		4350		4500			
4650		4800		4950		5100		5250			
5400		5550		5700		5850		6000			
6150		6300		6450		6600		6750			
6900		7050		7200		7350		7500		Carried out	
7650		7800		7950		8100		8250			
8400		8550		8700		8850		10000		1	×
Check the	batter	y condition,	acid	level and ad	cid de	nsity					
Chassis, b	odyw	ork and fitti	ngs								
Check the	driver	's seat									
Check the antistatic paint coat											
Lift mast											
Check the fork arms											
Check/lubr	Check/lubricate the lift mast bearings										
Check the	fork a	rm adjustm	ent								

Maintenance by the authorised service centre: Explosion-protection components - 1000 hours/yearly

At operating hours						Carried			
1000		2000	3000	4000	5000		out		
6000		7000	7000 9000 10000						
Note									
Perform all 150 hour maintenance tasks.									
Perform periodic testing (explosion-protection checks/device inspection) in accordance with §16 of the German Ordinance on Industrial Safety and Health.						ord-			



449

5

General maintenance information

Maintenance - 1000 hours/annually

At operating h			т т	T T	Carri	ed
1000	2000	4000	5000	7000	out	
8000	10000	11000	13000	14000	/	×
Chassis, body	work and fittings					
Check the cha	ssis for cracks.					
Check the ove	rhead guard/cab	and panes of glas	ss for damage.			
Check that the	cab door sensor	is working correc	ctly and check for	damage.		
Check the con	trols, switches an	d joints for dama	ge, and apply grea	ase and oil.		
Check that the	driver's seat is w	orking correctly a	and check for dam	age.		
Check that the and clean.	driver restraint sy	stem is working	correctly and che	ck for damage,		
Check the sigr	nal horn.					
Variant: Checl and lubricate.	the dual-pedal v	ariant for damage	e and that it is wor	king correctly,		
Battery compa	artment					
Check that the check for dam	•	I the sensor if ne	cessary, is workin	g correctly and		
Check the batt	ery lock for dama	ge.				
Grease the ba	ttery door hinges.					
	the oil level of thing parts for wear		ry carrier and che em.	ck for leaks.		
Wheels and ty	res					
Check tyres fo	r wear and check	the air pressure	if necessary.			
Check the who	eels for damage a	nd check the tigh	tening torques.			
Drive axle						
Check the mor	unting, check for l	eaks and clean th	ne cooling fins.			
Check that the tions are mour		etween the powe	er modules and the	e motor connec-		
Check the oil I	evel in the drive w	heel unit and the	multi-disc brake.			
Change the ge	arbox oil (once at	ter the first 1000	hours).			
Steering syste	m					
Check the stee	• .	ak tightness and	check that the ste	eering system is		
Check that the damage.	steering wheel is	securely attache	ed and check the r	otary handle for		



General maintenance information

At operating ho	ours				Carri	ied
1000	2000	4000	5000	7000	out	
8000	10000	11000	13000	14000	✓	×
Check that the	steering axle is s	ecurely mounted	, check for leaks	and apply grease).	
Check the stee	ring stop.					
Brake system						
Check the concorrectly.	lition of all mecha	anical brake parts	and check that t	hey are working		
Check the actua	ation distance of	the brake pedal	and adjust if nece	ssary.		
Check the man	ual force required	d to apply the har	ndbrake and adju	st if necessary.		
Perform a brake	e test.					
Electrical syste	m					
Check all powe	r cable connection	ons.				
Check that the	switches, transm	itters and sensor	s are working cor	rectly.		
Check the lighti	ng and indicator	lights.				
Cooling system	(converter and	drive axle)				
Check that the	fans and the air o	ducts are working	correctly and ch	eck for damage.		
Clean the fans	and the air ducts	-				
Clean the cooling	ng fins on the cor	nverter and the tr	action motors.			
Battery and acc	cessories					
	-acid battery for o	•	k the acid densit	y; observe the		
Variant: Replace	e the non-return	valve on lead-ac	id batteries with e	electrolyte circula	-	
Variant: Observies.	ve the manufactu	rer's maintenanc	e instructions for	lithium-ion batter	-	
Check the appli	iance plug and th	e truck harness t	or damage.			
Check the batte	ery male connect	or and the battery	harness for dam	nage.		
On-board charg	ger					
Check all powe	r cable connection	ons between the	OBC and the truc	k.		
Check the com	ponents of the O	BC for damage.				
Check the char	ging cable and cl	harger socket for	damage.			
Clean the fans	and the air duct.					
Hydraulics						
Check the cond check for leak t	•	aulic system, che	ck that it is workin	ng correctly and		



5

General maintenance information

At operating h					Carri	ed
1000	2000	4000	5000	7000	out	
8000	10000	11000	13000	14000	✓	×
Check the hyd	raulics blocking fu	ınction (ISO valv	re).			
Check the oil le	evel.					
Lift mast						
Check the mas tightening torqu		mage. Lubricate	the mast bearings	and check the		
Check the mas	at profiles for dam	age and wear. L	ubricate the mast	profiles.		
Check the guid	le in the lower (lo	ad reversal) mas	t profile for damag	ge and for wear.		
Check the load	l chains for dama	ge and wear. Ad	just and lubricate	the load chains.		
Check the lift of	ylinders and conr	nections for dama	age and for leak ti	ghtness.		
Check the guid	le pulleys for dam	age and for wea	ır.			
Check the sup	port rollers and ch	nain rollers for da	amage and for wea	ar.		
Check the play	between the fork	carriage stop a	nd the run-out bar	rier.		
Check the tilt of	ylinders and conr	nections for dama	age and for leaks.			
Check the fork	carriage for dam	age and for wear	r.			
Check the fork	arm interlock for	damage and che	eck that it is workir	ng correctly.		
Check the fork	arms for wear an	d deformation.				
Check that the	re is a safety scre	w on the fork ca	rriage or on the at	tachment.		
Special equipr	ment					
Check the con-	dition of the antist	atic belt or antist	tatic electrode.			
Check that the maintenance in		s working correct	tly; observe the ma	anufacturer's		
Check the atta tenance instruction		and for damage	; observe the man	ufacturer's main	-	
Check the trail maintenance in	. •	ear and for dama	ge; observe the m	anufacturer's		
General						
Read out the e	rror numbers and	clear the list.				
Reset the mair	ntenance interval.					
Check that the	labelling is comp	lete.				
Perform a test	drive.					



Maintenance - 3000 hours/every two years

At operating hours					Carr out	ied
3000 6000 9000 12000 15000						×
Note		•				
Perform all 1000)-hour maintena	nce work.				
Power unit						
Change the gearbox oil in the drive wheel unit.						
Replace the bleeder screws on the drive wheel units.						
Hydraulics						
Change the hydraulic oil.						
Replace the return line filter and the breather filter.						
Variant: Replace the high-pressure filter.						

Ordering spare parts and wearing parts



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

If non-original parts are installed on the truck, it is no longer approved for use in potentially explosive areas!

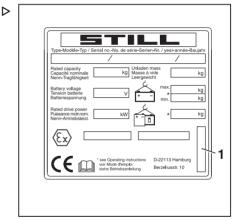
Spare parts are provided by our spare parts service department. The information required for ordering parts can be found in the spare parts list.

Only use spare parts as per the manufacturer's instructions. The use of unapproved spare parts may result in an increased risk of accidents due to insufficient quality or incorrect assignment. Anyone using unapproved spare parts shall assume full responsibility in the event of damage or harm.



For explosion-protected trucks it is necessary to specify the Miretti job number (1).

- The Miretti job number can be found on the nameplate of the truck.





General maintenance information

Quality and quantity of the required operating materials

Only the operating materials specified in the maintenance data table may be used.

 The required consumables and lubricants can be found in the maintenance data table.

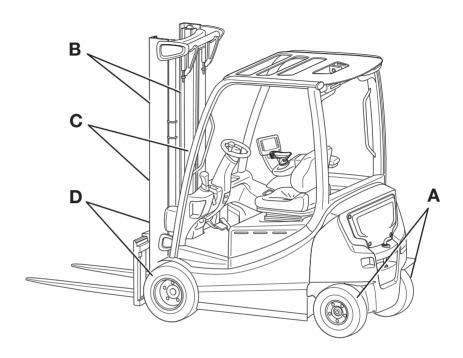
Oil and grease types of a different quality must not be mixed. This negatively affects the lubricity. If a change between different manufacturers cannot be avoided, drain the old oil thoroughly.

Before carrying out lubricating work, filter changes or any work on the hydraulic system, carefully clean the area around the part involved.

When topping up working materials, use only clean containers!



Lubrication plan



Code ¹	Lubrication point	
(A)	Swing axle: two lubricating nipples on each side of the steering axle on the steering arm Steering turntable: not present	
(B)	Sliding surfaces on the lift mast	
(C)	Load chains	



455

General maintenance information

Code ¹	Lubrication point
(D)	One lubricating nipple on each of the two lift mast bearings
1	

¹The respective lubricant specification can be found in the "Maintenance data table" section below, under this Code.

This lubrication plan describes the series-production truck with standard equipment. For maintenance points on variant trucks, see the relevant chapter and/or instructions provided by the manufacturer.



Maintenance data table



A DANGER

Risk of explosion due to static charge!

If bio-hydraulic oils are used, hydraulic systems become prone to the build-up of static charges. This can lead to static discharge; in potentially explosive areas, this can subsequently lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

- Do **not** use bio-based hydraulic oils.

General lubrication points

Code	Unit	Operating materials	Specifications	Dimension
	Lubrication	High-pressure	ID no. 0147873	As required
		grease		

Battery

Code	Unit	Operating materials	Specifications	Dimension
	System filling	Distilled water		As required
	Insulation resistance		DIN 43539	For further informa-
			VDE 0510	tion, refer to the
				workshop manual for
				the truck in question.

Electrical system

Code	Unit	Operating materials	Specifications	Dimension
	Insulation resistance		DIN EN 1175	For further informa-
			VDE 0117	tion, refer to the
				workshop manual for
				the truck in question.

Controls/joints

Code	Unit	Operating materials	Specifications	Dimension
	Lubrication	High-pressure grease	ID no. 0147873	As required
		Oil	SAE 80 MIL-L2105 API-GL4	As required
	Dual-pedal opera- tion	High-pressure grease	ID no. 0147873	As required



General maintenance information

Hydraulic system

Code	Unit	Operating materials	Specifications	Dimension
	System filling	Hydraulic oil	HVLP 68	23 to 30 l
			DIN 51524, Part 3	Dependent on the lift
		Hydraulic oil for cold	HVLP 32	mast and overall
		store application	DIN 51524, Part 3	height



When changing to a different type of hydraulic oil, the authorised service centre must adjust the truck control unit.

Tyres

Code	Unit	Operating materials	Specifications	Dimension
	Superelastic tyres	Wear limit		To wear mark
	Solid rubber tyres	Wear limit		To wear mark
	Pneumatic tyres	Minimum tread depth		Air pressure: see in- formation on truck Min. tread depth: 1.6
				mm

Steering axle

Code	Unit	Operating materials	Specifications	Dimension
(A)	Axle stub bearing, spherical bearing	Multi-purpose grease	DIN 51825 KPF2	As required
	Wheel pute	neel nuts Torque wrench	Swing axle	For further information, refer to the workshop manual for the truck in question.
	Wheel huts		Steering axle	For further information, refer to the workshop manual for the truck in question.

Drive axle

D u	>11V0 42/40				
Code	Unit	Operating materials	Specifications	Dimension	
	Wheel screws	Torque wrench		For further information, refer to the workshop manual for the truck in question.	
	Wheel gear	Gearbox oil	SAE 80W-90 API- GL4	0.31	



General maintenance information

Lift mast

Code	Unit	Operating materials	Specifications	Dimension
(B)	Lubrication	High-pressure grease	ID no. 0147873	As required
	Stop	Play		Min. 2 mm
(D)	Lift mast bearing	Grease	Aralub 4320 DIN 51825-KPF2N20 ID no. 0148659	Fill with grease until a small amount of fresh grease escapes
	Screws for the lift mast bearing	Torque wrench		For further information, refer to the workshop manual for the truck in question.

Load chains

Code	Unit	Operating materials	Specifications	Dimension
(C)	Lubrication	High-load chain	Fully synthetic	As required
		spray	Temperature range: -35°C to +250°C	
			ID no. 0156428	

Washer system

Code	Unit	Operating materials	Specifications	Dimension
	System filling	Screen wash	Winter,	As required
			ID no. 172566	

Flame proof enclosure

Code	Unit	Operating materials Specifications		Dimension
	Gap	Feeler gauge		< 0.05 mm
	Cover screws	Torque wrench	M5	2.5 to 5 Nm
			M6	5 to 10 Nm
			M8	10 to 20 Nm
			M10	20 to 40 Nm
	Column	Grease	Aluminium-saponi-	As required
			fied,	
			ID no. 0170761	
	Truck control unit	Desiccant (hygro bag)		As required



459

Preserving operational readiness

Preserving operational readiness

Changing the light bulb

A DANGER

Risk of explosion if incorrect light bulbs are used!

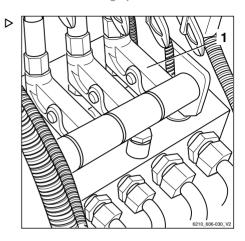
The lighting of the truck is designed to enable it to enter approved zones. Other light bulbs increase surface temperatures. Use in potentially explosive areas is prohibited if other light bulbs are employed.

Light bulbs must only be changed by an authorised service centre.



Lubricating the joints and controls

- Oil or grease bearings and joints according to the "maintenance data table".
- · Driver's seat guide
- Cab door hinges (variant)
- · Battery-door hinges or battery-cover hinges
- · Actuating rod (1) for valves (with multi-lever operation)



Checking the battery interlock and the battery door interlock

A DANGER

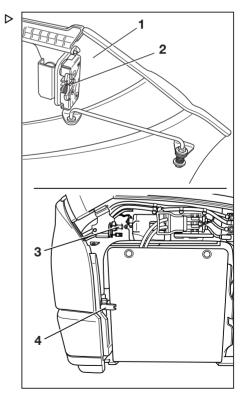
A malfunction of the battery interlock and the battery door interlock can cause the battery door to open and the battery could possibly fall out when the truck is tilted or during sharp deceleration. If the battery falls out, there is a danger of being crushed to death.

- If the interlock is deformed, damaged or difficult to move, inform the authorised service centre immediately. Do not operate the truck.
- Check that the interlocks function correctly.
- The interlocks must be greased and must move easily.
- Always check the interlock after an accident.



The interval for greasing is influenced significantly by the application conditions and the environmental conditions affecting the truck. Visual inspections and function checking of the interlock must be carried out as required and after every 1000 hours. Grease all moving parts of the interlock as necessary.

- Open the battery door (1).





Preserving operational readiness

- Check that the door lock (2) and the battery lock (4) move easily and that they are not deformed or damaged.
- Check that the indexing bolt (3) on the door lock is seated correctly and that it is not deformed or damaged.
- Grease the mechanisms of the interlocks.
- Close the battery door again.

Maintaining the seat belt

A DANGER

There is a risk to life if the seat belt fails during an accident!

If the seat belt is faulty, it may tear or open during an accident and no longer keep the driver in the driver's seat. The driver may therefore be hurled against the truck components or out of the truck.

- Ensure operational reliability by continually testing.
- Do not use a truck with a defective seat belt.
- Only have a defective belt replaced by your service centre.
- Only use genuine spare parts.
- Do not make any changes to the belt.



NOTE

Carry out the following checks on a regular basis (monthly). In the case of significant strain, a daily check is necessary.



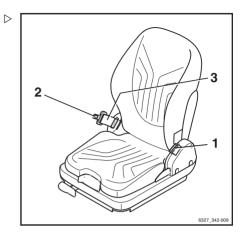
Checking the seat belt

 Pull out the belt (3) completely and check for wear.

The belt must not be frayed or cut. The stitching must not be loose.

- Check whether the belt is dirty.
- Check whether parts are worn or damaged, including the attachment points.
- Check the buckle (1) to ensure that it locks in properly.

When the belt tongue (2) is inserted, the belt must be held securely.



- The belt tongue (2) must release when the red button (4) is pressed.
- The automatic blocking mechanism must be tested at least once a year:
- Park the forklift truck on level ground.
- Pull out the belt with a jerk.

The automatic blocking mechanism must block extension of the belt.

- Tilt the seat at least 30 ° (if necessary, remove the seat).
- Slowly extend the belt.

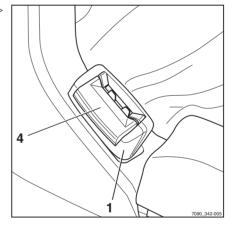
The automatic blocking mechanism must block extension of the belt.

Cleaning the seat belt

 Clean the seat belt as necessary, but without using chemical cleaning materials (a brush will suffice).

Replacement after an accident

As a rule, the seat belt must be changed after an accident.



Preserving operational readiness

Checking the driver's seat



A DANGER

Risk of explosion!

In the various categories of trucks with explosion protection, the driver's seat is covered with a special antistatic conductive textile which prevents the build-up of electrostatic charges.

Do not use any additional seat padding such as blankets, cushions or furs



Risk of injury!

- After an accident, check the driver's seat and its attached restraining belt and check that the seat is still securely fastened.
- Have the seat repaired by the authorised service centre if you identify any damage during the checks.
- Check the seat adjustment mechanism for correct operation.
- Check the condition of the seat (e.g. wear on the upholstery) and the secure fastening to the hood

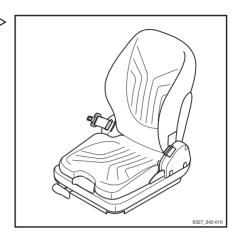
The driver's seat of the truck has anti-static characteristics

- Driver's seats with anti-static characteristics are identified on the backrest with decal information "ANTISTATIC CHECKED"
- The surface resistance must be less than or equal to 1 G Ω (10 Ω) at a test voltage of 500 V
- Damage to the cover must not extend over an area greater than that specified.
 Otherwise the respective section of the driver's seat must be replaced.

Refer to the table below.

Maximum permissible damage to the driver's seat

Category of the truck	Maximum permissi- ble damaged area			
IIA				
IIB	100 cm ²			



Category of the truck	Maximum permissi- ble damaged area
IIB + H ₂	
IIB + C ₂ H ₂	20 cm ²
IIB + H ₂ + C ₂ H ₂	

Please contact your authorised service centre for replacement or advice if you have any questions.

Checking the antistatic paint layer



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion due to static charge!

Depending on the version, non-conductive parts (plastic parts) on the truck must be painted using a special antistatic paint. This paint prevents the parts from building up an electrostatic charge. Otherwise, static discharge may occur, resulting in explosions in the surrounding atmosphere in potentially explosive areas.

- Have any damage repaired by your authorised service centre.
- Check the paint layer on the plastic parts for damage and abrasion.

The antistatic paint is applied to the following plastic parts:

- Panelling
- · Consoles
- Steering column panelling
- · Document holders
- · Compartments
- The protected areas are identified with the decal information "ELECTRICALLY CON-DUCTIVE".
- Non-coated areas are labelled as follows:
 "Non-conductive parts risk of electrostatic charge - only clean using a damp cloth"
- The surface resistance must be less than or equal to 1 G Ω (10⁹ Ω) at a test voltage of 500 V
- Any damage to the paint layer must not exceed a specified surface area.



Preserving operational readiness

Refer to the table below!

 For repairs, it is absolutely essential to use antistatic paint made by the same manufacturer and with the same specifications.

Maximum permissible damage to the surfaces

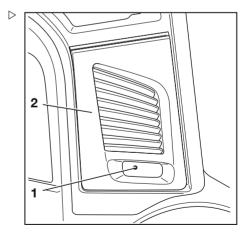
Category of the truck	Maximum permissi- ble damaged area
IIA	2
IIB	100 cm ²
IIB + H ₂	
IIB + C ₂ H ₂	20 cm ²
IIB + H ₂ + C ₂ H ₂	

Please contact your authorised service centre for repair or advice if you have any questions.

Servicing the heating system or air conditioning

Replacing the filter mat

- Loosen the screw (1).
- Remove the cover (2).





Preserving operational readiness

- Check the filter mat (1) for contamination.
- If the filter mat is grey in colour, replace it.

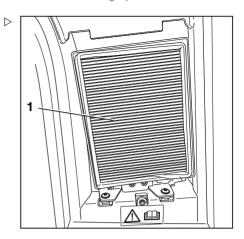


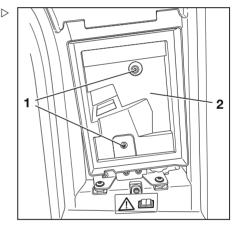
Change the filter mat at least every two months.

Cleaning the fresh-air inlet

The fresh-air inlet must be cleaned if the filter mat:

- · Is damaged,
- · Is incorrectly seated in the filter frame,
- · Has not been replaced every two months.
- Remove the filter mat.
- Loosen the screws (1) on the filter frame (2).
- Remove the filter frame (2).

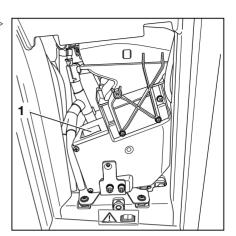






Preserving operational readiness

Remove any dust and dirt from the fresh-air > inlet (1) beneath the filter mat carrier.





Servicing wheels and tyres



▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

In potentially explosive areas, wheels and tyres that do not meet explosion-protection regulations may lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

- Only use approved, electrically conductive tyre types.
- Observe the explosion-protection regulations.

WARNING

Risk of accident due to uneven tyre wear!

The stability of the truck is reduced in the event of unequal tyre wear. The braking distance increases. The handling characteristics deteriorate.

- Change worn or damaged tyres without delay.
- When changing wheels or tyres, ensure that this does not cause the truck to tilt to one side (e.g. always replace right-hand and left-hand wheels at the same time).

A WARNING

Risk of accident due to the use of non-approved wheels.

The quality of the tyres and of the rims affects the stability of the truck. Changes must only be made following consultation with the manufacturer.

Rim parts must never be changed and rim parts from different manufacturers must not be mixed.

- If you wish to use a type of tyre or tyre manufacturer that has not been approved by STILL, obtain approval from STILL prior to use.
- Do not change rim parts and do not mix rim parts from different manufacturers.



Preserving operational readiness

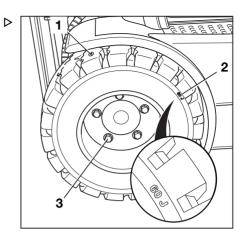
Checking the condition and wear of the tyres

 Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the tyres (1).

The level of wear exhibited by tyres on the same axle must be approximately the same. Superelastic tyres and solid rubber tyres can be worn down to the "60J wear limit" (2).

If the truck is to be used in winter conditions in areas where the StVZO (German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations) applies, the profile must be at least 4 mm.

Superelastic tyres may then only be operated as far as the "60J wear limit" (2) if their profile is re-cut and at least 4 mm deep.



Checking wheel fastenings

- Check that the wheel-fastening screws (3)
 of the drive axle and the wheel-fastening
 nuts of the steering axle are securely in
 place and re-tighten as necessary.
- Observe the torques specified in the "maintenance data table"

Servicing the steering axle

- Park the truck safely.

Lubricate the steering axle



ENVIRONMENT NOTE

Dispose of old grease and contaminated devices in accordance with the national regulations for the country in which the truck is being used.

The steering arms of the steering axle each have two lubricating nipples per side.

 Lubricate the lubricating nipples with grease in accordance with the "maintenance data table".

If, after a few strokes, there is no longer any old grease escaping, actuate the steering.



A WARNING

Risk of crushing!

Do not actuate the steering during lubrication.

- Switch on the truck.
- Actuate the steering.
- Park the truck safely again.
- Repeat the lubrication procedure.



NOTE

Please note: the more often the truck is cleaned, the more frequently it must be lubricated.

Checking the battery

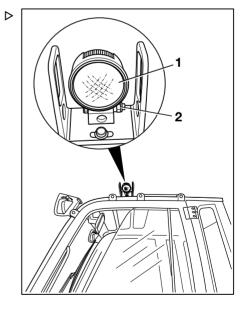
 For information on checking the battery, see the chapter entitled "Checking the battery condition, acid level and acid density".

Adjusting the warning zone light

- Switch on the truck.
- Make sure that the parking brake is applied.
- Loosen the nuts (2) to adjust each headlight.
- Adjust the headlight (1).

The distance from the light bar to the truck must be between 70...75 cm.

- Re-tighten the nuts (2).





Preserving operational readiness

Replacing the fuses



▲ DANGER

Danger from electrical current!

High voltages are present in the fuse box. There is a risk of electric shock.

- Do not open the fuse box.
- The fuses must be replaced only by the authorised service centre.

Checking the hydraulic system for leak tightness



WARNING

Hydraulic oil is hazardous to health!

Hydraulic oil under pressure can escape from leaking pipes and lines, and cause injuries.

Wear suitable protective gloves, protection goggles etc.

A CAUTION

Hydraulic hoses become brittle!

- Do not store hydraulic hoses for more than two years.
- Do not use hydraulic hoses for more than six years if they are subject to normal wear.
- Do not use hydraulic hoses for more than two years if they are subject to a high level of wear.
- Comply with the specifications of DGUV 113-020 in Germany.
- Outside of Germany, observe the national regulations for the country of use.
- Check pipe and hose connection screw joints for leaks (traces of oil).

Replace hose lines if they display the following abnormalities:

- Outer layer has been damaged, or is brittle or cracked
- Leaking
- Deformation (e.g. with blisters or kinks)
- · A fitting has come loose
- A fitting is badly damaged or corroded



Preserving operational readiness

Replace pipes if they display the following abnormalities:

- Abrasion
- · Deformation and bending
- Leaking



Preserving operational readiness

Check the hydraulic oil level

WARNING

Hydraulic oils are hazardous to your health.

- Observe the safety regulations set out in the chapter entitled "Hydraulic fluid".



When changing to a different type of hydraulic oil, the authorised service centre must adjust the parameters of the truck control unit.

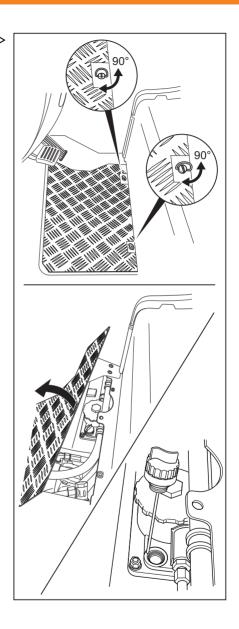
- Park the truck securely on a horizontal sur-
- Tilt the lift mast backwards until it reaches the stop.
- Lower the fork carriage; if attachments are fitted, retract the working cylinders.

A CAUTION

Potential for damage to the battery male connector!

If the battery male connector is disconnected while the truck is switched on (under load), an arc will be produced. This can lead to erosion at the contacts, which considerably shortens the service life of the

- Switch off the truck before the battery male connector is disconnected.
- Do not disconnect the battery male connector while the truck is switched on, except in an emergency.
- Disconnect the battery male connector.
- Turn the bayonet catches on the bottom plate 90° to the left.
- Fold up the bottom plate and hold it in place.
- Unscrew the breather filter with the dipstick in an anti-clockwise direction.
- Keep the breather filter and dipstick in a horizontal position.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick.







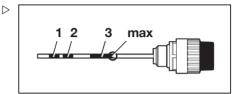
ENVIRONMENT NOTE

Carefully collect any spilt hydraulic oil. Dispose of this hydraulic oil in accordance with environmental regulations.

The marks (1), (2) and (3) indicate the minimum filling levels for the different lift mast versions.



The optimum hydraulic oil level is between the marks (3) and (max) for all lift mast versions.



Assignment of the lift mast version to the mark on the dipstick

	Overall height [mm]				0.1 6.11		
Marking	Easy View	Telescopic lift mast		NiHo and triple mast			Oil filling quantity [I]
	2.0 t	1.6 to 1.8 t	2.0 t	1.6 t	1.8 t	2.0 t	quantity [i]
1	≤ 2610	≤ 3010	≤ 2610	≤ 2110	≤ 2160	≤ 1910	23.3
		3060	2660	2160	2210	1960	
2	-	 3260	 3260	 2660	 2710	 2310	25.3
3	-	-	-	≥ 2710	≥ 2760	≥ 2360	29.9

A CAUTION

Risk of damage.

If the hydraulic oil level is too low, the steering is restricted and the pump may be damaged.

- If the oil level is too low, do not use the truck and contact the authorised service centre.
- Screw in the breather filter and the dipstick in a clockwise direction.
- Close the bottom plate again.
- Connect the battery male connector.



Preserving operational readiness

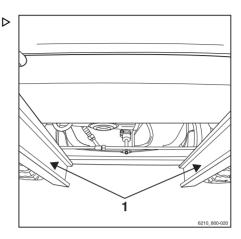
Lubricating the lift mast and roller track

- Remove dirt and lubricant residue from the roller track.
- Lubricate the roller tracks (1) of the outside, middle, and inside mast with a super-pressure adhesion lubricant to reduce wear.
 See ⇒ Chapter "Maintenance data table",
 Page 457 .



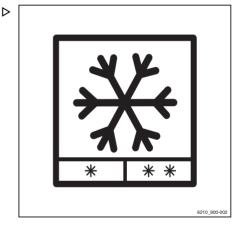
NOTE

Spray the roller track evenly from a distance of approx. 15-20 cm. Wait approx. 15 minutes until the equipment is ready to use again.



Preserving operational readiness for cold store application

On trucks for cold store application (variant), check all rollers and chains in the lift mast for ease of movement once a week.





1000-hour maintenance/annual maintenance

Other work that must be carried out

 Perform all tasks required to maintain full operability; see the chapter entitled "Remaining ready for operation".

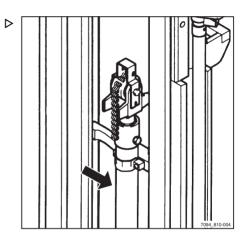
Checking the lift cylinders and connections for leaks

WARNING

Risk of injury

Observe safety regulations for working on the lift mast, see the "Working at the front of the truck" chapter.

- Check hydraulic connections and lift cylinders for leaks (visual inspection).
- Have leaking screw joints or leaking hydraulic cylinders repaired by the authorised service centre.



Checking the fork arms



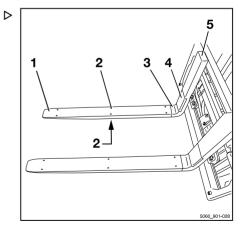
▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

If fork arms are used that do not correspond to the explosion-protection regulations, this can lead to spark formation, resulting in explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

- Only use fork arms that are approved for use in potentially explosive areas according to the nameplate of the truck.
- If the cladding is worn, do **not** operate the truck in potentially explosive areas.

The fork arms (1) are specially coated to prevent sparks forming when coming into contact with the load or the ground. The cladding on the fork arms has six inspection holes (2) on the top and the bottom. These inspection





1000-hour maintenance/annual maintenance

holes allow the remaining cladding thickness to be determined. The surface of the back of the fork (4) is also clad with the same material. There must be no cracks or deformations visible on the fork arms in the area around the fork bend (3). The coating does not extend to the area around the fork bends so that it is possible to check for cracks.

The Miretti job number is stamped into the fork arm heads (5). If this number does not match the data on the nameplate of the truck, the fork arms must not be used until clearance has been given by the authorised service centre.

- Perform a visual inspection of the fork arms (1).
- Check the cladding (2, 4) for wear.

It must satisfy the minimum thickness of 1 mm.

- Check the fork bends (3) for cracks.
- Compare the Miretti job number on the fork arm heads (5) with the data on the nameplate of the truck.
- Ensure that only fork arms that comply with explosion-protection regulations are fitted.

Thickness and material of the cladding

Thickness in new condition		
Тор	2 mm	
Side	2 111111	
Bottom	4 mm	
Material depending or truck	the category of the	
IIA	Stainless steel to Al-	
IIB	SI 316L	
IIB + H ₂		
IIB + C ₂ H ₂	Copper materials	
IIB + H ₂ + C ₂ H ₂		

 If you have any questions about this please contact your authorised service centre.



Checking the condition and correct operation of the latch

 Check the fork arms (1) for any visible deformation. Wear must not amount to more than 10% of the original thickness.

A CAUTION

Risk of component damage!

Always replace worn fork arms in pairs.

- Check that the fork latch (3) is functioning correctly.
- Make sure that the locking screw (2) is present and cannot fall out.

Repairing the fork arms



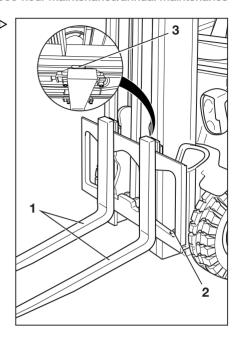
A DANGER

Risk of explosion due to improper repair!

Damaged or worn cladding may be only repaired by the manufacturer or by a specialist welder.

All straightening work (hot and cold) on deformed fork arms is forbidden.

Contact the authorised service centre.



Checking the reversible fork arms

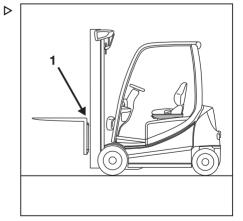


▲ DANGER

Risk of explosion!

If reversible fork arms are used that do not correspond to the explosion-protection regulations, this can lead to spark formation, resulting in explosions in the surrounding atmosphere.

- Only use reversible fork arms that are approved for use in potentially explosive areas according to the nameplate of the truck.
- If the cladding is worn, do **not** operate the truck in potentially explosive areas.
- Check the outside of the fork bend (1) for cracks.



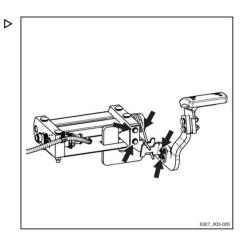


1000-hour maintenance/annual maintenance

- Check the cladding of the fork arms for wear; see the section entitled "Checking the fork arms".
- If the fork bends or the cladding show signs of damage, notify the authorised service centre.

Checking the double pedal

- Remove the floorplate.
- Check that the support and springs of the double pedal mechanism are securely positioned
- Check that all screws are sealed with locking varnish.



Checking the battery changeover frame

 The screw joints and welded seams of the battery changeover frame must be subjected to a visual inspection.



Technical data

5 Technical data

Ergonomic dimensions

Ergonomic dimensions

A WARNING

Danger of impact injuries to the head!

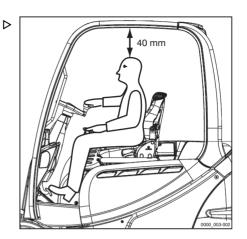
If the head of the operator is located too close to the underside of the roof, the suspension of the driver's seat or an accident may cause the head to strike the overhead quard.

To avoid head injuries, a minimum distance of **40 mm** must be ensured between the underside of the roof and the head of the tallest operator.

To determine the actual head clearance, the operator must sit in the driver's seat and the seat suspension must be set to this driver's requirements.

Due to the individual nature of height and body weight as well as the wide variety of types of driver's seat and overhead guard, the minimum head clearance must be ensured in every truck.

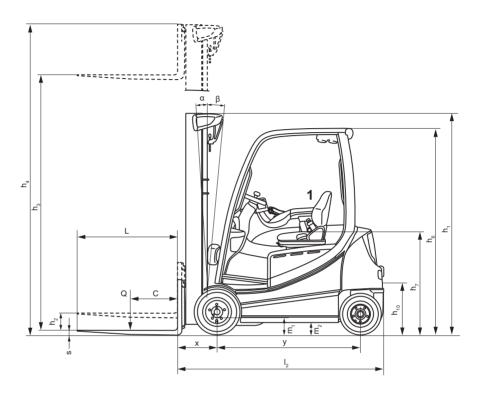
The driver's compartment has been designed taking ergonomics in the workplace into account and in accordance with EN ISO 3411. In general, from the seat position, the operator has sufficient space to reach the operating devices safely, to operate the truck and to view the outline of the truck. Operators whose body size deviates from the specified dimensions on which EN ISO 3411 is based must be individually considered by the operating company.

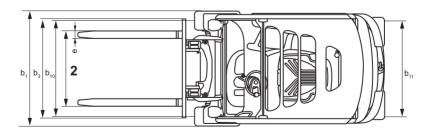




Dimensions

Dimensions





1 Seat is adjustable ± 90 mm

2 Fork spacing is adjustable



Technical data

Dimensions



Measurements h_1 , h_3 , h_4 , h_6 and b_1 are customised and can be taken from the order confirmation.



VDI datasheet: RX20-14C with steering turntable



This VDI datasheet specifies only the technical values for trucks with standard equipment. Different tyres, lift masts, additional units etc. can produce different values.

Key data

Model		RX20-14C	
Type number		6219	
Manufacturer		STILL GmbH	
Drive		Electric	
Operation		Seat	
Rated capacity/load	Q (kg)	1400	
Load centre of gravity distance	c (mm)	500	
Load distance	x (mm)	374	
Wheelbase	y (mm)	1319	

Weights

Model		RX20-14C	
Type number		6219	
Net weight	kg	2926	
Front axle load, laden	kg	3826	
Rear axle load, laden	kg	500	
Front axle load, unladen	kg	1498	
Rear axle load, unladen	kg	1428	

Wheels, chassis frame

Model	RX20-14C
Type number	6219
Tyres	Superelastic
Tyre size, front	180/70-8
Tyre size, rear	125/75-8
Number of front wheels (x = driven)	2x
Number of rear wheels (x = driven)	2



Technical data

VDI datasheet: RX20-14C with steering turntable

Model		RX20-14C	
Type number		6219	
Track width, front	b ₁₀ (mm)	932	
Track width, rear	b ₁₁ (mm)	168	

Basic dimensions

Model Type number		RX20-14C
		6219
Forward tilt of lift mast/fork carriage	α (degrees)	5
Backwards tilt of lift mast/fork car- riage	β (degrees)	6
Height with lift mast retracted	h ₁ (mm)	2160
Free lift	h ₂ (mm)	150
Lift	h ₃ (mm)	3180
Height with lift mast extended	h ₄ (mm)	3742
Height above overhead guard (cab)	h ₆ (mm)	2035 (1949)
Seat height/standing height	h ₇ (mm)	965
Coupling height	h ₁₀ (mm)	473
Overall length	I ₁ (mm)	2661
Length including fork back	l ₂ (mm)	1861
Overall width	b ₁ (mm)	1099
Fork arm thickness	s (mm)	40
Fork arm width	e (mm)	80
Fork arm length	I (mm)	800
Fork carriage	Standard; class; form	ISO 2328 II A
Fork carriage width	b ₃ (mm)	980
Ground clearance with load below lift mast	m ₁ (mm)	≥ 90
Ground clearance at the middle of the wheelbase	m ₂ (mm)	114
Aisle width for pallet 1000 x 1200 crosswise	A _{st} (mm)	3186
Aisle width for pallet 800 x 1200 longitudinal	A _{st} (mm)	3311
Turning radius	W _a (mm)	1487
Smallest pivot point distance	b ₁₃ (mm)	_



Performance data

Model Type number		RX20-14C
		6219
Driving speed with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	km/h	16/16/20
Driving speed without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	km/h	16/16/20
Lifting speed with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	m/s	0.54
Lifting speed without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	m/s	0.75
Lowering speed with load	m/s	0.5
Lowering speed without load	m/s	0.5
Pulling force with load	N	5100
Pulling force without load	N	5100
Max. pulling force with load	N	12300
Max. pulling force without load	N	7700
Climbing capability with load	%	20.4
Climbing capability without load	%	24
Max. climbing capability with load	%	30.3
Max. climbing capability without load	%	27.9
Acceleration time with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	s	5.7/5.4/5.1
Acceleration time without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	s	5.4/5.1/4.8
Service brake		Electr./mech.

Gradients

The values specified in the "Performance data" table as the maximum climbing capability can be used only to compare the performance of forklift trucks in the same category. The specified values in no way represent the normal daily operating conditions.

A WARNING

To use the truck safely – with or without a load – the maximum ascending or descending gradient permitted for travel is 15%.

 If you have any questions, contact your authorised service centre.



487

6 Technical data

VDI datasheet: RX20-14C with steering turntable

Electric motor

Model		RX20-14C
Type number		6219
Traction motor, power rating at S2: 60 min	kW	2x6.5
Lift motor, power rating at 20% ED	kW	11
Battery	Standard; circuit	DIN 43531 B
Battery voltage	U (V)	48
Battery capacity	K ₅ (Ah)	625
Battery weight	kg	856

Miscellaneous

Model Type number		RX20-14C 6219
Oil flow for attachments	l/min	30
Sound pressure level L _{pAZ} (Driver's compartment)	dB (A)	< 66
Human vibration: acceleration according to EN 13059	m/s ²	< 0.6
Tow coupling, DIN type/model		Bolt



VDI datasheet: RX20-16 with steering turntable

VDI datasheet: RX20-16 with steering turntable



This VDI datasheet specifies only the technical values for trucks with standard equipment. Different tyres, lift masts, additional units etc. can produce different values.

Key data

Model		RX20-16C	RX20-16	RX20-16L
Type number		6220	6221	6222
Manufacturer		STILL GmbH	STILL GmbH	STILL GmbH
Drive		Electric	Electric	Electric
Operation		Seat	Seat	Seat
Rated capacity/load	Q (kg)	1600	1600	1600
Load centre of gravity distance	c (mm)	500	500	500
Load distance	x (mm)	374	374	374
Wheelbase	y (mm)	1319	1409	1517

Weights

Model		RX20-16C	RX20-16	RX20-16L
Type number		6220	6221	6222
Net weight	kg	3125	3057	3127
Front axle load, laden	kg	4160	4112	4133
Rear axle load, laden	kg	565	545	594
Front axle load, unladen	kg	1500	1520	1611
Rear axle load, unladen	kg	1625	1537	1516

Wheels, chassis frame

Model	RX20-16C	RX20-16	RX20-16L
Type number	6220	6221	6222
Tyres	Superelastic	Superelastic	Superelastic
Tyre size, front	180/70-8	180/70-8	180/70-8
Tyre size, rear	125/75-8	125/75-8	125/75-8
Number of front wheels (x = driven)	2x	2x	2x
Number of rear wheels (x = driven)	2	2	2



VDI datasheet: RX20-16 with steering turntable

Model		RX20-16C	RX20-16	RX20-16L
Type number		6220	6221	6222
Track width, front	b ₁₀ (mm)	932	932	932
Track width, rear	b ₁₁ (mm)	168	168	168

Basic dimensions

Model		RX20-16C	RX20-16	RX20-16L	
Type number		6220	6221	6222	
Forward tilt of lift mast/fork carriage	α (degrees)	5	5	5	
Backwards tilt of lift mast/fork car- riage	β (degrees)	6	6	6	
Height with lift mast retracted	h ₁ (mm)	2160	2160	2160	
Free lift	h ₂ (mm)	150	150	150	
Lift	h ₃ (mm)	3180	3180	3180	
Height with lift mast extended	h ₄ (mm)	3742	3742	3742	
Height above overhead guard (cab)	h ₆ (mm)	2035 (1949)	2035 (1949)	2035 (1949)	
Seat height/standing height	h ₇ (mm)	965	965	965	
Coupling height	h ₁₀ (mm)	473	473	473	
Overall length	I ₁ (mm)	2661	2744	2852	
Length including fork back	l ₂ (mm)	1861	1944	2052	
Overall width	b ₁ (mm)	1099	1099	1099	
Fork arm thickness	s (mm)	40	40	40	
Fork arm width	e (mm)	80	80	80	
Fork arm length	I (mm)	800	800	800	
Fork carriage	Standard; class; form	ISO 2328 II A	ISO 2328 II A	ISO 2328 II A	
Fork carriage width	b ₃ (mm)	980	980	980	
Ground clearance with load below lift mast	m ₁ (mm)	≥ 90	≥ 90	≥ 90	
Ground clearance at the middle of the wheelbase	m ₂ (mm)	114	114	114	
Aisle width for pallet 1000 x 1200 crosswise	A _{st} (mm)	3186	3269	3377	
Aisle width for pallet 800 x 1200 longitudinal	A _{st} (mm)	3311	3394	3502	
Turning radius	W _a (mm)	1487	1570	1678	
Smallest pivot point distance	b ₁₃ (mm)	_	_	_	



Performance data

Model		RX20-16C	RX20-16	RX20-16L
Type number		6220	6221	6222
Driving speed with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	km/h	16/16/20	16/16/20	16/16/20
Driving speed without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	km/h	16/16/20	16/16/20	16/16/20
Lifting speed with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	m/s	0.53	0.53	0.53
Lifting speed without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	m/s	0.75	0.75	0.75
Lowering speed with load	m/s	0.51	0.51	0.51
Lowering speed without load	m/s	0.5	0.5	0.5
Pulling force with load	N	5100	5100	5100
Pulling force without load	N	5200	5200	5200
Max. pulling force with load	N	12300	12,300	12,300
Max. pulling force without load	N	7700	7900	8500
Climbing capability with load	%	18.6	18.6	18.6
Climbing capability without load	%	24	24	24
Max. climbing capability with load	%	27.6	28	27.4
Max. climbing capability without load	%	26	27.4	28.7
Acceleration time with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	s	5.7/5.4/5.1	5.7/5.4/5.1	5.7/5.4/5.1
Acceleration time without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	s	5.4/5.1/4.8	5.4/5.1/4.8	5.4/5.1/4.8
Service brake		Electr. / mech.	Electr. / mech.	Electr. / mech.

Gradients

The values specified in the "Performance data" table as the maximum climbing capability can be used only to compare the performance of forklift trucks in the same category. The specified values in no way represent the normal daily operating conditions.



VDI datasheet: RX20-16 with steering turntable

WARNING

To use the truck safely – with or without a load – the maximum ascending or descending gradient permitted for travel is 15%.

 If you have any questions, contact your authorised service centre.

Electric motor

Model		RX20-16C	RX20-16	RX20-16L
Type number		6220	6221	6222
Traction motor, power rating at S2: 60 min	kW	2x6.5	2x6.5	2x6.5
Lift motor, power rating at S3: 15%	kW	11	11	11
Battery	Standard; circuit	DIN 43531 B	DIN 43531 B	DIN 43531 B
Battery voltage	U (V)	48	48	48
Battery capacity	K ₅ (Ah)	625	625	750
Battery weight	kg	856	855	1013

Miscellaneous

Model		RX20-16C	RX20-16	RX20-16L
Type number		6220	6221	6222
Working pressure for attachments	bar	160	160	160
Oil flow for attachments	l/min	30	30	30
Sound pressure level L _{pAZ} (Driver's compartment)	dB (A)	< 66	< 66	< 66
Human vibration: acceleration according to EN 13059	m/s ²	< 0.6	< 0.6	< 0.6
Tow coupling, DIN type/model		Bolt	Bolt	Bolt



VDI datasheet: RX20-18 and RX20-20 with steering turntable

VDI datasheet: RX20-18 and RX20-20 with steering turntable



This VDI datasheet specifies only the technical values for trucks with standard equipment. Different tyres, lift masts, additional units etc. can produce different values.

Key data

Model		RX20-18	RX20-18L	RX20-20L
Type number		6223	6224	6225
Manufacturer		STILL GmbH	STILL GmbH	STILL GmbH
Drive		Electric	Electric	Electric
Operation		Seat	Seat	Seat
Rated capacity/load	Q (kg)	1800	1800	2000
Load centre of gravity distance	c (mm)	500	500	500
Load distance	x (mm)	374	374	388
Wheelbase	y (mm)	1409	1517	1517

Weights

Model		RX20-18	RX20-18L	RX20-20L
Type number		6223	6224	6225
Net weight	kg	3231	3419	3486
Front axle load, laden	kg	4440	4450	4860
Rear axle load, laden	kg	590	769	623
Front axle load, unladen	kg	1524	1612	1689
Rear axle load, unladen	kg	1707	1806	1794

Wheels, chassis frame

Model	RX20-18	RX20-18L	RX20-20L
Type number	6223	6224	6225
Tyres	Superelastic	Superelastic	Superelastic
Tyre size, front	200/50-10	200/50-10	200/50-10
Tyre size, rear	140/55-9	140/55-9	140/55-9
Number of front wheels (x = driven)	2x	2x	2x



VDI datasheet: RX20-18 and RX20-20 with steering turntable

Model		RX20-18	RX20-18L	RX20-20L
Type number		6223	6224	6225
Number of rear wheels (x = driven)		2	2	2
Track width, front	b ₁₀ (mm)	942	942	942
Track width, rear	b ₁₁ (mm)	172	172	172

Basic dimensions

Model		RX20-18	RX20-18L	RX20-20L
Type number		6223	6224	6225
Forward tilt of lift mast/fork carriage	α (degrees)	5	5	5
Backwards tilt of lift mast/fork car- riage	β (degrees)	6	6	6
Height with lift mast retracted	h ₁ (mm)	2160	2160	2160
Free lift	h ₂ (mm)	150	150	150
Lift	h ₃ (mm)	3180	3180	3180
Height with lift mast extended	h ₄ (mm)	3742	3742	3742
Height above overhead guard (cab)	h ₆ (mm)	2035 (1949)	2035 (1949)	2035 (1949)
Seat height/standing height	h ₇ (mm)	965	965	965
Coupling height	h ₁₀ (mm)	473	473	473
Overall length	I ₁ (mm)	2744	2852	2866
Length including fork back	l ₂ (mm)	1944	2052	2066
Overall width	b ₁ (mm)	1149	1149	1149
Fork arm thickness	s (mm)	40	40	40
Fork arm width	e (mm)	80	80	80
Fork arm length	I (mm)	800	800	800
Fork carriage	Standard; class; form	ISO 2328 II A	ISO 2328 II A	ISO 2328 II A
Fork carriage width	b ₃ (mm)	980	980	980
Ground clearance with load below lift mast	m ₁ (mm)	≥ 90	≥ 90	≥ 90
Ground clearance at the middle of the wheelbase	m ₂ (mm)	114	114	114
Aisle width for pallet 1000 x 1200 crosswise	A _{st} (mm)	3269	3377	3390
Aisle width for pallet 800 x 1200 longitudinal	A _{st} (mm)	3269	3377	3390
Turning radius	W _a (mm)	1570	1678	1678
Smallest pivot point distance	b ₁₃ (mm)	_	_	_



VDI datasheet: RX20-18 and RX20-20 with steering turntable

Performance data

Model		RX20-18	RX20-18L	RX20-20L
Type number		6223	6224	6225
Driving speed with load (Blue-Q/ STILL Classic/sprint mode)	km/h	16/16/20	16/16/20	16/16/20
Driving speed without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	km/h	16/16/20	16/16/20	16/16/20
Lifting speed with load (Blue-Q/ STILL Classic/sprint mode)	m/s	0.52	0.52	0.45
Lifting speed without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	m/s	0.75	0.75	0.63
Lowering speed with load	m/s	0.52	0.52	0.48
Lowering speed without load	m/s	0.5	0.5	0.41
Pulling force with load	N	4900	4800	4800
Pulling force without load	N	5100	5100	5000
Max. pulling force with load	N	12000	12000	11900
Max. pulling force without load	N	7900	8500	8700
Climbing capability with load	%	18.6	18.6	15
Climbing capability without load	%	24	24	18.1
Max. climbing capability with load	%	25.1	25.3	23
Max. climbing capability without load	%	26	28.3	27
Acceleration time with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	s	5.8/5.5/5.2	5.8/5.5/5.2	5.8/5.5/5.3
Acceleration time without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	s	5.4/5.1/4.8	5.4/5.1/4.8	5.4/5.1/4.8
Service brake		Electr. / mech.	Electr. / mech.	Electr. / mech.

Gradients

The values specified in the "Performance data" table as the maximum climbing capability can be used only to compare the performance of forklift trucks in the same category. The specified values in no way represent the normal daily operating conditions.

WARNING

To use the truck safely – with or without a load – the maximum ascending or descending gradient permitted for travel is 15%.

 If you have any questions, contact your authorised service centre.



VDI datasheet: RX20-18 and RX20-20 with steering turntable

Electric motor

Model		RX20-18	RX20-18L	RX20-20L
Type number		6223	6224	6225
Traction motor, power rating at S2: 60 min	kW	2x6.5	2x6.5	2x6.5
Lift motor, power rating at S3: 15%	kW	11	11	11
Battery	Standard; circuit	DIN 43531 A (B)	DIN 43531 A	DIN 43531 A (B)
Battery voltage	U (V)	48	48	48
Battery capacity	K ₅ (Ah)	625	750	750
Battery weight	kg	855	1013	1013

Miscellaneous

Model		RX20-18	RX20-18L	RX20-20L
Type number		6223	6224	6225
Working pressure for attachments	bar	160	160	160
Oil flow for attachments	l/min	30	30	30
Sound pressure level L _{pAZ} (Driver's compartment)	dB (A)	< 66	< 66	< 66
Human vibration: acceleration according to EN 13059	m/s ²	< 0.6	< 0.6	< 0.6
Tow coupling, DIN type/model		Bolt	Bolt	Bolt



VDI datasheet: RX20-16 with swing axle

VDI datasheet: RX20-16 with swing axle



This VDI datasheet specifies only the technical values for trucks with standard equipment. Different tyres, lift masts, additional units etc. can produce different values.

Key data

Model		RX20-16P	RX20-16PL
Type number		6226	6227
Manufacturer		STILL GmbH	STILL GmbH
Drive		Electric	Electric
Operation		Seat	Seat
Rated capacity/load	Q (kg)	1600	1600
Load centre of gravity distance	c (mm)	500	500
Load distance	x (mm)	374	374
Wheelbase	y (mm)	1429	1537

Weights

Model		RX20-16P	RX20-16PL
Type number		6226	6227
Net weight	kg	3018	3178
Front axle load, laden	kg	4098	4121
Rear axle load, laden	kg	520	657
Front axle load, unladen	kg	1520	1612
Rear axle load, unladen	kg	1498	1567

Wheels, chassis frame

Model	RX20-16P	RX20-16PL
Type number	6226	6227
Tyres	Superelastic	Superelastic
Tyre size, front	180/70-8	180/70-8
Tyre size, rear	150/75-8	150/75-8
Number of front wheels (x = driven)	2x	2x
Number of rear wheels (x = driven)	2	2



VDI datasheet: RX20-16 with swing axle

Model		RX20-16P	RX20-16PL
Type number		6226	6227
Track width, front	b ₁₀ (mm)	932	932
Track width, rear	b ₁₁ (mm)	807	807

Basic dimensions

Model		RX20-16P	RX20-16PL	
Type number		6226	6227	
Forward tilt of lift mast/fork carriage	α (degrees)	5	5	
Backwards tilt of lift mast/fork car- riage	β (degrees)	6	6	
Height with lift mast retracted	h ₁ (mm)	2160	2160	
Free lift	h ₂ (mm)	150	150	
Lift	h ₃ (mm)	3180	3180	
Height with lift mast extended	h ₄ (mm)	3742	3742	
Height above overhead guard (cab)	h ₆ (mm)	2035 (1949)	2035 (1949)	
Seat height/standing height	h ₇ (mm)	965	965	
Coupling height	h ₁₀ (mm)	537	537	
Overall length	I ₁ (mm)	2837	2945	
Length including fork back	l ₂ (mm)	2037	2145	
Overall width	b ₁ (mm)	1099	1099	
Fork arm thickness	s (mm)	40	40	
Fork arm width	e (mm)	80	80	
Fork arm length	I (mm)	800	800	
Fork carriage	Standard; class; form	ISO 2328 II A	ISO 2328 II A	
Fork carriage width	b ₃ (mm)	980	980	
Ground clearance with load below lift mast	m ₁ (mm)	≥ 90	≥ 90	
Ground clearance at the middle of the wheelbase	m ₂ (mm)	114	114	
Aisle width for pallet 1000 x 1200 crosswise	A _{st} (mm)	3362	3470	
Aisle width for pallet 800 x 1200 longitudinal	A _{st} (mm)	3487	3595	
Turning radius	W _a (mm)	1663	1771	
Smallest pivot point distance	b ₁₃ (mm)	_	_	



Performance data

Model		RX20-16P	RX20-16PL
Type number		6226	6227
Driving speed with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	km/h	16/16/20	16/16/20
Driving speed without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	km/h	16/16/20	16/16/20
Lifting speed with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	m/s	0.53	0.53
Lifting speed without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	m/s	0.75	0.75
Lowering speed with load	m/s	0.51	0.51
Lowering speed without load	m/s	0.5	0.5
Pulling force with load	N	5000	5000
Pulling force without load	N	5100	5100
Max. pulling force with load	N	12300	12,300
Max. pulling force without load	N	7900	8500
Climbing capability with load	%	18.6	18.6
Climbing capability without load	%	24	24
Max. climbing capability with load	%	27.8	27.6
Max. climbing capability without load	%	27.8	28.9
Acceleration time with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	s	5.7/5.4/5.1	5.7/5.4/5.1
Acceleration time without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	s	5.4/5.1/4.8	5.4/5.1/4.8
Service brake		Electr. / mech.	Electr. / mech.

Gradients

The values specified in the "Performance data" table as the maximum climbing capability can be used only to compare the performance of forklift trucks in the same category. The specified values in no way represent the normal daily operating conditions.

WARNING

To use the truck safely – with or without a load – the maximum ascending or descending gradient permitted for travel is 15%.

 If you have any questions, contact your authorised service centre.



VDI datasheet: RX20-16 with swing axle

Electric motor

Model		RX20-16P	RX20-16PL
Type number		6226	6227
Traction motor, power rating at S2: 60 min	kW	2x6.5	2x6.5
Lift motor, power rating at S3: 15%	kW	11	11
Battery	Standard; circuit	DIN 43531 A (B)	DIN 43531 A
Battery voltage	U (V)	48	48
Battery capacity	K ₅ (Ah)	625	750
Battery weight	kg	855	1013

Miscellaneous

Model		RX20-16P	RX20-16PL
Type number		6226	6227
Working pressure for attachments	bar	160	160
Oil flow for attachments	l/min	30	30
Sound pressure level L _{pAZ} (Driver's compartment)	dB (A)	< 66	< 66
Human vibration: acceleration according to EN 13059	m/s ²	< 0.6	< 0.6
Tow coupling, DIN type/model		Bolt	Bolt



VDI datasheet: RX20-18 with swing axle



This VDI datasheet specifies only the technical values for trucks with standard equipment. Different tyres, lift masts, additional units etc. can produce different values.

Key data

Model		RX20-18P	RX20-18PL
Type number		6228	6229
Manufacturer		STILL GmbH	STILL GmbH
Drive		Electric	Electric
Operation		Seat	Seat
Rated capacity/load	Q (kg)	1800	1800
Load centre of gravity distance	c (mm)	500	500
Load distance	x (mm)	374	374
Wheelbase	y (mm)	1429	1537

Weights

Model		RX20-18P	RX20-18PL
Type number		6228	6229
Net weight	kg	3254	3178
Front axle load, laden	kg	4439	4435
Rear axle load, laden	kg	616	543
Front axle load, unladen	kg	1538	1612
Rear axle load, unladen	kg	1717	1567

Wheels, chassis frame

Model	RX20-18P	RX20-18PL
Type number	6228	6229
Tyres	Superelastic	Superelastic
Tyre size, front	200/50-10	200/50-10
Tyre size, rear	150/75-8	150/75-8
Number of front wheels (x = driven)	2x	2x
Number of rear wheels (x = driven)	2	2



VDI datasheet: RX20-18 with swing axle

Model		RX20-18P	RX20-18PL
Type number		6228	6229
Track width, front	b ₁₀ (mm)	942	942
Track width, rear	b ₁₁ (mm)	807	807

Basic dimensions

Model		RX20-18P	RX20-18PL
Type number		6228	6229
Forward tilt of lift mast/fork carriage	α (degrees)	5	5
Backwards tilt of lift mast/fork car- riage	β (degrees)	6	6
Height with lift mast retracted	h ₁ (mm)	2160	2160
Free lift	h ₂ (mm)	150	150
Lift	h ₃ (mm)	3180	3180
Height with lift mast extended	h ₄ (mm)	3742	3742
Height above overhead guard (cab)	h ₆ (mm)	2035 (1949)	2035 (1949)
Seat height/standing height	h ₇ (mm)	965	965
Coupling height	h ₁₀ (mm)	537	537
Overall length	I ₁ (mm)	2837	2945
Length including fork back	l ₂ (mm)	2037	2145
Overall width	b ₁ (mm)	1149	1149
Fork arm thickness	s (mm)	40	40
Fork arm width	e (mm)	80	80
Fork arm length	I (mm)	800	800
Fork carriage	Standard; class; form	ISO 2328 II A	ISO 2328 II A
Fork carriage width	b ₃ (mm)	980	980
Ground clearance with load below lift mast	m ₁ (mm)	≥ 90	≥ 90
Ground clearance at the middle of the wheelbase	m ₂ (mm)	114	114
Aisle width for pallet 1000 x 1200 crosswise	A _{st} (mm)	3362	3470
Aisle width for pallet 800 x 1200 longitudinal	A _{st} (mm)	3487	3595
Turning radius	W _a (mm)	1663	1771
Smallest pivot point distance	b ₁₃ (mm)	_	_



Performance data

Model		RX20-18P	RX20-18PL
Type number		6228	6229
Driving speed with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	km/h	16/16/20	16/16/20
Driving speed without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	km/h	16/16/20	16/16/20
Lifting speed with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	m/s	0.52	0.52
Lifting speed without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	m/s	0.75	0.75
Lowering speed with load	m/s	0.52	0.52
Lowering speed without load	m/s	0.5	0.5
Pulling force with load	N	4800	4800
Pulling force without load	N	5000	5100
Max. pulling force with load	N	11900	12000
Max. pulling force without load	N	8000	8500
Climbing capability with load	%	18.6	18.6
Climbing capability without load	%	24	24
Max. Climbing capability with load	%	24.8	25.4
Max. climbing capability without load	%	26	28.6
Acceleration time with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	s	5.8/5.5/5.2	5.8/5.5/5.2
Acceleration time without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	s	5.4/5.1/4.8	5.4/5.1/4.8
Service brake		Electr. / mech.	Electr. / mech.

Gradients

The values specified in the "Performance data" table as the maximum climbing capability can be used only to compare the performance of forklift trucks in the same category. The specified values in no way represent the normal daily operating conditions.

WARNING

To use the truck safely – with or without a load – the maximum ascending or descending gradient permitted for travel is 15%.

 If you have any questions, contact your authorised service centre.



VDI datasheet: RX20-18 with swing axle

Electric motor

Model		RX20-18P	RX20-18PL
Type number		6228	6229
Traction motor, power rating at S2: 60 min	kW	2x6.5	2x6.5
Lift motor, power rating at S3: 15%	kW	11	11
Battery	Standard; circuit	DIN 43531 A (B)	DIN 43531 A
Battery voltage	U (V)	48	48
Battery capacity	K ₅ (Ah)	625	750
Battery weight	kg	855	1013

Miscellaneous

Model		RX20-18P	RX20-18PL
Type number		6228	6229
Working pressure for attachments	bar	160	160
Oil flow for attachments	l/min	30	30
Sound pressure level L _{pAZ} (Driver's compartment)	dB (A)	< 66	< 66
Human vibration: acceleration according to EN 13059	m/s ²	< 0.6	< 0.6
Tow coupling, DIN type/model		Bolt	Bolt



RX20-20 swing axle VDI datasheet



This VDI datasheet specifies only the technical values for trucks with standard equipment. Different tyres, lift masts, additional units etc. can produce different values.

Key data

Model		RX20-20P	RX20-20PL
Type number		6230	6231
Manufacturer		STILL GmbH	STILL GmbH
Drive		Electric	Electric
Operation		Seat	Seat
Rated capacity/load	Q (kg)	2000	2000
Load centre of gravity distance	c (mm)	500	500
Load distance	x (mm)	388	388
Wheelbase	y (mm)	1429	1537

Weights

Model		RX20-20P	RX20-20PL
Type number		6230	6231
Net weight	kg	3474	3449
Front axle load, laden	kg	4858	4851
Rear axle load, laden	kg	616	598
Front axle load, unladen	kg	1616	1696
Rear axle load, unladen	kg	1858	1754

Wheels, chassis frame

Model	RX20-20P	RX20-20PL
Type number	6230	6231
Tyres	Superelastic	Superelastic
Tyre size, front	200/50-10	200/50-10
Tyre size, rear	150/75-8	150/75-8
Number of front wheels (x = driven)	2x	2x
Number of rear wheels (x = driven)	2	2



RX20-20 swing axle VDI datasheet

Model		RX20-20P	RX20-20PL
Type number		6230	6231
Track width, front	b ₁₀ (mm)	942	942
Track width, rear	b ₁₁ (mm)	807	807

Basic dimensions

Model		RX20-20P	RX20-20PL
Type number		6230	6231
Forward tilt of lift mast/fork carriage	α (degrees)	5	5
Backwards tilt of lift mast/fork car- riage	β (degrees)	6	6
Height with lift mast retracted	h ₁ (mm)	2160	2160
Free lift	h ₂ (mm)	150	150
Lift	h ₃ (mm)	3180	3180
Height with lift mast extended	h ₄ (mm)	3742	3742
Height above overhead guard (cab)	h ₆ (mm)	2035 (1949)	2035 (1949)
Seat height/standing height	h ₇ (mm)	965	965
Coupling height	h ₁₀ (mm)	537	537
Overall length	I ₁ (mm)	2851	2959
Length including fork back	l ₂ (mm)	2051	2159
Overall width	b ₁ (mm)	1149	1149
Fork arm thickness	s (mm)	40	40
Fork arm width	e (mm)	80	80
Fork arm length	I (mm)	800	800
Fork carriage	Standard; class; form	ISO 2328 II A	ISO 2328 II A
Fork carriage width	b ₃ (mm)	980	980
Ground clearance with load below lift mast	m ₁ (mm)	≥ 90	≥ 90
Ground clearance at the middle of the wheelbase	m ₂ (mm)	114	114
Aisle width for pallet 1000 x 1200 crosswise	A _{st} (mm)	3375	3483
Aisle width for pallet 800 x 1200 longitudinal	A _{st} (mm)	3501	3609
Turning radius	W _a (mm)	1663	1771
Smallest pivot point distance	b ₁₃ (mm)	_	_



Performance data

Model		RX20-20P	RX20-20PL
Type number		6230	6231
Driving speed with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	km/h	16/16/20	16/16/20
Driving speed without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	km/h	16/16/20	16/16/20
Lifting speed with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	m/s	0.45	0.45
Lifting speed without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	m/s	0.63	0.63
Lowering speed with load	m/s	0.48	0.48
Lowering speed without load	m/s	0.41	0.41
Pulling force with load	N	4700	4800
Pulling force without load	N	5000	5000
Max. pulling force with load	N	11900	11900
Max. pulling force without load	N	8200	8800
Climbing capability with load	%	15	15
Climbing capability without load	%	18.1	18.1
Max. climbing capability with load	%	22.9	23.1
Max. climbing capability without load	%	25.1	27.2
Acceleration time with load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	s	5.8/5.5/5.3	5.8/5.5/5.3
Acceleration time without load (Blue-Q/STILL Classic/sprint mode)	s	5.4/5.1/4.8	5.4/5.1/4.8
Service brake		Electr. / mech.	Electr. / mech.

Gradients

The values specified in the "Performance data" table as the maximum climbing capability can be used only to compare the performance of forklift trucks in the same category. The specified values in no way represent the normal daily operating conditions.

WARNING

To use the truck safely – with or without a load – the maximum ascending or descending gradient permitted for travel is 15%.

 If you have any questions, contact your authorised service centre.



Eco-design requirements for electric motors and variable speed drives

Electric motor

Model		RX20-20P	RX20-20PL
Type number		6230	6231
Traction motor, power rating at S2: 60 min	kW	2x6.5	2x6.5
Lift motor, power rating at S3: 15%	kW	11	11
Battery	Standard; circuit	DIN 43531 A (B)	DIN 43531 A
Battery voltage	U (V)	48	48
Battery capacity	K ₅ (Ah)	625	750
Battery weight	kg	855	1013

Miscellaneous

Model Type number		RX20-20P	RX20-20PL
		6230	6231
Working pressure for attachments	bar	160	160
Oil flow for attachments	l/min	30	30
Sound pressure level L _{pAZ} (Driver's compartment)	dB (A)	< 66	< 66
Human vibration: acceleration according to EN 13059	m/s ²	< 0.6	< 0.6
Tow coupling, DIN type/model		Bolt	Bolt

Eco-design requirements for electric motors and variable speed drives

All motors in this industrial truck are exempt from Regulation (EU) 2019/1781 because these motors do not meet the description given in Article 2 "Scope", Item (1) (a) and because of the provisions in Article 2 (2) (h) "Motors in cordless or battery-operated equipment" and Article 2 (2) (o) "Motors designed specifically for the traction of electric vehicles".

All variable speed drives in this industrial truck are exempt from Regulation (EU) 2019/1781 because these variable speed drives do not meet the description given in Article 2 "Scope", Item (1) (b).



Battery specifications



A DANGER

There is a risk of explosion from using a battery with the incorrect specification!

Using batteries that do not correspond to explosion-protection regulations may lead to explosions in the surrounding atmosphere in potentially explosive areas!

 Use only batteries that are approved and tested for the place of use.

A CAUTION

The battery weight and the battery dimensions affect the stability of the truck.

When replacing the battery, the weight ratios must not be changed. The battery weight must remain within the weight range specified on the nameplate. The location of ballast weights must not be changed. The bottom of the battery tray must be closed.

- Do not change the position of ballast weights.
- Check the battery weight against the information on the nameplate.
- Only use a battery tray that is closed at the bottom.



NOTE

The batteries for this truck are designed for the special area of application. If a battery is to be exchanged or replaced, use a structurally identical explosion-protected battery with the same characteristics. If a battery is replaced with a battery of a different type, check that the truck is permitted to be used in the corresponding explosion-protection zones.

 The battery weight can be found on the nameplate of the battery.

Battery specifications according to DIN 43531; cells in accordance with DIN EN 60254-2, 48 V circuit A or 48 V circuit B

Battery designa- tion	Capacity [Ah]	Circuit	Weight/ ballast	me	compart nsions [r	ment di- nm]	Tray
			weight [kg]	Length	Width	Height	
4PzV 400	400						
4PzV 440	440	_	708/	830	522	627	364
4PzS 460	460	A	155	030	522	027	304
4PzS 500	500]					



Battery specifications

Battery designa- tion	Capacity [Ah]	Circuit	Weight/ ballast		compart		Tray		
			weight [kg]	Length	Width	Height			
5PzV 500	500								
5PzV 550	550	A	856	830	630	627	365		
5PzS 575	575	_ A	000	030	630	027	303		
5PzS 625	625								
6PzV 600	600								
6PzV 660	660	Α	1064	830	738	627	366		
6PzS 690	690		1004	030	730	021	300		
6PzS 750	750								
5TCSM 660	660								
5PzV 500	500								
5PzV 550	550	B ¹	856	1030	529	529 627	315		
5PzS 575	575								
5PzS 625	650								



When converting to TENSOR® batteries, the maximum speed of the truck must be limited to 17 km/h for technical reasons. Contact the authorised service centre regarding this matter.

Battery requirements for use in potentially explosive areas

Batteries for use in potentially explosive areas are designed and specifically tested in respect of the zones and temperature ranges in which they are to be used. The permitted area of use is permanently and clearly indicated on the nameplate of the battery.

- If you have any questions relating to the requirements, contact your authorised service centre.
- Observe the explosion-protection regulations.
- Use only explosion-protected batteries and connection assemblies.
- Use only a battery tray that is approved for the potentially explosive area.

In some trucks, an adapter plate is required to support the battery and circuit B.



Information on the auxiliary hydraulics

If you have any questions, contact your authorised service centre.

Information on the auxiliary hydraulics

The information on the auxiliary hydraulics differs depending on the truck. Take this into consideration when selecting the attachment.

Maximum system pressure "P _{max} "	280 bar
Maximum volume flow rate "Q _{max} "	30 l/min
Trigger of the switch valve	12 V / 2 A



Information on the auxiliary hydraulics



NUMBERS AND SYMBOLS		Controlling with the fingertip and the	
1000-hour maintenance/annual mainte-		5th function	326
nance	477	General controlling	302
Α		Information on the auxiliary hydraulics. Load capacity	511 300
Access authorisation for the fleet manag-		Mounting	300
er	125	Picking up a load	331
Changing the fleet manager password.		Safety information	299
Changing the PIN code for the driver.	124		54
Access authorisation with PIN code	124	Special risks.	
	123	Automatic emergency shutdown	376
Changing the PIN codes		Automatic mast vertical positioning	000
Accessories.	. 8	Calibrating	
Actuating the drive direction switch	407	Checking for correct function	164
Fingertip version.	197	Operation	
Joystick 4Plus version	197	Auxiliary equipment	332
Mini-lever version	196	В	
Multiple-lever version	196	_	20
Travel direction selector and indicator		Basic information on explosion protection.	20
module version	198	Basic principles for safe operation	44
Address of manufacturer		Battery	
Adjusting the armrest	118	Changing the battery type	408
Adjusting the fork	260	Charging	401
Adjusting the steering column	99	Charging to equalise	405
Air conditioning	348	Checking	471
Attachments	298	Checking the changeover frame	480
Adjusting the hydraulic speed	304	Checking the charge status of the	401
Alternating operation	300	Checking the condition, acid level and	
Assembly	298	acid density	399
Attachment example	303	Checking the interlock	461
Connection	300	Disposal	37
Controlling using a double mini-lever.	313	Maintaining	398
Controlling using a quadruple mini-lev-	0.0	Plug	388
er	321	Replacing	407
Controlling using a triple mini-lever.	317	Requirements for potentially explosive	
Controlling using multi-lever operation.		areas	510
Controlling using the double mini-lever	000	Safety regulations	393
and the 5th function	315	Battery acid	66
Controlling using the joystick 4Plus.	328	Battery door	
Controlling using the guadruple mini-	320	Checking the interlock	461
lever and the 5th function	323	Battery isolating switch	
Controlling using the triple mini-lever	323	Switching on	101
and the 5th function	319	Battery male connector	101
Controlling with multi-lever operation	0.10	*	388
and the 5th function	311	Connecting	390
Controlling with multi-lever operation	J.,	Disconnecting	
and the 6th function	311	Battery specifications.	509
Controlling with the fingertin	324	Before picking up a load	258



Blue-Q		Cold store application	361
Configuring	185	Batteries	363
Effects on additional consumers	182	Operation	361
Functional description	182	Types of application	361
Switching on and off	184	Commissioning	22
•		Competent person	41
С		Condition of the roadways	191
Cab	342	Consumables	64
Opening/closing the door	342	Disposal	67
Opening/closing the side window	343	Safety information for handling battery	
Operating the rear window heating	335	acid	66
Turning the interior lighting on or off	344	Safety information for handling oils	64
Ceiling sensor	336	Safety information for hydraulic fluid.	65
CE labelling	. 5	Contact details	
Changes to the truck	44	Copyright and trademark rights	32
Changing the fork arms	247	Correct seat position.	99
Checking the antistatic paint layer	465	Coupling pin in the counterweight	354
Checking the charge status of the	401	Crane loading	434
Checking the double pedal	480	Cruise control.	220
Checking the emergency off function	102		216
Checking the fork arms	477	Curve Speed Control	210
Checking the lift cylinders and connections		D	
for leaks	477	Damage	47
Checking wheel fastenings	470	Danger area	260
Checks and tasks before daily use	94	Danger to employees	
Clamp locking mechanism	307	Declaration of conformity	
Releasing the mechanism with a doubl		Decommissioning the truck	435
mini-lever	314	Defects	47
Releasing the mechanism with a quad-		Definition of directions	35
ruple mini-lever	322	Definition of responsible persons	40
Releasing the mechanism with a triple		Competent person	41
mini-lever	318	Drivers	42
Releasing the mechanism with the fin-		Operating company	40
gertip	325	Description of the truck.	
Releasing the mechanism with the joy-		Diagnostic interface	19
stick 4Plus	329	Dimensions of roadways	189
Cleaning	425	Display-operating unit 78,	
Cleaning the electrical system	428	Messages	366
Cleaning the truck	425	-	100
Flame proof enclosure	425	Swivelling Display/control unit	100
Cleaning the windows	429		119
Clean the truck		Main screen.	
After cleaning	430	Display messages	364
Climbing into the truck	97	Disposal	27
Climbing out of the truck	97	Battery	37
Clipboard	349	Components	37



Double mini-lever		E
Lifting/lowering the fork carriage. 235,	, 237	EC declaration of conformity in accordance
Tilting the lift mast 236,	, 238	with Machinery Directive
Drive direction		Efficiency and drive modes 182
Changing	199	Electric parking brake
Neutral position	195	Emergency actuation
Selecting	195	Electrostatic charge
Selecting with the dual pedal version.	202	Safety information
Drive modes		Emergencies
Sprint mode	185	Actuating the reset button 376
STILL Classic	185	Emergency actuation of the electric
Drive programme		parking brake
Configuring A/B	193	Truck tipping over
Selecting 1 to 3	192	Using the emergency hammer 378
Selecting A/B	193	Emergency drive direction 379
Driver profiles		Emergency driving 379
Creating	145	Emergency hammer
Deleting	150	Emergency lowering
Description	143	Emergency shutdown
Renaming	147	Automatic
Selecting	143	Emissions 68
Drivers	42	Battery 70
Clothing	43	Noise emissions 68
Rights, obligations and codes of con-		Radiation 70
duct	42	Vibrations 69
Driver's cab		Environmental considerations 37
Operating	104	Ergonomic dimensions 482
Driver's seat		Explosion-protection checks 61
Adjusting	110	Explosion-protection warning lights 80
Adjusting the backrest extension	113	Behaviour when illuminated 364
Adjusting the lumbar support	113	Insulation monitoring
Adjusting the seat backrest	111	Motor monitoring
Adjusting the seat suspension		Explosion protection notice 6
(MSG 65/MSG 75)	112	F
Checking	464	•
Moving	111	Filling the washer system
Switching the seat heater on and off.	114	Fingertip
Driving	187	Lifting/lowering the fork carriage 241
Ascending gradients	277	Tilting the lift mast
Descending gradients	277	Fitting attachments 298
Driving lights		Flame proof enclosure
Switching on and off	153	Identification
Driving on loading bridges	280	FleetManager
Driving onto lifts	278	Shock recognition
Dynamic Load Control 1	169	
Dynamic Load Control 2	170	



Fork arms		Depressurising using the triple mini-lev	_
Latch	479	er and the 5th function	289
Length	. 50	Exiting the wizard	297
Repairing	479	Need to depressurise	281
Fork extension	250	Special feature for clamping attach-	
Fork wear protection	246	ments	296
Function checking	94	Wizard for depressurising	282
Fuses		1	
Replacing	472	•	
		Improper use	24
G		Information about the documentation	30
General	. 4	Information for carrying out maintenance.	440
н		445,	446
		Maintenance timeframe	447
Handling gas springs and accumulators	50	Next maintenance interval	447
Handling loads	257	Information on the auxiliary hydraulics	511
Hazardous areas	192	Insulation testing	62
Hazards and countermeasures	56	Drive battery test values	
Hazard warning system		Test values for the truck	63
Switching on and off	157	Insurance cover on company premises	
Heating system	345	Interior lighting	344
Hydraulic blocking function	255	Issue date of the operating instructions	32
Hydraulic fluid	65	J	
Hydraulic system			440
Checking for leak tightness	472	Jacking up	442
Checking the oil level	474	Joystick 4Plus	
Depressurising using a double mini-lev	'-	Fork carriage sideshift	244
er	286	Lifting/lowering the fork carriage	243
Depressurising using a quadruple mini		Tilting the lift mast	243
lever	290	L	
Depressurising using a triple mini-lev-		Labelling points	10
er	288	Lashing down	433
Depressurising using multi-lever opera		Lift height-dependent functions	400
tion	284	Speed reduction when the fork carriage	_
Depressurising using multi-lever opera		is raised	- 217
tion and the 5th and 6th function	285	Lifting	
Depressurising using the double mini- lever and the 5th function	287	Lifting system	772
Depressurising using the fingertip	292	Controlling using a double mini-lever.	235
	292	Controlling using a quadruple mini-lev-	
Depressurising using the fingertip and the 5th function	293	er	239
Depressurising using the Joy-	233	Controlling using a triple mini-lever.	237
stick 4Plus	294	Controlling using the joystick 4Plus	242
Depressurising using the Joystick 4Plu		Controlling with the fingertip	241
and the 5th function	295	Dynamics	244
Depressurising using the quadruple		Multi-lever	233
mini-lever and the 5th function	291	Operating devices.	231



	Drive axle	458
476	Electrical system	457
443	Flame proof enclosure	459
443	General lubrication points	457
442	Hydraulic system	458
229	Lift mast	459
231	Load chains	459
230	Steering axle	458
229	Tyres	458
230		459
152	•	445
460		
152		445
160		254
158		210
161		
. 33		354
		355
271		162
		49
	· ·	366
169	About the truck	373
	Introduction	366
172	Misuse of safety systems	47
168	Multi-lever	
175	Lifting/lowering the fork carriage	233
		234
	-	
	N	
	Nameplate	14
428	Nameplate of the battery	17
172	Nameplate of the pressure-tight housing	16
	Neutral position	195
	0	
245	•	0.4
		64
101		409
		342
119		343
444		122
440		40
457	Operating devices and display elements.	78
457		
457		
	443 443 443 4443 4442 229 231 230 229 230 152 460 158 161 33 271 267 276 169 170 172 168 175 177 179 258 428 172 173 245 461 119 444 440 457 457	Flame proof enclosure. Flame proof enclosure. General lubrication points. Hydraulic system. Load chains. Steering axle. Tyres. Maintenance personnel for batteries. Maintenance work without special qualifications. Malfunctions during lifting mode. Manual tow coupling. Coupling. Uncoupling. Medical equipment. Messages About operation. About the truck. Introduction. Misuse of safety systems. Multi-lever Lifting/lowering the fork carriage. Tilting the lift mast. Nameplate of the battery. Nameplate of the pressure-tight housing. Neutral position. O Oils. Opening/closing the battery door. Opening/closing the cab door. Operating Display-operating unit. Operating devices and display elements.



Operating devices for hydraulic and driving	g	Picking up loads	259
functions		Place of use	26
Double mini-lever	84	Pre-Shift Check	
Fingertip	90	All questions	131
Joystick 4Plus	. 91	Description	129
Multi-lever operation	83	History	134
Quadruple mini-lever	88	Process	130
Triple mini-lever	86	Question sequence	133
Operating materials		Shift start	136
Quality and quantity	454	Truck restrictions	140
Operating procedures	35	Precision load measurement	175
Operating the pneumatic signal horn	104	Preserving operational readiness	460
Operating the service brake	202	Procedure if truck tips over	378
Operating the signal horn	103	Procedure in emergencies	375
Operational readiness		Production number	14
Trucks for cold store application	476	Prohibition of use by unauthorised persons	s. 43
Overhead guard		Proper use	23
Drilling	. 46	Push-up roof window	349
Roof loads	46		
Welding	. 46	Q	
Overview		Quadruple mini-lever	
Accessories	. 8	Lifting/lowering the fork carriage	239
Overviews		Tilting the lift mast	240
Battery isolating switch		R	
Display-operating unit	. 78	Radio	344
Driver's compartment		Rear window heating	344
Emergency off switch	82	Switching on and off	335
Explosion-protection warning lights	80	Reducing speed when turning	216
Shelves	. 76	Regular inspections	60
Truck	. 72	Replacing the battery	00
P		General information	407
•	0.7	Using a lift truck	417
Packaging.	37	Using a truck	412
Parking	225	Reset button	82
Parking brake	203	Actuating.	376
Parking the vehicle safely	212	Residual dangers	
Parking brake (electric)	200	Residual risk	52
Actuation	206	Residual risks	52
Actuation when the truck is stationary.		Retrofitting	44
Functions available while the truck is in motion	າ 209	Reversible fork arms	252
	210	Checking	479
Malfunctions	207	Roadways	
Symbols in the display-operating unit. Parking brake (mechanical)	201	Components protruding beyond the	102
Applying	204	truck contour	191
Parking the truck securely	204	Descending gradients	190
Personnel qualifications	444	Gradients	190
i orgonnoi quannoanong	-177		



Index

Rotating beacon		Shake function	272
Switching on and off	159	Double mini-lever	274
Rules for roadways and the working area.	192	Fingertip switch	275
S		Joystick 4Plus	274
_		Quadruple mini-lever	275
Safety devices.	441	Triple mini-lever	275
Safety inspection	60	Shelves	76
Safety regulations for handling consuma-	0.4	Shock recognition	332
bles	64	Shutting down and restarting	
Safety regulations for handling the bat-	202	Safety information	435
tery	393	Signal terms	32
Battery weight and dimensions	396	Spare parts	453
Damage to cables and battery male connectors	397	Special risks	54
		Speed limitation	
Fire protection measures	395	Configuring	218
Lifting accessories.	396	Switching on and off	218
Maintenance personnel	394	Speed reduction when the cab door is	
Parking the truck securely	394	open	217
Performing battery maintenance	396	Sprint mode	
Safety regulations for maintenance		Automatic switch-off	186
General information	440	Switching on and off	186
Safety devices	441	Stability	53
Set values	441	Starting drive mode	198
Working on the electrical equipment.	441	Dual pedal version	200
Working on the hydraulic equipment.	441	Steering	215
Safety regulations for working on the lift		Steering axle	
mast	442	Lubricating	470
Safety regulations when driving	187	Servicing	470
Safety regulations when handing loads	257	Steering system	470
Safety tests	60	Checking for correct function	109
Schematic views	35	Storing the truck	435
Scope of the documentation	30	StVZO (Road Traffic Licensing Regula-	100
UPA solutions		tions) information	15
Seat belt	114	Sun blind	351
Checking	463	Sun visor	351
Cleaning	463	Switching off the truck	225
Fastening	115	Switching on	119
Fastening on a steep slope	116	using the key switch	119
Maintaining	462	via the push button	120
Malfunction due to cold	117	via the push button	120
Replacement after an accident	463	Т	
Unlocking	117	Tare function	177
Servicing the heating system or air condi-		Technical data	
tioning	466	Battery specifications	509
Cleaning the fresh-air inlet	467	Dimensions	483
Replacing the filter mat	466	Testing the electrical system	62
Set values	441	. coming the disculsar system	J2



Tilt-angle-dependent assistance systems		Variants	
Automatic mast vertical positioning		Access authorisation for the fleet man-	
162,	266	ager	125
Mast tilt angle display	162	Access authorisation with PIN code	123
Tilt end stop damping	162	Air conditioning	348
Tilt end stop damping	162	Automatic mast vertical positioning.	
Topicality of the operating instructions	32	162, 164,	266
Total load	179	Blue-Q	182
Tow coupling RO*244	356	Clamp locking mechanism	307
Closing	359	Clipboard	349
Coupling	358	Cruise control	220
Uncoupling	359	Driver profiles	143
Towed load	353	Dynamic Load Control 1	169
Towing	384	Dynamic Load Control 2	170
Procedure	386	FleetManager	332
Proper use	24	Fork extension	250
Safety information	384	Fork wear protection	246
Trailer operation.	352	Heating system	345
Safety information	352	Interior lighting.	344
Trailers	332	Lifting systems	229
	360	Load measurement	172
Transport		Mono lift mast	231
Transport	431 261		230
Transporting pallets		NiHo lift mast	168
Transporting suspended loads	262	Pre-Shift Check	129
Transporting swinging loads	263		175
Transporting the battery by crane		Precision load measurement	
Lead-acid battery	424	Push-up roof window	349
Transporting the truck	431	Radio	344
Travel direction selector and indicator	00	Reversible fork arms	252
module	92	Shake function	272
Turn indicators		Shock recognition	332
Switching on and off	155	Speed limitation	218
Tyres		Speed reduction when the fork carriage	
Safety principles	48	is raised	217
U		Sun blind	351
-	400	Sun visor	351
Unlock the emergency off switch	102	Switching on via the push button (var-	
Use after storage or decommissioning	437	iant)	120
Using the truck		Tare function	177
Using working platforms	28	Total load	179
V		Travel direction selector and indicator	
Variant		module	92
	336	Triple mast	230
Ceiling sensor	336	Wheel chock	228
		Windscreen wipers and washers	332



Index

VDI datasheet		Wedging the wheels	432
RX20-14C steering turntable	485	Wheel chock	228
RX20-16 steering turntable	489	Wheels and tyres	
RX20-16 swing axle	497	Checking the condition and wear of the	:
RX20-18 and RX20-20 with steering		tyres	470
turntable	493	Checking wheel fastenings	470
RX20-18 swing axle	501	Servicing	469
RX20-20 swing axle	505	Usage in winter weather conditions	470
View of functions and operating proce-		Windscreen wipers and washers	
dures	35	Switching on and off	332
View of operating procedures	35	Winter tyres	470
Views of the display and operating unit	36	Working at the front of the truck	442
Visual inspections	94	Working on the electrical equipment	441
W		Working on the hydraulic equipment	441
••		Working spotlight for reverse travel	
Warming up the hydraulic oil	108	Switching on and off	155
Warning regarding non-original parts	46	Working spotlights	
Warning zone light		Switching on and off	154
Adjusting	471		
Operating	161	Υ	
Wearing parts	453	Your truck	2

